

**HO CHI MINH'S RHETORIC: THE POWER OF LANGUAGE  
IN THE FIRST VIETNAMESE WAR OF LIBERATION (1946-1954)**



**A THESIS SUBMITTED IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT  
OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR  
THE DEGREE OF MASTER OF ARTS (LINGUISTICS)  
FACULTY OF GRADUATE STUDIES  
MAHIDOL UNIVERSITY  
2007**

**COPYRIGHT OF MAHIDOL UNIVERSITY**

Thesis  
Entitled

HO CHI MINH'S RHETORIC: THE POWER OF LANGUAGE  
IN THE FIRST VIETNAMESE WAR OF LIBERATION (1946-1954)



*Morragotwong Phumplab.*  
Miss Morragotwong Phumplab  
Candidate

*Sumitira Suraratdecha*  
Miss Sumitira Suraratdecha,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Major-Advisor

*Sophana Srichampa*  
Assoc.Prof.Sophana Srichampa,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Co-Advisor

*Pattama Patpong*  
Miss Pattama Patpong,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Co-Advisor

*B. Mahaisavariya*  
Prof. Banchong Mahaisavariya, M.D.  
Dean  
Faculty of Graduate Studies

*Pattama Patpong*  
Miss.Pattama Patpong,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Chair  
Master of Arts Programme in Linguistics  
Institute of Language and Culture for Rural  
Development

Thesis

Entitled

HO CHI MINH'S RHETORIC: THE POWER OF LANGUAGE  
IN THE FIRST VIETNAMESE WAR OF LIBERATION (1946-1954)

was submitted to the Faculty of Graduate Studies, Mahidol University  
for the degree of Master of Arts (Linguistics)

on  
1 October, 2007

*Morragotwong Phumplab.*

Miss Morragotwong Phumplab  
Candidate

*G. Ne -*

Assoc.Prof. Weera Ostapirat,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Chair

*Sumittra Suraratdecha*

Miss Sumittra Suraratdecha,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Member

*Pattama Patpong*

Miss Pattama Patpong,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Member

*Sophana Srichampa*

Assoc.Prof.Sophana Srichampa,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Member

*B. Mahaisavariya*

Prof. Banchong Mahaisavariya, M.D.  
Dean  
Faculty of Graduate Studies  
Mahidol University

*Sophana Srichampa*

Assoc.Prof.Sophana Srichampa,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics)  
Director  
Institute of Language and Culture for Rural  
Development  
Mahidol University

## ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

This research could only have been successfully accomplished with the assistance of many people. Firstly, I would like to express my profound gratitude to Assoc. Prof. Sophana Srichampa, who both initiated my study on Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and gave me a chance to work in the field of Vietnamese studies. I am also very grateful to Dr. Sumittra Suraratdecha, my supervisor, whose guidance allowed me to adapt my term paper to this thesis and consistently gave me valuable suggestions. I would like to express my gratitude to Assoc. Prof. Weera Ostapirat, and Dr. Pattama Patpong who contributed consultations and corrections of drawbacks. I would also like to thank Dr Richard Hiam who was a great help in my English correction. I also want to thank the Institute of Language and Culture for Rural Development, Mahidol University where I have had many warm experiences during the time of my study there.

I would like to express my thankfulness to the University of Social Sciences and Humanities, Vietnam National University, Hanoi, Vietnam and A Greater Mekong Sub-region (GMS) Exchange Program Scholarship, supported by the Bureau of International Cooperation Strategy Commission on Higher Education, in giving me a grant for my fieldwork in Vietnam.

I would like to forward my sincere gratitude to Asia Research Institute (ARI), National University of Singapore (NUS), ARI people and ASEAN SCHOLARS 2007 for the extremely useful resources for my research and the warm experiences during my time in Singapore. Gratitude with special thanks is expressed to Assoc. Prof. Bruce Lockhart who guided me with his resourcefulness on Vietnamese history, and sacrificed his valuable time to check the rhetorical translation of Ho Chi Minh.

My wholehearted gratitude and thankfulness to my mother, who gave me invaluable advice on my work in Vietnamese studies, who always took care of me, who supported, encouraged and was always a part of my happiness and suffering. I wish to express my heartfelt gratitude to my father, who has always supported and comforted me. I attribute all my success in my life to the both of them.

I would like to express my warm thankfulness to Weirong, who always gave me beneficial encouragement, suggestions and who proofread this research. My gratitude also goes to my close friends in Singapore: Nattamon Aranya, Panadda, for all their encouragement. I also want to express my gratitude to Puncharee and Sirikanya who always supported me and shared my whole experience during the course of my study. I sincerely thank all people whom I did not mention for their care, encouragement and help in all the times that I asked for.

If there are any errors or mistakes, I will gladly accept these mistakes in order to improve in my subsequent opportunities.

‘Trust in you as pig can fly’  
Morrageotwong Phumplab  
22 August 2007

**HO CHI MINH'S RHETORIC: THE POWER OF LANGUAGE IN THE FIRST VIETNAMESE WAR OF LIBERATION (1946-1954)**

MORRAGOTWONG PHUMPLAB 4836346 LCLG/M

M.A. (LINGUISTICS)

THESIS ADVISORS: SUMITTRA SURARATDECHA, Ph.D.(LINGUISTICS), SOPHANA SRICHAMPA, Ph.D.(LINGUISTICS), PATTAMA PATPONG, Ph.D.(LINGUISTICS)

**ABSTRACT**

Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) proposes that language as discourse is an instrument or a symbol of power that leads to social motivation, especially in political movements. This study attempts to analyze President Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric during the First Vietnamese war of Liberation against French rule (1946-1954). It does so by focusing specifically on the power of language as an instrument in shaping and encouraging the Vietnamese to participate in political movements of various types against their French colonialists. In addition, the study also investigates the changing social situations that affected the relationship between context as an impulse to produce texts (discourses), and language as a crucial factor of power and media in driving the Vietnamese to participate in the war. The CDA approach of Fairclough (1989) assumes that social science is dependent upon social, cultural, and historical contexts, as well as linguistics.

Ho Chi Minh's rhetorical appeal to the Vietnamese was a crucial factor in the political mechanism that motivated the Vietnamese to take part in this resistance. He accomplished this not only through his style of speech but also by winning the admiration, sacrifice and faithfulness of the Vietnamese people. Furthermore, this study shows that the dynamic of social situations can be instigated by correlating factors both internal and external. The internal factor is the Vietnamese situation during the time of the war. The external factors are the other liberation movements in the countries which were ruled by colonial powers. Due to Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric regarding group solidarity, the war was won, leading to freedom and independence of the nation. The Vietnamese wholly rose up and opposed the French because they thought that it was the best way to eradicate their suffering and oppression. In summary, social context is a significant factor in discourse as rhetoric is produced in conjunction with the social situation occurring at that time, and a leader's rhetoric can shape and encourage the people to follow his purposes.

**KEY WORDS:** CRITICAL DISCOURSE ANALYSIS / HO CHI MINH'S RHETORIC / THE FIRST VIETNAMESE WAR OF LIBERATION (1946-1954)

371 pp.

วาทกรรมประชานิยม ให้ จี๋ มิญ: อำนาจการใช้ภาษาในสงครามเวียดนามครั้งที่ 1 (ค.ศ.1946-1954)  
(HO CHI MINH'S RHETORIC: THE POWER OF LANGUAGE IN THE FIRST VIETNAMESE  
WAR OF LIBERATION (1946-1954))

มรกดวงศั ภูมิพลับ 4836346 LCLG/M

ศศ.ม. (ภาษาศาสตร์)

คณะกรรมการควบคุมวิทยานิพนธ์ : สุมิตรา สุวรรณ์เดชา, Ph.D.(Linguistics), โสภณา ศรีจำปา,  
Ph.D.(Linguistics), ปัทมา พัฒน์พงษ์, Ph.D.(Linguistics)

### บทคัดย่อ

แนวคิดวาทกรรมวิเคราะห์ (Critical Discourse Analysis- CDA) เป็นแนวคิดที่ว่าด้วยการมองวาทกรรมกับความสัมพันธ์ และการเปลี่ยนแปลงทางสังคม โดยให้ความสำคัญของภาษา และ/หรือ วาทกรรมในฐานะของเครื่องมือหรือสัญญาณแห่งอำนาจ อันอาจนำไปสู่ความเคลื่อนไหวและการเปลี่ยนแปลงด้านต่าง ๆ ทางสังคม โดยเฉพาะอย่างยิ่งการเคลื่อนไหวทางการเมือง วาทกรรมยังเป็นผลผลิตอันเกิดจากสภาวะและบริบททางสังคม นอกจากนี้ยังสะท้อนถึงความสัมพันธ์ของวาทกรรมและความเปลี่ยนแปลงที่เกิดขึ้นกับสังคมภายหลังการเผยแพร่วาทกรรมนั้น ๆ การศึกษานี้มีเป้าหมายในการพยายามที่จะวิเคราะห์ ถึงวาทกรรมของประชานิยมให้ จี๋ มิญ ในระหว่างสงครามเวียดนามครั้งที่ 1 (ค.ศ. 1946-1954) โดยแสดงให้เห็นถึงความสำคัญของการใช้วาทกรรมในฐานะของเครื่องมือในการก่อรูป ปลุกเร้า และโน้มน้าว ตลอดจนให้กำลังใจ ต่อชาวเวียดนามในการเข้าร่วมสงครามในรูปแบบต่าง ๆ ไม่ว่าจะเป็นการส่งเสริม สนับสนุน ตลอดจนปฏิบัติการต่าง ๆ ในสงครามต่อต้านนักล่าอาณานิคมฝรั่งเศส นอกจากนี้ยังแสดงให้เห็นถึง การเปลี่ยนแปลงทางสังคมเวียดนาม และผลอันเกิดจากความสัมพันธ์ระหว่างบริบทในฐานะของตัวกระตุ้นที่จะนำไปสู่การผลิตวาทกรรม และภาษาที่เป็นองค์ประกอบสำคัญของอำนาจและสื่อ ในการขับเคลื่อนการมีส่วนร่วมของชาวเวียดนามในสงคราม

จดหมายแถลงการณ์เรียกร้องฉบับต่าง ๆ ของให้ จี๋ มิญ เป็นองค์ประกอบสำคัญของกลไกทางการเมือง และการมีส่วนร่วมของประชาชนชาวเวียดนามในสงครามครั้งนี้ ความสำเร็จและอำนาจของวาทกรรม ไม่เพียงมีผลมาจากรูปแบบการใช้ภาษาที่มีลักษณะโดดเด่น แต่ยังเป็นผลสืบเนื่องมาจากความยกย่อง ชื่นชมในตัวประชานิยมให้ จี๋ มิญ ด้วย นอกจากนี้การศึกษานี้ยังแสดงให้เห็นถึงพลวัตและการเปลี่ยนแปลงในสังคมเวียดนาม อันเกิดจากองค์ประกอบร่วมของบริบทภายใน ซึ่งหมายรวมถึงสถานการณ์ที่เวียดนามต้องเผชิญกับสภาวะสงคราม และปัจจัยภายนอกสังคมเวียดนามอันได้แก่ การเคลื่อนไหวเพื่อเรียกร้องอิสรภาพในประเทศที่ตกอยู่ภายใต้การปกครองของอาณานิคม และด้วยการปลุกฝังในเรื่องความสามัคคีเป็นอันหนึ่งอันเดียวกัน และแผนการ ตลอดจนการใช้ยุทธศาสตร์ในการทำสงครามในรูปแบบต่าง ๆ ผ่านสื่อคือ จดหมายเรียกร้องฉบับต่าง ๆ นำไปสู่ผลสำเร็จในการต่อสู้เพื่อเรียกร้องอิสรภาพ และเอกราชของประชาชนชาวเวียดนาม ด้วยชัยชนะจากสงครามครั้งนี้

371 หน้า

## CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
<b>ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS</b>	iii
<b>ABSTRACT</b>	iv
<b>LIST OF TABLES</b>	vi
<b>LIST OF FIGURES</b>	vii
<b>LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS</b>	viii
<b>CHAPTER I INTRODUCTION</b>	<b>1</b>
1.1 Rationale of the study	1
1.2 Research questions	3
1.3 Objectives of the study	4
1.4 Benefits of the study	4
1.5 Scope of the study	5
1.6 Assumption	5
<b>CHAPTER II LITERATURE REVIEW</b>	
2.1 Ho Chi Minh's language use	6
2.2 The related studies in Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA)	8
<b>CHAPTER III THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK AND METHODOLOGY</b>	<b>10</b>
3.1 Theoretical framework: Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA)	10
3.1.1 Macro level	11
3.1.2 Micro level	12
a. The stage of description	13
b. The stage of interpretation	14
c. The stage of explanation	15

## CONTENTS (continued)

	Page
3.2 The procedure of the study	15
3.2.1 Data collection	15
a. Source of data	15
b. Selecting Ho Chi Minh’s rhetoric (during 1946-1954)	17
c. Data translation	20
d. Interviewing Vietnamese people	20
3.2.2 Data analysis	20
a. Descriptive analysis based on documentary research	20
b. Results from the questions	21
c. Analyzing Ho Chi Minh’s rhetoric according to Faircloughs’ Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) approach	21
3.2.3 Writing a summary and report of the research findings	21
 <b>CHAPTER IV VIETNAMESE HISTORICAL INFORMATION (1946-1954) AND HO CHI MINH’S IDEOLOGY</b>	 <b>22</b>
4.1 The first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954 A.D.)	22
4.2 Ho Chi Minh’s biography	26
4.3 Ho Chi Minh’s movement and ideology in the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954)	28
 <b>CHAPTER V CRITICAL DISCOURSE ANALYSIS (CDA) AND HO CHI MINH’S RHETORIC IN THE FIRST VIETNAMESE WAR OF LIBERATION (1946-1954)</b>	 <b>32</b>
5.1 Introduction	32

## CONTENTS (continued)

	Page
5.2 Micro level	33
5.2.1 Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and the stage of description	33
a. vocabulary	34
1) Synonymy	34
2) Antonymy	53
3) Nominalization	61
4) Addressee terms	66
4.1) Kinship terms	67
4.2) General addressee terms	71
4.3) The discriminated addressee terms	74
4.4) Pejorative terms	75
4.5) The contrary pronoun in the concept of 'we' versus 'enemy'	81
5) Expressive meanings	82
5.1) Negative expressive meaning	83
6) The emphatic particle	87
7) Intensify adverb	89
8) Modality 'must'	91
9) Numeral words	94
10) Reduplication	97
11) Metaphor	106
12) Ideological struggle	119
12.1) Chinese ideology	120
12.2) The ideology of independence, unity, And freedom	123
12.3) The concept of peace	125
12.4) The concept of 'anh hùng' or 'hero'	126
13) Vietnamese history	128

## CONTENTS (continued)

	<b>Page</b>
14) Ho Chi Minh's mottos	134
b. Grammar	136
1) Active structure	136
a) Simple sentence	136
b) Compound sentence	138
c) Complex sentence	144
2) Passive construction	149
3) Imperative sentence	150
4) Question sentence	154
5) Cohesion	158
c. Textual structures	163
1) Question-answer structure	164
2) Purpose and solution structure	169
3) The comparative structure	175
5.2.2 Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and the stage of interpretation	186
5.2.3 Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and the stage of explanation	190
5.3 Macro level	191
5.3.1 The relation of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric, and context as a social practice in the Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954)	192
5.3.2 Example of the relationship between Ho Chi Minh's Rhetoric, and context as a social practice in the appeal for national resistance, December 19, 1946	194
<b>CHAPTER VI CONCLUSION AND DISCUSSION</b>	<b>197</b>
6.1 Conclusion	197
6.2 Discussion	201
6.3 Recommendations for further studies	203

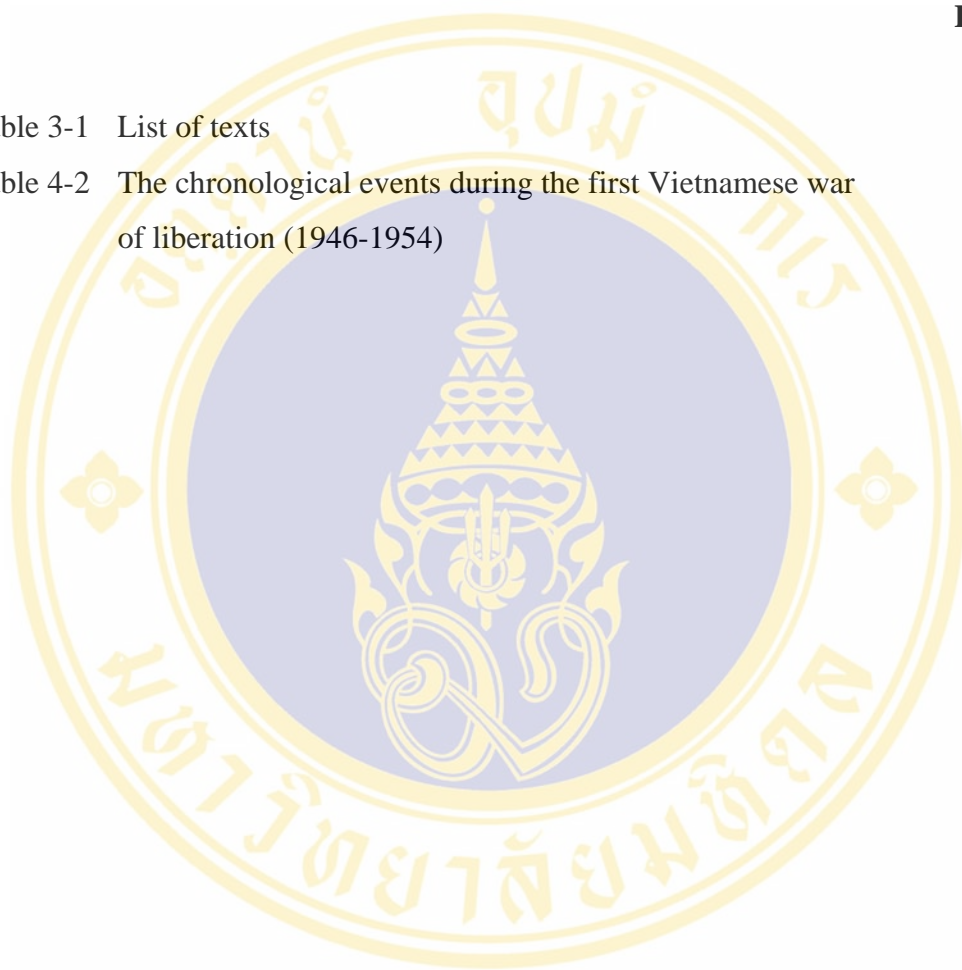
**CONTENTS (continued)**

	<b>Page</b>
<b>REFERENCES</b>	<b>205</b>
<b>APPENDIX</b>	<b>213</b>
<b>BIOGRAPHY</b>	<b>371</b>



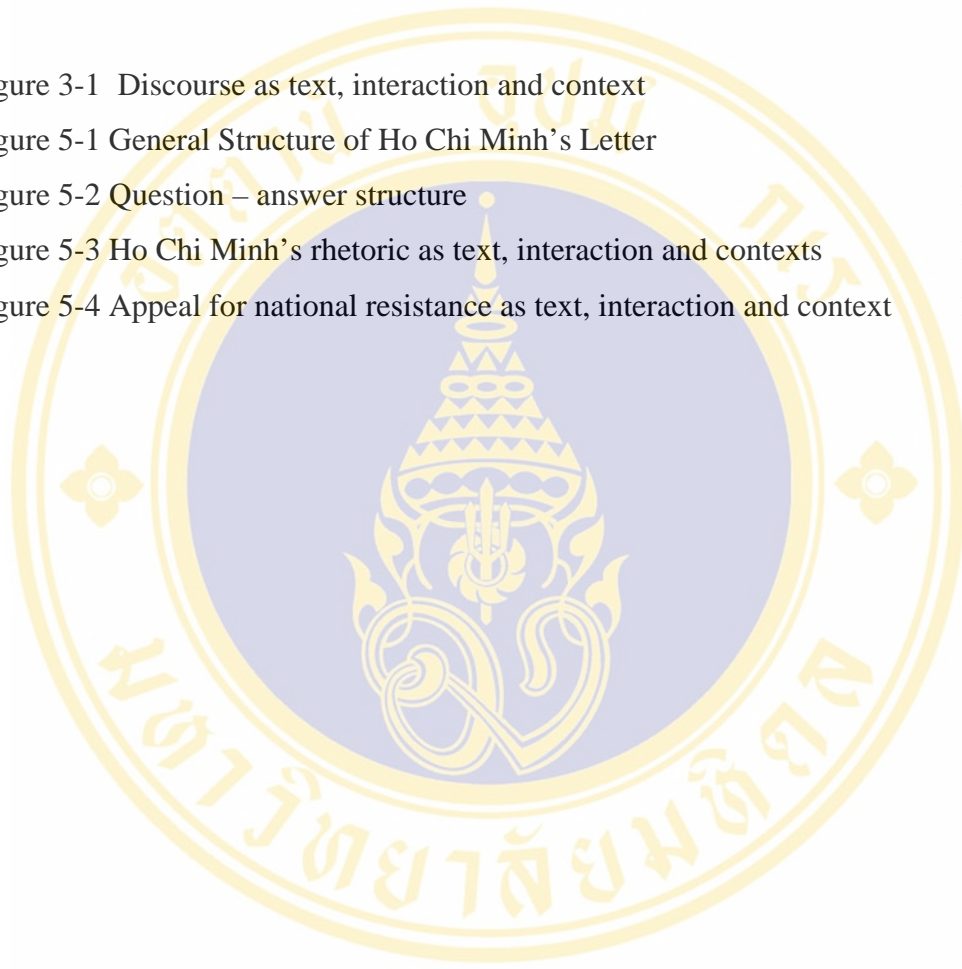
## LIST OF TABLES

	<b>Page</b>
Table 3-1 List of texts	17
Table 4-2 The chronological events during the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954)	24



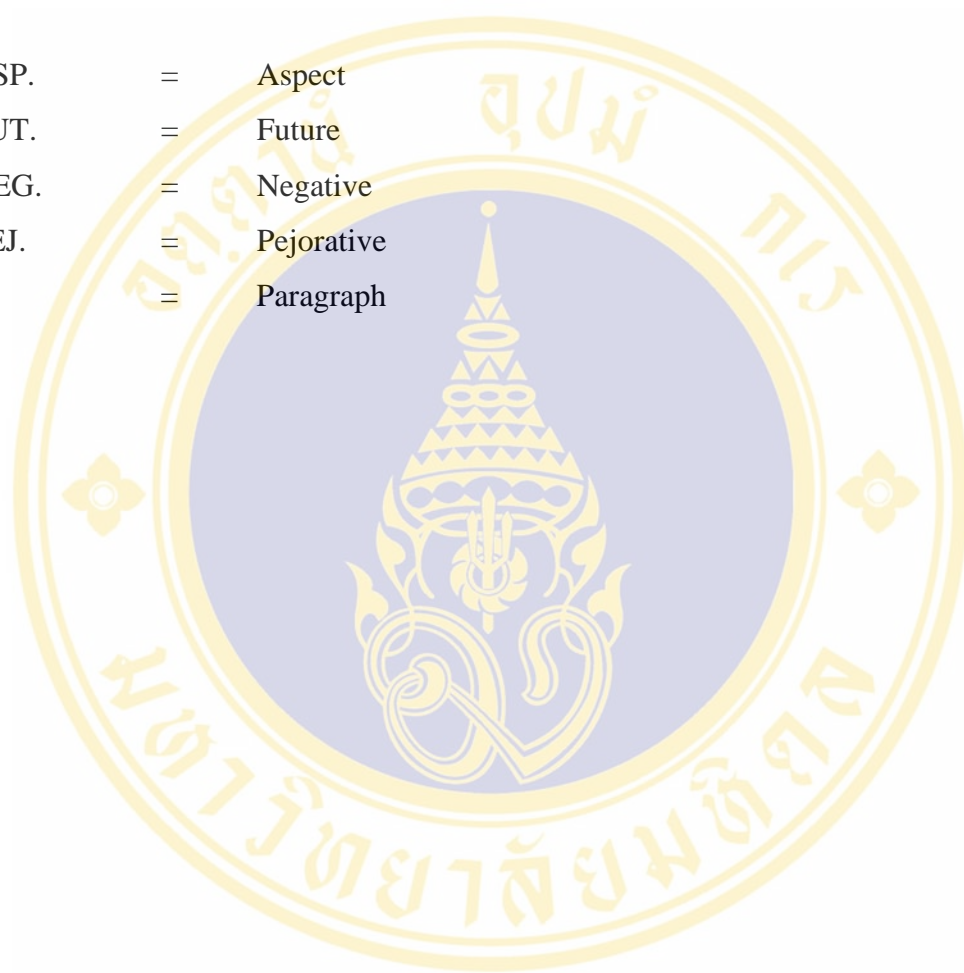
## LIST OF FIGURES

	<b>Page</b>
Figure 3-1 Discourse as text, interaction and context	11
Figure 5-1 General Structure of Ho Chi Minh's Letter	163
Figure 5-2 Question – answer structure	164
Figure 5-3 Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric as text, interaction and contexts	192
Figure 5-4 Appeal for national resistance as text, interaction and context	194



## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

ASP.	=	Aspect
FUT.	=	Future
NEG.	=	Negative
PEJ.	=	Pejorative
¶	=	Paragraph



## CHAPTER I

### INTRODUCTION

#### 1.1 Rationale of the study

Discourse can be studied through many linguistic approaches, not only pure linguistics based on analyzing structure and grammar but also applied sociolinguistics. Relationships of power and social change are another way to study discourse. It proposes language and discourse as an instrument or symbol of power that leads to social motivation especially in political movement. Some discourse studies analyze structure and grammar without taking into account social sciences, cognitive psychology and other sciences. Others study discourse in relation to dynamic social situations in society. Such studies demonstrate that speeches, rhetoric and announcements can represent causes of social movement, e.g., written texts and speeches produced by presidents or political leaders in developed, developing and underdeveloped countries, i.e., President George Washington of the United States of America, Prime minister Margaret Thatcher of The United Kingdom, President Lenin of the Union Soviet of Socialists Republic (USSR), President Mao Tze Tung of the People's Republic of China (PRC), Prime minister Mahathir Mohamad of Malaysia, and President Ho Chi Minh of Vietnam. (Coulthard: 1996, DeCaro: 2003, Fairclough: 1989, 2000, Ghazali: 2004).

In terms of Vietnamese history, the previous literatures show that in every period of history the people have had to fight to liberate themselves from colonial oppression and pursue independence and freedom from ancient Chinese imperialism (from 111 B.C. to 938 A.D.) and modern western imperialism in the period of colonization by France and the United States of America. Even though their fight for independence often ended in defeat or only temporary victory, the Vietnamese people continued to fight for independence of their nation. After World War II, Ho Chi

Minh's the declaration of Independence (September 2, 1945) under the Vietnamese Great Revolution gave the Vietnamese a short time to establish their own country before the outbreak of what can be considered as the First Vietnamese war of liberation<sup>1</sup>. It lasted from December 19, 1946 to August 1, 1954 under the leadership of President Ho Chi Minh until a great victory at Điện Biên Phủ battlefield led to the absolute liberation from the French colony.

This research study will be the first attempt to analyze Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric<sup>2</sup> during the First Vietnamese war of Liberation, an Indochina or Vietnamese war I against French oppressive rule (1946-1954 A.D.), by focusing specifically on the power of language use as an instrument to shape Vietnamese countrymen to participate in political movements against the French colonialists. This study will mainly follow Fairclough's approach (1989) in terms of Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA). This framework is based on two assumptions: (1) social science as social context; and (2) linguistics as discourse in the rule of logistics in social change and the reflection of social situation (Fairclough: 1989). CDA is an interdisciplinary approach with a view of 'language as a form of social practice' (Fairclough, 1989: 22). Furthermore, Fairclough showed three statuses of language or discourse consist of the stage of description, the stage of interpretation and the stage of explanation as a part of society, a social process and a socially conditioned process, conditioned by other (non-linguistic) parts of society (Fairclough: 1992).

In case of Vietnam during the first Vietnamese war of liberation, the study assumes that by using Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA), the approach that considers social contexts together with other linguistic factors to examine Ho Chi Minh's

---

<sup>1</sup> The first Vietnamese war of liberation also known as the Franco-Vietnamese war, the first Vietnamese war, the first Indochina war, the Franco-Vietminh War, and the Vietnamese war of resistance was fought in the entire country of Vietnam from December 19, 1946 until August 1, 1954 which was the war between the Vietnamese under the leadership of President Ho Chi Minh and his government, and the French colonialists or the French Union's French Far East Expeditionary Corps supported by Bao Dai's Vietnamese National Army.

<sup>2</sup> Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric is defined in this research as his writings which were letters produced during the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954 A.D.) and the writings which had contents related with the war strategies, the annual letters in seven years war, and the letter appeal for the battlefields.

rhetoric during 1946-1954 A.D. would reveal the relation of Vietnam's context and Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric which might have played a powerful (important) role in leading the Vietnamese to participate in the war. Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric were one of the significant factors causing the revolution (Nguyen: 2004). Many sources have cited Ho Chi Minh's letters or speeches as utterly powerful that they are considered as the trigger of political movement against colonialism (DeCaro: 2003, Mai: 2002, Nguyen: 2004, Pham: 2006), e.g., Appeal for General Insurrection (August 1945), The Declaration of Independence (September 2, 1945), To our fellow-countrymen in Nam Bo (September 26, 1945). Other factors, both internal and external, that might have played a role are also considered, e.g., the condition of returning to French rule after the Second World War, social crisis such as oppression and starvation, and the movement in other third world countries against to their liberation from colonization. This social crisis led Ho Chi Minh to appeal against the oppressive rule to his fellow-countrymen. His appeals were an instrument to reflect social situations in Vietnam from 1946 to 1954 A.D. and to persuade the Vietnamese to decline the French rule (Mai: 2002, Nguyen: 1965). This result implies that the Ho Chi Minh's appeal to the Vietnamese was the mechanism that shaped and encouraged Vietnamese people to take part in the war of resistance, succeeded in ousting the French and led to the absolute independence of the nation in August 1954 (Le: 2006, Nguyen: 2004). Due to Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric regarding group solidarity, the war was won, leading to freedom and independence of the nation (Cu: 1973, Pham: 2006).

## **1.2 Research questions**

- 1.2.1 What are the discourse strategies found in Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric?
- 1.2.2 How did his speeches shape the Vietnamese to participate in the war?
- 1.2.3 What were the internal and external factors that influenced Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and Vietnamese resistance?

### **1.3 Objectives of the study**

1.3.1 To reflect the significance of language as an instrument and symbol of power in political motivation to oppose, fight and appeal and affect social change.

1.3.2 To examine the correlation between social motivation and social change and the power of language use in the Vietnamese context

1.3.3 To investigate Ho Chi Minh's discourse strategies in his rhetoric during the First Vietnamese war for Liberation (1946-1954 A.D.)

1.3.4 To analyze the characteristics of Ho Chi Minh's language use that shaped the Vietnamese to participate in the war in all strategies

1.3.5 To use the questionnaires to ask the Vietnamese people about the power of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric

### **1.4 Benefits of the study**

This research contributes to the linguistic field as a whole. The contribution of this study is listed as follows:

1.4.1 This study proposes a significance of language use as a symbol of power in rhetoric, speech and advertising can shape society especially political social movements such as in this study; it shows the power of language use in discourse study as a political instrument in Vietnamese political motivation during the First Vietnamese war of Liberation (1946-1954 A.D.).

1.4.2 This study realizes the dynamic of social situations can be instigated by correlating factors both internal and external factors in which social context is an important factor in discourse as the text or rhetoric was produced in conjunction with the social situation occurring at that time and a leader's rhetoric can persuade and convince people to follow his/her purpose if the people trust and admire their leaders. In this case, Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric served as the fuse lit against the French oppressive rule.

1.4.3 This research will indicate the characteristics of Ho Chi Minh's language use that played a role in influencing the Vietnamese to join in the revolution.

1.4.4 This research will contribute to the linguistic field as a whole by adding to the literature of the studies on the power of language use in the Vietnamese context.

## **1.5 Scope of the study**

1.5.1 Studying and analyzing Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric during the First Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954 A.D.) in particular the written texts which had the aim to inspire, to shape, and to encourage the people against aggressors and towards victory over the French colonialists.

1.5.2 Analyzing social context in Vietnam and other relevant nations during the period of the post-colonial independent movement

## **1.6 Assumption**

Vietnamese social motivation for the First Vietnamese war of Liberation (1945-1954 A.D.) against the French reactionary colonialists was aroused from the relationship between contexts which were Vietnamese internal situation of inner social conditions of suffering and oppression under the French oppressive rule and external situations in other countries which were mobilizing during 1946-1954,. The Vietnamese rose up and opposed the French colonialists because they thought that the best way to eliminate this suffering and oppression are independence and freedom ruled by Vietnamese themselves as suggested and shaped by Ho Chi Minh's thoughts and mottos during the war. A crucial factor in this was President Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric induced the Vietnamese to struggle for the independence of their homeland. Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric shaped the Vietnamese to participate in the war in many ways not only by his language style but also the admiration, sacrifice and faithfulness of the Vietnamese towards their President. Thus from the case of Vietnam, it is proposed that changing social situations affected the relation between context as an impulse to produce texts (discourses) and language as an instrument of power and media in shaping and encouraging the Vietnamese to participate in the war.

## CHAPTER II

### LITERATURE REVIEW

This chapter presents the previous studies that have been done on the related topic. The previous studies focus encompass those that are particularly on Ho Chi Minh's language, as well as those that use Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) as an analytical framework. This chapter describes general information that provides the basis for the research.

#### 2.1 Ho Chi Minh's language use

Studies on Ho Chi Minh's language style have mostly been done by Vietnamese linguists. These studies are focused on the linguistic aspects of his speech i.e. the principles of his writing, using proverbs, idioms, various types of vocabulary. His language style is mainly based on the structure of to 'write to whom and what for' (Le Anh Tra: 1960). Ho Chi Minh's literature generally speaks to the Vietnamese people. His choice of vocabulary, sentence and structure in his language style is specifically tailored to appeal to the Vietnamese people (Dao Than: 1970). He uses both old Vietnamese vocabulary and Sino-Vietnamese loan words. He chooses suitable words to use in his work. Even though it is difficult to differentiate between the original Vietnamese words and Sino-Vietnamese words, he carefully chooses to use suitable and popular words so that his addressees can easily understand (Le Xan Thai: 1970). Additionally, he also constructs new words that enrich Vietnamese literature (Le Anh Tra: 1960). The uses of proverbs and idioms are the norm in Vietnamese literature, and he employs them accordingly. This makes his language more understandable because these factors appeal to the Vietnamese of all social strata (Tran Dan Tien: 1970). Both the literate and illiterate are able to comprehend him. He prefers short phrases that directly convey his meaning, and does not use long words

that might cause his addressees to be unclear as to what he wants to present (Vien Ngon Ngu Hoc: 1980).

For the sentence structure, he uses many kinds of sentences e.g. imperative sentences for the appeal, question-answer sentences, etc. (Pham Van Phu: 1970). He primarily adapts the rhyme of the poem in writing prose and letters. This is a specific style of his writing that is different from other Vietnamese novelists (Vien Ngon Ngu Hoc: 1970). Writing using rhyme gives his writing much elegance. Ho Chi Minh wrote many types of writing, for example poems, letters, books, and news. His writings are chiefly about his reflections on society (Tran Dan Tien: 1970). He also used to write news about the oppression of the French colonialists in Indochina for a French newspaper. Furthermore, he wrote poems during his time as a prisoner in China, describing the political movement and the liberation of country (Le Xuan Thai: 1970). His writing, especially the letters and doctrines, are used in the political movement. His writings influenced the Vietnamese people to take part in all the political movements of Vietnam, and play the role of the media in communicating with Ho's people. In addition, they represent an efficacious way to politically motivate people, a strategy in Ho's political plan (Nguyen To Uyen: 2004).

Pham (2006) describes Ho Chi Minh's language use from Ho's ideology and philosophy. He proposes that Ho's writing is following the systematic thinking processes present in his philosophy. As for Ho theoretical style, Nguyen (1971) describes how Ho Chi Minh is particular about the idea of 'using easy language so that all the Vietnamese can understand', because as a result of the colonialism that the Vietnamese experienced, the people could not go to school and very few knew how to read and write (Ninh: 2002). Moreover, President Ho is cited as a revolutionary fighter and a theorist. He persuaded Vietnamese fellows to follow his revolutionary ideology by using simple, clear, and easy to understand language. He also uses words that are easy to remember and expressions with a strong and deep persuasive force (Pham: 2006). Speaking of Ho Chi Minh's philosophy, an extremely important point to emphasize is its style and appropriate response to the historical evolution of Vietnam (Nguyen: 1971).

## 2.2. The related studies in Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA)

There are many studies that have used the CDA framework to analyze discourse. The studies that have employed the CDA framework are generally focused on an analysis of discourse and political movement, specifically on the issues of struggles of race, gender, politics, and economics.

Ghazali's (2004) study of the rhetoric of Dr. Mahathir Mohamad in the years 1982-1986 examined how ideology and relations of power come into play in the formation of discourse. It used texts that are related to the economic situation in Malaysia to investigate the ways in which the texts are normative, and how they are created from year to year. In addition, it also shows the relationship of the social effect of discourse on the multi-layered Malaysian community; alternately, it is also shown how these effects influenced Mahathir to produce the texts each year. The study shows how Mahathir's language use in the sections on Economy was such that it allowed him to relate to the people in the early 1980s. Furthermore, it exposes the attempts of Mahathir to share his evaluations, beliefs and attitudes with his audiences and the way in which this facilitates relations with them. He could motivate the audience to adopt the attitudes or actions that he wants them to. Therefore, the study shows the power and ideology of the discourse produced by the Prime Minister's speeches in the case of Malaysia.

Another study by Gadavanij (2002) reveals the use of language of Thai politicians. This study investigated the aggressive and informal style of discourse used in Thai parliamentary debates. It argues that the unparliamentary style of the debaters' discourse is the result of discursive strategies used in Thai politicians' speeches. The sociocultural and discourse practices reflect the speaker's attempts to sabotage three competing conjunctures in the Thai political domain. They consist of the debate's formal and actual purposes, Code of Behaviour, and multiple audiences. Additionally, the study shows that the debaters need to balance three contending purposes: the desire of highly partisan members to damage the opposing side, their attempts to seek public support (including the maintenance of face), and their need to stay within the

parliamentary Code of Behaviour. These three purposes lead the author to draw the conclusion that Thai debates exhibited an unparliamentarily debating style employing insignificant linguistic features, and resulted in larger social implications. In spite of it being reflection of social conditions, Thai debating style still possesses the potential to redefine these conditions. Thai no-confidence debates offer accomplished parliamentary speakers the means to achieve contradictory political and linguistic ends within speeches.

Atkins (2003) presents the use of Fairclough's (1989) CDA framework in an analysis of a letter from the Rt. Hon. Sir Norman Fowler MP', the chairman of the ruling Conservative Party, to expatriate Britons in June 1994. The study identified features that probably affected in some way the thinking and actions of the addressees of the letter. It describes an area of concern for both the voting public and political parties not in power in the United Kingdom. Furthermore, it identifies areas of concern and sought to uncover political biases. The study analyzed the language use of Sir Norman and the response of society after his letters. The linguistic characteristics occurring in his letters from the vocabulary to the level of textual structure were also examined.

The struggle of racism and gender by using the CDA framework were analyzed in the discourse especially in the cases of South Africa and Latin America. The study attempts to investigate the use of language in newspapers. It also explains discourse in how the media portrays members of the racial and gender struggle that are seeing equal rights. In this case, the expressive discourse is produced from the social situation and in turn effects social change i.e. protest, social movement, etc. (Coulthard, C.R. & Coulthard, M.: 1996).

The studies of using CDA are more dominantly focused on the explanation of the relationship of the social situations and organizations. They are analyzed from the content of texts, the use of texts, producers and feedback, in each of the studies.

## **CHAPTER III**

### **THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK AND METHODOLOGY**

This chapter is divided into two main parts, consisting of the theoretical framework and the procedure of this study. The theoretical framework of this study is based on the concept of Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) by Fairclough. The procedure undertaken in this study is that of documentary research, interviewing and descriptive analysis.

#### **3.1 Theoretical framework: Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA)**

Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) is an interdisciplinary and contemporary approach combining linguistics, social sciences and cognitive psychology. It assumes that inequality in society causes discourse production. All discourses represent social conditions and contexts in each social situation. The following quote is informative:

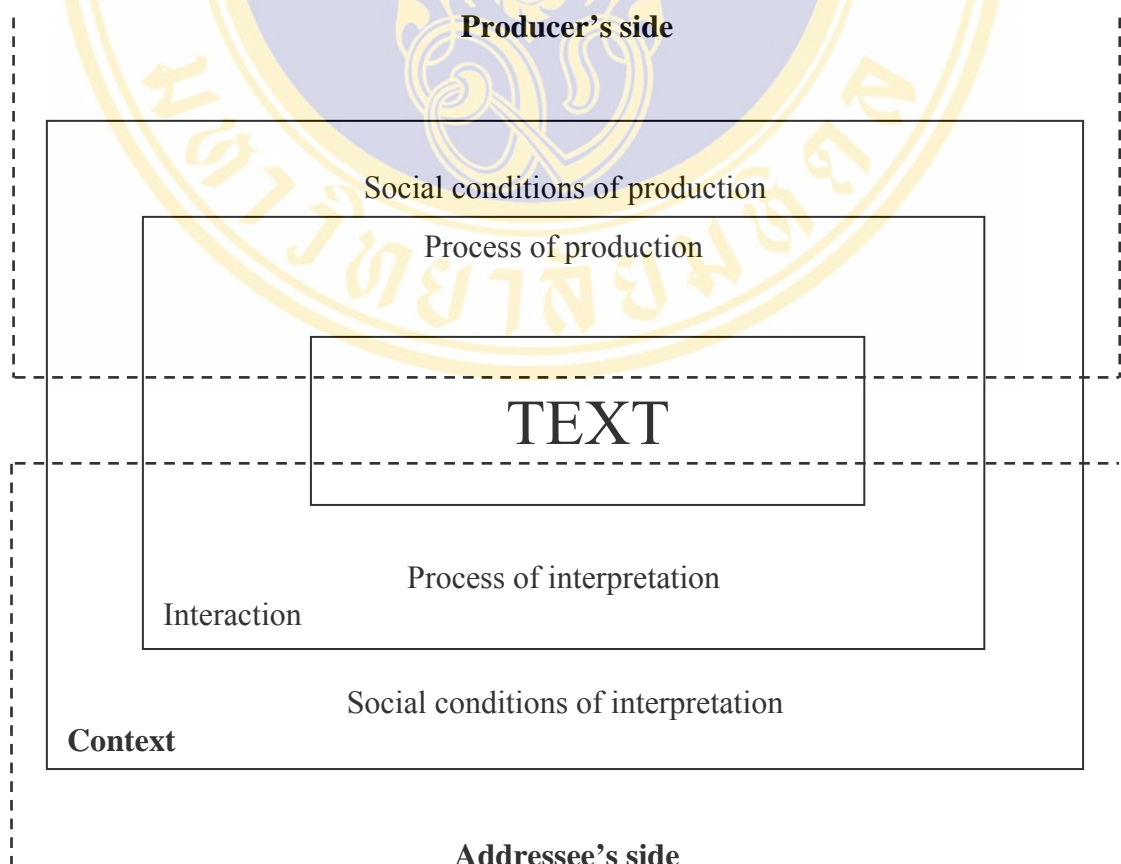
[CDA is the study of] often opaque relationships of causality and determination between (a) discursive practices, events and texts, and (b) wider social and cultural structures, relations and processes; to investigate how such practices, events and text arise out of and are ideologically shaped by relations of power and struggles over power; and to explore how the opacity of these relationships between discourse and society is itself a factor securing power. (Fairclough: 1995b, 132-3 cited by Atkins: 2002, 2)

Fairclough proposed that the relationship between language and social structure is essentially dialectic. He describes text analysis as one part of discourse analysis. Following his CDA, this can be further distinguished into two main levels: the macro and micro levels.

### 3.1.1 Macro level

Macro level refers to the approach that identifies text, interaction, and social context as three elements of a discourse, and their corresponding distinction. Discourse implicates social conditions that can be specified as conditions of discourse production and interpretation. These social conditions are related to different levels of social organization: the social situation or the immediate social environment in which the discourse occurs (Fairclough: 1989, 25). The significance of these social conditions is that they affect how the people produce and interpret texts, and as a result shape the way that texts are produced and their meaning elucidated.

In addition, the view of language as discourse and social practice are analyzed in the processes of production and interpretation. The relationship between texts, processes, social context and the social structures is shown in figure 1:



**Figure 3-1: Discourse as text, interaction and context (Fairclough: 1989, 25)**

The broadest frame in which this figure is circumscribed is that of *'context'* which is explained as a primary factor that leads to the text production. The second component of this figure can be separated into the producer's side and the addressees' side, both being in a relationship with social conditions and process in society. In addition, the relationship of social situation consists of the social conditions of production and the social conditions of interpretation.

The *'social conditions of production'* can be specified as the immediate social environment. They cause the producer to produce discourse and also shape the way in which texts are produced. Meanwhile the *'social conditions of interpretation'* can be specified as the social circumstances that influence the addressees' interpretation. In interpreting the texts, the addressees inadvertently fulfill the important function of providing feedback to society.

The next frame is a subcategory of the broad frame. It is generally analyzed by looking at *'interaction'*, which describes the interplay between the interpreters and producer. This interaction leads to social motivation in the society. Additionally, this frame involves the process of production and the process of interpretation. The process of production is explained as the whole process of social interaction of which a text is just a part of the product. It is also associated with the knowledge of language, representations of the natural and social worlds in habits, values, beliefs and assumptions etc. Meanwhile the other process is that of interpretation, which is what the addressees use to decide their participation in the situation.

Ultimately, the *'text'* is the core of all processes. It is a product rather than process. Even though texts are produced by broad elements, they can also be described as a micro factor that provides feedback to all levels of the factors.

### **3.1.2 Micro level**

Micro level refers to an approach based on three dimensions, or stages, of Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA): a description of text, an interpretation of the

relationship between text and interaction, and an explanation of the relationship between interaction and social context, as shown below.

### a. The stage of description

This stage involves the formal properties of texts which generally analyze, identify and 'label' formal features of a text (Fairclough: 1989, 26). The set of formal features found in each text can be regarded as particular choices of linguistic features such as vocabulary, grammar, punctuation and textual structures. In order to interpret, Fairclough examines the features which are actually present in a text, though it is generally necessary to also take account of what other choices might have been made, i.e. of systems of options in the discourse types which actual features come from (Fairclough: 1989, 110). Therefore, the focus in analyzing texts alternate between what is 'there' and what is 'not there' in the texts. The focus of questions in this stage is presented in three main parts: vocabulary, grammar and textual structure, as illustrated below:

#### A. Vocabulary

1. What *experiential* values do words have?
  - a. What classification schemes are drawn upon?
  - b. Are there words which are ideologically contested?
  - c. Is there rewording or over wording?
  - d. What ideologically significant meaning relations? (synonymy, hyponymy, antonymy) are there between words?
2. What relational values do words have?
  - a. Are there euphemistic expressions?
  - b. Are there markedly formal or informal words?
3. What expressive values do words have?
4. What metaphors are used?

#### B. Grammar

5. What experiential values do grammatical features have?
  - a. What types of process and participant predominate?
  - b. Is agency unclear?
  - c. Are processes what they seem?

- d. Are nominalizations used?
- e. Are sentences active or passive?
- f. Are sentences positive or negative?
- 6. What relational values do grammatical features have?
  - a. What modes (declarative, grammatical question, imperative) are used?
  - b. Are there important features of relational modality?
  - c. Are the pronouns we and you used, and if so, how?
- 7. What expressive values do grammatical features have?
  - a. Are there important features of expressive modality?
- 8. How are (simple) sentences linked together?
  - a. What logical connectors are used?
  - b. Are complex sentences characterized by coordination or subordination?
  - c. What means are used for referring inside and outside the text?

### C. Textual structures

- 9. What interactional conventions are used?
  - a. Are there ways in which one participant controls the turns of others?
- 10. What larger-scale structures does the text have?

(Fairclough: 1989, 110-111)

In conclusion, the ten main questions of the stage of description consist of formal features distinguished in terms of experiential, relational, and expressive values. The experiential values trace the way in which the text stems from the producer's experience of the natural or social world. It has to do with content, knowledge and beliefs. The relational values trace the social relationships that are enacted through the texts, and have to do with relations, namely the social relations and social relationships. Finally, the expressive values trace the producer's evaluation of the reality it relates to, and has to do with subjects and social identities.

### **b. The stage of interpretation**

The stage of interpretation is concerned with the cognitive processes of participants, which are involved the relationship between text and interaction – while seeing the text as a product of a production – and as a resource in the process of interpretation. The interpretation emphasizes the essential similarity between what the

analyst does and what participants do. It also deals with the participants' processes of text production as well as text interpretation. The interpretation of text is generated through a combination of what is in the text and what the interpreters bring to the interpretation. From the textual point of view of the interpreters, formal features of the text are cues that activate elements of interpretation. The interpretations are generated through the dialectical interplay of cues and interpreters.

### **c. Stage of explanation**

The stage of explanation deals with the relationship between interaction and social context with the social determination of the processes of production and social effects. In addition, it associates the relationship of discourses to processes of struggle and power relations. It is the relationships between temporary social events and the more enduring social structure that shape and are shaped by these situations. The Explanation dimension is also considered as a part of the social process and social practice. It proposes how the social process and social practice are determined by social discourse structures and what reproductive effects discourses have on these structures in preserving or shifting them. These social determinations and effects influence the interpreters, which are always constrained by the particular social structure they are embedded within. This in turn shapes discourses, and discourses support or change social structures. Hence, the social structure focuses on relations of power. Meanwhile the social processes and practices are focused on processes and practices of social struggle.

## **3.2 The procedure of the study**

### **3.2.1 Data collection**

#### **a. Source of data**

Documentary research data comes from sources which can be separated into two levels, consisting of primary sources such as Ho Chi Minh's original writings and

secondary sources such as related books, research, documents, journals and articles taken from educational libraries in various languages such as English, Vietnamese and Thai both of inside Thailand and foreign countries as Vietnam and Singapore during the time of fieldwork. Furthermore, online information and e-sources were collected via the Internet on the main topics as described below:

- Vietnamese historical information during the first Vietnamese war of liberation during 1946-1954 A.D., especially the Vietnamese political circumstances including internal and external components in this period leading to the first Vietnamese war of liberation. These are related to the situation during the war, and are used in the analysis to explain the relationship between Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and the Vietnamese context.

- Ho Chi Minh's Bibliography, which consists of information on Ho Chi Minh's life from the time he was born to the early period of his political movement in foreign countries, especially France, as well as his political movement before and during the first Vietnamese war of liberation.

- Ho Chi Minh's ideology, which consists of his ideological background that can be distinguished into two main ideologies: that of Confucianism and of communism. These ideologies are important in influencing Ho Chi Minh in his production of rhetoric.

- Ho Chi Minh's language use, as studied by the Vietnamese linguists. These related studies have analyzed and documented Ho Chi Minh's language style.

- Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA), focusing on Fairclough's (1989) approach to analyze discourse study simultaneously with social science. This framework will be used in this study, especially in the analytical component.

### **b. Selecting Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric (during 1946-1954)**

The rhetoric analyzed in this study is drawn from 1946-1954 A.D. Texts involving the encouragement to join the war and the way to conquer the French aggressors are selected in order to prove the hypothesis that Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric style inspired the Vietnamese to struggle in the war. Twenty-one of the texts are from the original Vietnamese sources of Ho Chi Minh's writings during the first Vietnamese war of liberation from Ho Chi Minh's complete works tome 4-7 (Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập 4-7) edited by Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành, National Politics Publishing house: Hanoi, 2000. These texts are letters distributed during the war, and can be categorised into three main groups as below:

1) Annual rhetoric: from the initial point of war to the end of war (1946-1953). These ten letters contained summaries of the yearly situation during the war from the Appeal for national resistance to the Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for national resistance.

2) Rhetoric in the battlefield, which was collected from two important battlefields: the Cao-Bac-Lang battlefield and the Dien Bien Phu battlefield. There are six letters in total.

3) The Vietnamese war strategies and important policies related to the war e.g. the Appeal for patriotic emulation and the Appeal the fellow-countrymen to increase production. There are five letters in total.

**Table 3-1 List of texts**

<b>Text</b>	<b>Topic</b>	<b>Text genre</b>
1	Appeal for national resistance (Lời kêu gọi toàn quốc kháng chiến)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
2	Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist (Lời kêu gọi đồng bào phá hoại để kháng chiến)	Letter: war strategy

Table 3-1 List of texts (Cont.)

<b>Text</b>	<b>Topic</b>	<b>Text genre</b>
3	Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country (Gửi các chiến sĩ vệ quốc đoàn, tự vệ và dân quân toàn quốc)	Letter: war strategy
4	Appeal issued after six months of resistance (Lời kêu gọi nhân kỷ niệm 6 tháng kháng chiến)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
5	Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Lời kêu gọi nhân kỷ niệm một năm kháng chiến toàn quốc)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
6	Appeal for patriotic emulation (Lời kêu gọi thi đua yêu nước)	Letter: war strategy
7	Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Lời kêu gọi trong dịp 1.000 ngày kháng chiến)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
8	Appeal to exert patriotism (Lời kêu gọi thi đua ái quốc)	Letter: war strategy
9	Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance (Lời kêu gọi nhân ngày kỷ niệm hai năm kháng chiến toàn quốc)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
10	Appeal the fellow-countrymen to increase production (Lời kêu gọi đồng bào tăng gia sản xuất)	Letter: war strategy
11	Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the national resistance (Lời kêu gọi nhân dịp ba năm toàn quốc kháng chiến)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
12	Appeal for the Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son campaign (Lời kêu gọi về chiến dịch Cao – Bắc – Lạng)	Letter: appeal at the battlefield

Table 3-1 List of texts (Cont.)

<b>Text</b>	<b>Topic</b>	<b>Text genre</b>
13	Appeal to Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son fellow-countrymen (Lời kêu gọi đồng bào Cao – Bắc - Lạng)	Letter: appeal at the battlefield
14	Telegram, sent to fighters at Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son battlefield (Điện gửi các chiến sĩ mặt trận Cao – Bắc – Lạng)	Letter: appeal at the battlefield
15	Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Lời kêu gọi nhân ngày 19-12-1950)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
16	Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Lời kêu gọi nhân dịp kỷ niệm lần thứ năm ngày toàn quốc kháng chiến)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
17	Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Lời kêu gọi nhân dịp kỷ niệm 6 năm toàn quốc kháng chiến)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
18	Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Lời kêu gọi nhân dịp kỷ niệm 7 năm toàn quốc kháng chiến)	Letter: Annual appeal for resistance
19	Address, sent to cadres and fighters at the Dien Bien Phu battlefield (Thư gửi cán bộ và chiến sĩ mặt trận Điện Biên Phủ)	Letter: appeal at the battlefield
20	Address, sent to cadres and fighters at the Dien Bien phu battle front (Thư gửi cán bộ và chiến sĩ ở mặt trận Điện Biên Phủ)	Letter: appeal at the battlefield

Table 3-1 List of texts (Cont.)

Text	Topic	Text genre
21	Telegram from the central committee party and Ho Chi Minh President send to cadres and fighters at Dien Bien Phu battle front (Điện của trung ương đảng và của chủ tịch Hồ Chí Minh gửi cán bộ và chiến sĩ ở mặt trận Điện Biên Phủ)	Letter: appeal at the battlefield

### c. Data translation

The rhetoric will be translated into English via both word for word and free translation. Vietnamese native speakers and Vietnamese specialists in Vietnamese historians and linguistics proofread the translated version.

### d. Interviewing Vietnamese people

Data will be collected by using a descriptive questionnaire (see more in appendix III) and in-depth interviews of 14 Vietnamese people in the north, centre and south of Vietnam (see more in appendix II). The Vietnamese interviewees are Vietnamese who have had personal experience of the first Vietnamese war of liberation. They hail from various fields of experience, such as Vietnamese fellow countrymen, soldiers, traders, and intellectuals. Conducting in-depth interviews will shed light on Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric style and attitude as understood by the general Vietnamese population.

## 3.2.2 Data analysis

### a. Descriptive analysis based on documentary research

Analysis will be done on related books, research, journals and articles from both primary sources and secondary sources. The data analysis is concerned with the

Vietnamese historical background and both internal and external factors in this period that led to the Vietnamese political movement. Furthermore, analysis will simultaneously be done together with Ho Chi Minh ideology and personal background that are key factors of Ho Chi Minh's text production.

### **b. Results from the questions**

The data analysis will show how much of a role Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric style played in influencing Vietnamese attitudes and opinions towards the reaction against the French aggressors.

### **c. Analyzing Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric according to Fairclough's Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) approach**

The Ho Chi Minh discourses were analyzed according to Fairclough's Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) approach, from the micro level to the macro level. Critical Discourse Analysis (CDA) is chosen as the conceptual framework as it reflects all dimensions of discourse that relate to social context.

### **3.2.3 Writing a summary and report of the research findings**

Conclusions of the study and recommendations for future studies will be presented.

## **CHAPTER IV**

### **VIETNAMESE HISTORICAL INFORMATION (1946-1954)**

#### **AND HO CHI MINH'S IDEOLOGY**

This chapter describes the Vietnamese general background. The general background includes the historical background of the first Vietnamese war of the liberation (1946-1954) and Ho Chi Minh's biography and ideology. The chapter will illustrate the situations or contexts that are elements of analysis (under the CDA framework), which lead to Ho Chi Minh's text production. Specifically, three parts from this chapter will be used for the analysis in chapter V, particularly the relationship between text, interpretation and context. They are replaced by Ho Chi Minh's text production and the Vietnamese situation during the war.

#### **4.1 The first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954 A.D.)**

Historically, Vietnamese people have fought to liberate themselves from colonial oppression. They pursued independence and freedom from Chinese imperialism as a subjugated province of China for more than a thousand years (111 B.C.-938 A.D.). In addition, they attempted to liberate their country from western imperialism in the period of the French colonization during the mid-nineteenth century (Anderson: 2005, Karnow: 1997). Even though their struggles were many a time in vain, the Vietnamese people did not abandon their fight for their country's independence.

During the century of French oppressive rule, many Vietnamese patriots attempted to liberate their homeland from the French. Unfortunately, they could not succeed in their aspiration because they were defeated by the French colonialists. That caused Vietnam to be separated into three parts consisting of Tonkin (the North), Annam (the central), and Cochin China (the South). Collectively they together with

Cambodia and Laos came to be known as Indochina under the French colonial territory (Nguyen: 1975a). After World War II (1939-1945), the French force was weakened by the Japanese and this prompted the Vietnamese Great Revolution on August, 1945. Under the leadership of Ho Chi Minh, Vietnam won over the bicolony of France and Japan. It led to the declaration of Vietnam (2 September 1945), after which the Vietnamese had a short time to establish their own country. This was before the French colonialists returned to reassert their control over Vietnam in 1946, leading to the powerful patriotic movement that came to be known as the first Vietnamese war of resistance (Anderson: 2005, Nguyen, 1975a, Ninh: 2002).

The beginning of the first Vietnamese war of liberation, or the Franco-Vietnamese war, during 1946-1954 was initiated after President Ho Chi Minh declared the “Appeal for National Resistance” on December 12, 1946 (Anderson: 2005, Le: 1975, Mai: 2002). At first, the French had little difficulties re-establishing control. They drove Ho Chi Minh out of Hanoi and into hiding in the countryside. In 1949, the French colonialists established a nominally independent national government under the leadership of the former emperor, Bao Dai, an ineffectual puppet of the French who was unable to assert any real independent authority (Mai: 2002, Osborne: 1982). Yet, the Vietnamese continued to fight against the French regime and slowly increased its control over large areas of the countryside (Pham: 2006). The French appealed to the United States for support, and in February 1950 the Truman administration formally recognized the Bao Dai regime and agreed to provide it with direct military and economic aid (Short: 1989, Nguyen: 1975a). For the next four years, during what became the First Indochina war, President Truman and then President Eisenhower continued to support the French military campaign against the Vietnamese Government, that was under the leadership of Ho Chi Minh or Viet Minh. In 1954, by some calculations the United States was paying eighty percent of France's war costs (Anderson: 2005, Mai: 2002). In spite of this, the war went badly for the French. On May 1954, at the siege at Dien Bien Phu – a major battle in the far northwest corner of Vietnam, the battle turned into a prolonged and horrible siege with the French position steadily deteriorating (Le: 1975, Short: 1989, Irving: 1975). The defense of Dien Bien Phu collapsed and the French government decided the time had come to leave. The

first Vietnamese war for liberation had come to an end. It led to The Geneva Accords on July 21, 1954 which divided Vietnam into two parts at the seventeenth longitudes: Ho Chi Minh's Communists were ceded the North, while Bao Dai's regime was granted the South (Anderson: 2005, Le: 1975, Woodside: 1986).

**Table 4-2 The chronological events during the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954)**

2 September 1945	- Ho Chi Minh declared the Declaration of Independence of Vietnam.
23 November 1946	- The Indochinese conflict broke out in Hai Phong between the Vietnamese Government and the French colonialists. - The French killed over 6,000 Vietnamese civilians by naval bombardment. Ho Chi Minh declared the Appeal for National resistance on December . - Ho Chi Minh's government was forced to evacuate the capital to the remote mountains in the North area.
1947	- The French colonialists launched a strategy to take out the Viet Minh communications center at Ban Can. - The French colonialists tried to capture Ho Chi Minh but it failed. They killed 9,000 Vietnamese soldiers during the campaign.
1948	- The French colonialists began to negotiate with Bao Dai, the Vietnamese emperor, to lead an autonomous government under the French Union of Nations.
1949	- The Vietnamese government rapidly denounced the Bảo Đại government and stated that they wanted "real independence, not Bảo Đại independence".

<b>Table 4-2 The chronological events during the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954) (Conts.)</b>	
1950	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>-The United States began to give military aid to France in the form of weaponry and military observers.</li> <li>- The war began to intensify when the Vietnamese people’s army under the leadership of General Vo Nguyen Giap went on the offensive, attacking isolated French bases along the Chinese border.</li> <li>- China and the Soviet Union of Socialist Republic (USSR) recognized Ho Chi Minh as the legitimate ruler of Vietnam and sent more supplies and material aid to his Government.</li> </ul>
1951	<p>- The military situation began to improve for the French colonialists’ side. They held Vietnamese Government in place and used the French troops to smash the Vietnamese troops. Although the French troops gained success but that was negated by the increasing opposition to the war in France. The French government asked for more money from America.</p>
1952	<p>The Vietnamese troops launched attacks on Hoa Binh forcing the French troops to withdraw to their main positions. They cut French supply lines and began to seriously wear down the resolve of the French forces. The Vietnamese troops were rapidly evolving into a well-equipped conventional army. The French troops could not stand against them in remote areas where their forces were concentrated.</p>

<b>Table 4-2 The chronological events during the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954) (Conts.)</b>	
1953	In Dien Bien Phu, General Vo Nguyen Giap, seeing the weakness of the French position, started moving most of his forces from the De Lattre line to Điện Biên Phủ. By mid-December, most of the French and Tai who worked for the French colonialists in the hills were wiped out by Vietnamese ambushes.
1954	The Battle of Dien Bien Phu broke up in 1954. It became the last major battle between the French and the Vietnamese in the First Indochina War. The battle began on March 13 when the Vietnamese troops attacked and surprised the French with heavy artillery. It led to the loss of the French troops and the victory of Vietnam. The Victory of Vietnamese troops at Dien Bien Phu led to the 1954 Geneva accords on July 21, 1954.

## 4.2 Ho Chi Minh's biography

President Hồ Chí Minh (May 19, 1890-September 2, 1969) or Uncle Ho (Bác Hồ) was the most important person in modern Vietnamese history who was a hero of the Vietnamese people. He was the leader who led Vietnam into independence and freedom from French, Japanese and American troops. His bibliography shows why Vietnamese countrymen and other people in many countries praised and respected him.

Ho Chi Minh or Nguyen Sinh Cung was born in Hoang Tru Village and grew up in Kim Lien Village, Nam Dan District, Nghe An province, Vietnam. He was born into a family which held to Confucian traditions – especially his father Nguyen Sinh Sac who was a Confucian scholar. Thus, he came from a background steeped in the traditional way of life and Confucian thinking. He had two siblings, his brother

Nguyen Tat Dat, a geomancer and traditional herbalist and his sister Bach Lien (or Nguyen Thi Thanh) who worked as a clerk in the French Army who was in the Vietnamese movement against the French. When he was 10 years old, he received the name Nguyen Tat Thanh. Ho Chi Minh also received a modern education under the French educational system in Hue province. Unfortunately, when he was a secondary student, he retired from school because he became a messenger in the Vietnamese movement against the French (Archer: 1971, Duiker: 2000, Fenn: 1973).

Then, Ho Chi Minh went to Saigon (Ho Chi Minh City) in 1911, and joined a ship en route to Marseille, France as a cabin-boy. This was Ho's first time abroad and it was not easy. He had to work hard, such as being a cleaner, waiter, cook helper, etc. Seeking to help Vietnam gain independence from the French, he immersed himself in the public libraries and other places in France. In addition, he also paid close attention to current affairs and political issues. He lived in England during 1913-1917 and embraced Communism while living abroad in France from 1917-1923 as a writer in a French newspaper. He wrote on the inequality and suffering in the colonies of Vietnam and other undeveloped countries at that time (Fenn: 1973, Osborne: 1982, Pham: 2006).

In 1941, He returned to Vietnam to establish the Viet Minh independence movement. During World War II (1939-1945) as a leader of Viet Minh, he conducted successful military action against the Japanese forces and later against the French colonialists under the great revolution on August, 194, which lead to the declaration Democratic Republic of Vietnam on September 2, 1945. Ho Chi Minh became the first president of Vietnam when he forced Emperor Bao Dai to abdicate, but this was not recognized internationally (Duiker: 2000, Short: 1989, The Commission for Research on Party History (CRPH): 1995).

Unfortunately, Ho Chi Minh's new government was not accepted by France and America, causing another eight years of war in order to liberate itself from the returning French rule. Under the victory of Ho Chi Minh, Vietnam was liberated, but only in the north. Ho tried to re-unite North Vietnam with South Vietnam under a

Communist government via insertion and insurrection during the 1960s against the American troops in Vietnam until his death in the second Vietnam war (Le Kinh Dich: 2000, Mai: 2002, Woodside: 1976).

President Ho Chi Minh died on the late evening of September 2, 1969 at his home in Hanoi at the age of 79. After his death, his body was put on display in a mausoleum in Hanoi. At the end of the war in 1975, because of his deeds during his presidency, Ho Chi Minh was the center of a large personality cult in North Vietnam which increased in numbers after his death. The former capital of South Vietnam, Saigon, was renamed Ho Chi Minh City on 2 July 1976 to praise him. All of the Vietnamese called him ‘Uncle Ho’ or ‘bác Hồ’. Ho Chi Minh appears everywhere in the public spaces with his classic speech “Nothing is more precious than independence and liberty. (Không có gì quý hơn độc lập, tự do.)” (Pham: 2006).

#### **4.3 Ho Chi Minh’s movement and ideology in the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954)**

“A revolutionary has to rely on opportunity and position, to make use of them and to create them.” (Pham: 2006, 17) was stated by Ho Chi Minh’s revolutionary ideology in systematic thought. Ho Chi Minh’s practical and theoretical revolution stemmed from his two main ideologies of Western and Eastern thought (DeCaro: 2002, Willmott: 1971). He could efficiently blend the two systems of Marxism-Leninism and Confucianism. His use of widely-held Confucian concepts ensured his acceptance by the masses, and his incorporation of Marxist-Leninist thought served to inject much-needed vigor into the revolutionary movement. He remarked “*The path to national salvation is proletarian revolution.*” (Pham: 2006, 18).

Ho Chi Minh’s ideology during the war of resistance had a principle view point on the three liberations – of nation, of society and of man – interweaved and unified (Pham: 2006). It incorporated characteristics of the liberation movement from every period in other countries. His vital focus was man, who could motivate the objective and driving force of revolution (Nguyen: 1971, Pham: 2006). This focus

permeated his ideology and method of revolution in fighting aggression as establishing the national people's democratic revolution society in socialist revolution (Nguyen: 1975b, Lockhart: 1989). His theories on man also took into consideration the various social strata in accordance with the circumstances of Vietnamese society, especially the peasants (Willmott: 1971). Furthermore, he believed in the people's faith and relied on them by constructing their strengths and wholly developing their abilities in the revolution. These lead to the successful struggle for national liberation from colonialism. Hence, he instilled his revolutionary work based on the truth that revolution was the work of the people, by the people and for the people (DeCaro: 2002, Pham: 2006).

As for war strategies, he employed the theory of the protracted liberation war using various methods. He mobilized all groups of armed and political forces – from young to old people, men to women, all religions, and all social stratum in the society from peasants to intellectuals (Irving: 1975, Le: 2000). He was combining guerilla warfare everywhere with decisive blows from main force units, combining military, political and diplomatic struggle, combining the strength of the whole nation. In addition, his accomplishment in national liberation followed the rule of socialism “*Only in socialism and communism can we find our liberation*” (Pham: 2006, 34) and the rule of three categories which shaped his theory and art of people's war – all people, all-sided; using the strength of the whole nation; and of the support of progressive people (Woodside: 1986, Pham: 2006).

With regards to the Communist Party, Ho Chi Minh sought to focus on the proletarianization and revolutionization of the working class, imbuing them with industriousness, thrift, integrity, righteousness, and public spiritedness, to abide by collectivism and reject individualism (Ministry of National Defense, Institute of Military History: 2006, Nguyen: 1971, The Commission for Research on Party History: 1995). He advocated the Party as a factor of paramount importance that ensures the victory of the revolution, because it could mobilize the masses leading to patriotic movement. As for the relationship between the Party and the people, he put forth the viewpoint that the Party and the members were purely civil servants (Archer:

1971, Mai: 2002). The Party was reminded to keep close contact with the masses, to respect the people's role of master, sow vigilance, and to struggle against the aggressive colonialists (Duiker: 2000, Pham: 2006). It was constructed to be a vast and permanent school of struggle and of revolution (Nguyen: 1975a, Pham: 2006).

In addition, he also emphasized diplomatic war strategies to guide the Vietnamese nation to win broad international support in its war against the French aggressive colonialists (Ministry of National Defense, Institute of Military History: 2006, Ninh: 2002). He fostered Vietnamese kinship not only in the peoples of the socialist countries and the third world countries, but also in allied countries all over the world where they felt a sense of comradeship with his struggle against colonialism and imperialism (Decaro: 2002). He instructed the Vietnamese to support all progressive movements, to love and respect all nations and fulfill their obligation toward them; to treasure, preserve and develop their friendship with all forces and organizations (Willmott: 1971).

During the particularly difficult circumstances of war, he urged all the Vietnamese countrymen to fight against three crucial difficulties: hunger, ignorance, and foreign aggression (Mai: 2002, Nguyen: 1971, Willmott: 1971). He encouraged the Vietnamese people to gradually consolidate people's power, carry out land reform, organize the peasants into cooperatives and to build up the economic infrastructure. He developed the educational culture, health service, and gradually moulded socialist thinking into a leading influence in the people's spiritual lives in order to create good relationships between men (Ministry of National Defense, Institute of Military History: 2006, Nguyen: 1971, 1975a). Under the motto "*building while fighting*", he built a new society that mobilized people from various strata all over Vietnam. The North battlefield into an efficient rear guard force heroically fighting, supplying manpower and wealth to the patriotic war of resistance (Pham: 2006, 38).

In conclusion, the strategy of the 'do-or-die' struggle between the Vietnamese patriots and the powerful imperialist troops showed the character and significance of the war which which was supported by the whole of mankind, as many countries

evaluated and affirmed (DeCaro: 2000). The war of resistance justified a confrontation between the liberation movement of the Third World countries that was represented by Vietnamese patriotism, and neo-imperialism that was represented by the French aggressive colonialists, between righteousness and unrighteousness, and between civilization and brutality (Mai: 2002, Ninh: 2002, Nguyen: 1971, 1975b).



## CHAPTER V

### CRITICAL DISCOURSE ANALYSIS (CDA) AND HO CHI MINH'S RHETORIC IN THE FIRST VIETNAMESE WAR OF LIBERATION (1946-1954)

#### 5.1 Introduction

Discourse analysis using CDA identifies the basis of text, interaction, and social context as three elements of discourse, and their corresponding distinction. President Ho declared the Appeal for national resistance on December 19, 1946, which marked the breakout of the war between the French colonialists and the Vietnamese under his leadership, leading to the first Vietnamese war of liberation from 1946-1954. The impetus for Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric in motivating the Vietnamese to struggle during that time stemmed from (1) the interior situation and the political motivation to liberate their own countries all over the world, as well as (2) the exterior situation that prompted him to produce the texts that were used as tools to shape the war strategy in various ways. Meanwhile, the same texts were used as encouragement to the Vietnamese to struggle in the war.

During the time of the war, Ho Chi Minh used letters as instrumental to shape and encourage all the Vietnamese to struggle and participate in the war that was called the war of resistance. Therefore, the text does not have only a literal meaning; since it is produced by the encompassing contexts, that its meaning or interpretation cannot be separated from its relationship with the social contexts and the producer's ideology. In the case of Vietnam during the war, Ho produced his letters with the basis on not only the background of the situation in and outside Vietnam but also on his ideology. Thus, all of Ho's letters cannot be separated from the historical background and his ideology (as proposed in chapter IV) because he wrote upon the basis of his ideology as well as the Vietnamese situation.

The CDA framework is separated into two strata consisting of micro level - which emphasizes the analysis of linguistic aspects – and macro level – which emphasizes the analysis of the broad frame between the relationships of texts, social contexts, and other processes of motivation as proposed in chapter II. In this chapter, an analysis will be carried out on the case of Vietnam during the first Vietnamese war of liberation, and, on the case of Ho Chi Minh’s rhetoric consisting of two main levels: the micro level which analyzes Ho’s language use in his writings during the war time, and the macro level which analyzes the relationship between the Vietnamese social context, the interaction and interpretation of the Vietnamese and President Ho’s writings. Furthermore, it is proposed that there is a bi-directional interaction, on the one hand Vietnamese contexts caused President Ho’s text production, and on the other hand President Ho’s texts also affected the Vietnamese social movement.

## 5.2 Micro level

The micro level can be distinguished into three stages of analysis, according to the CDA framework. Analysis focuses on the specific features of linguistics, which consist of the stage of description, the stage of interpretation, and the stage of explanation. In the case of Ho’s texts during wartime, the letters illustrate Ho’s language use in detail and in various ways. For president Ho, his writing style was distinct: “*The working language here is very simple, direct, and clear – just as 2 and 2 make 4 without any adornment or ornamentation*” (Pham: 2006, 18), and had a powerful effect on Vietnamese realization in their patriotic emulation of him.

### 5.2.1 Ho Chi Minh’s rhetoric and the stage of description

This stage involves an analysis of formal properties and language writing style of Ho Chi Minh’s rhetoric in three domains: of word, grammar and textual structure. Ho’s writing style had a particular feature that used words that were simple, clear, easy to understand and remember, and expressions that possessed a strong and deep persuasive force. This style is based on his impression of his audience, quoted “*...can’t go to school and very few know how to read and write*” (Pham: 2006, 17).

Consequently, Ho was understood by the vast majority of Vietnamese of various social strata, and also made a large contribution to the modernization of the Vietnamese language. This was especially the case because previously, the use of the Vietnamese language was only limited to the officials, intellectuals and other individuals of high social position.

### **a. Vocabulary**

President Ho Chi Minh wrote in a variety of styles by using different words e.g. antonyms, synonyms, pejorative words, expressive words, a variety of addressee terms and figurative words etc. In addition, his word use revealed his ideological background as stemming particularly from that of Chinese intellectuals, as well western ideology, in terms of espousing the values of independence, unity, freedom, peace and equality. He also used Vietnamese history to compare and cite as examples to his fellows to remind them of their ancestors' struggle and the glorious victory of their past heroes.

#### **1) Synonymy**

Synonym is a term that refers to a major type of the same meaning. It also refers to the total meaning identified in the word, which are close enough in the same context (Crystal: 1991). In Ho Chi Minh's letters, synonyms occur regularly in three kinds of letters. Using synonyms is one style of President Ho's language use, in which he constructed various ways of writing by using words without duplication. A significant characteristic occurring in his synonym use was an emphasis on the importance of particular words by using the parallel words: this will be shown in following examples. In addition, synonym use occurs in the same general meaning in different sentences, paragraphs and letters. Synonyms occurring in President Ho's letters are shown in the following examples.

- The synonyms of ‘country’, ‘homeland’ or ‘motherland’ or ‘fatherland’, and ‘nation’

The general meaning ‘Vietnam’ is implied by using various words such as ‘country’, ‘homeland’ or ‘motherland’ or ‘fatherland’, and ‘nation’. The term ‘country’, it is written as ‘non nước’ (‘non’ means mountain, ‘nước’ means ‘water’), ‘non sông’ (‘non’ means mountain, ‘sông’ means river), ‘đất nước’ (‘đất’ means soil, ‘nước’ means water), ‘nhà nước’ (‘nhà’ means ‘home or house’, ‘nước’ means ‘water’) and ‘nước’ as shown in example 1, 2, 3, and 4. Instead of simply using the word ‘country’, these various other representations are used in order to very specifically express the profound ties that the Vietnamese have with their country. As such, since the words hold much meaning for the Vietnamese people, they would spur them on to recognise their duty in liberating their country from oppression.

Furthermore, these words reflect the traditional agricultural status of Vietnamese society, which relates to how they make a living. It shows a concrete perception for the then agricultural society, for example in how ‘đất’ means ‘soil’ proposes soil as planting and feeding animals, ‘nước’ means ‘water’ and ‘sông’ means ‘river’; the usage of these terms acknowledge the fundamental elements of Vietnamese agriculture, as well as the close relationship of the Vietnamese with their environment. The word ‘nhà’ means ‘home’ or ‘house’ describes the place as a means of living and family. The word ‘non’ or ‘mountain’ reflects, again, the close relationship and the origins of Vietnamese, the majority of which are from the mountainous regions. In combination, these words serve to allude to the different elements of the Vietnamese agricultural society. These words also have a role in preserving the original Vietnamese.

Example 1: Text 3 Address, sent to soldier of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 8	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>quyết</b> determine	<b>đem</b> bring with one
	<b>xương máu</b> bone and blood	<b>để</b> for	<b>giữ vững</b> hold fast	<b>non nước</b> country
	<b>Lạc Hồng!</b> (Name of the race that is the combination between the dragon and goddess/fairy)			

- *All fighters are determined to sacrifice bone and blood for our Lac Hong land.*

From example 1, the word ‘non nước’ represents the Vietnamese country that all fighters have to do battle for, even to the point of giving up their life as a sacrifice for their country.

Example 2: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 5	<b>Ta</b> we	<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>giữ gìn</b> take care of	<b>non sông,</b> homeland
	<b>đất nước</b> homeland	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta.</b> us	<b>Chỉ</b> only
	<b>chiến đấu</b> fight	<b>cho</b> for	<b>quyền</b> right	<b>thống nhất</b> unify
	<b>và</b> and	<b>độc lập</b> independent	<b>của</b> of	<b>tổ quốc.</b> fatherland

*We only fight to preserve our homeland. We only struggle for our rights, unity and independence of our fatherland.*

In example 2, the word ‘non sông’ and ‘đất nước’ are synonyms. They are used as parallel words adjacent to each other. These two words emphasize the meaning of ‘homeland’ as something that all the Vietnamese have to strive to preserve in every way possible. In addition, another example is the word ‘tổ quốc’, translated as

‘fatherland’ or ‘motherland’ which implies the land of father and of mother. Thus, this hints at the paternal or maternal relationship that exists between the Vietnamese land and the Vietnamese people – that the people are essentially children of the land and should endeavor to preserve their rights, and more importantly the unity and independence of their nation.

Example 3: Text 5 Appeal on occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for National resistance

¶ 18	- Các	<b>tướng sĩ</b>	<b>từ</b>	<b>Bắc</b>
	(pluralizer)	officers	from	north
	<b>đến</b>	<b>Nam,</b>	<b>đang</b>	<b>đũng cảm</b>
	to	south	(be in process of)	brave
	<b>xung phong</b>	<b>giết</b>	<b>địch,</b>	<b>quyết</b>
	assault	kill	enemy	determine
	<b>đem</b>	<b>xương máu</b>	<b>giữ vững</b>	<b>nền</b>
	bring	blood and bone	hold firm	base
	<b>thống nhất</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>độc lập</b>	<b>cho</b>
	unify	and	independent	for
	<b>nước nhà.</b>			
	homeland			

- *Officers from the north to the south are bravely attacking to kill the enemy. They are determined to sacrifice their lives for the unity and independence of our country.*

Example 3 expresses the synonym homeland by using term ‘nước nhà’ in showing how the final purpose of all the officers in the whole of Vietnam should be to kill their aggressors, which would lead to unity and independence for their homeland.

Example 4: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 34	<b>Hai</b> two  <b>thân thiện !</b> friendly <i>Two nations Vietnam – France are friends!</i>	<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>Việt –</b> Vietnam	<b>Pháp</b> France
------	--	--------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------

Example 4 proposes the terms ‘dân tộc’ or ‘nation’, which points to Vietnam. The concept of nation is an abstract and a new concept that was used for ideological purposes. From this example, it can be interpreted that there was a reference made to a distinct separation of the two nations Vietnam and France, implying that Vietnam had an equal status to France. Moreover, it also implies that Vietnam as a nation had its own unity, independence and freedom.

Even though all the synonyms imply the general meaning of ‘Vietnam’, there are differences in the sense of concrete and abstract levels. The meaning of homeland and country implied by using words ‘non nước’, ‘đất nước’, ‘non sông’, ‘non nước’ and ‘nước’ come across as more concrete, invoking recollections of the manner of living and the origin of the Vietnamese agricultural society. Meanwhile, the conception of ‘tổ quốc’ or ‘fatherland’ or ‘motherland’ is a more abstract representation than the previous, but it still reflects the relationship of each individual as a member of the bigger Vietnamese family. This presentation of the nation of Vietnam as the basis for the fundamental Vietnamese family was aimed at driving the people to fight for their fatherland or motherland. Lastly, the concept of ‘nation’ is more idealistic than two former groups.

- The synonyms of ‘glorious’

The meaning of ‘Glorious’ conveyed by using ‘oanh liệt’ and ‘vẻ vang’ is one example of synonymy. These two words occur in both adjacent and different positions, and are employed to modify the main words as shown in example 5 and 6.

In example 5, the choice closely positioned words ‘oanh liệt’ and ‘vẻ vang’ possess a parallel meaning. The use of these two words intensify the significance of the meaning conveyed: ‘glorious’ is used twice to refer to their feat as earth shaking.

Example 5: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 12	<b>Tuy</b>	<b>khi giới</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>còn</b>
	although	weapons	our	still
	<b>kém,</b>	<b>kinh nghiệm</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>còn</b>
	weak	experience	our	still
	<b>ít,</b>	<b>nhưng</b>	<b>lòng</b>	<b>kiên quyết,</b>
	little	but	heart	[be]firm in(of)purpose
	<b>chí</b>	<b>hy sinh</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>tướng sĩ</b>
	will	sacrifice	of	officers
	<b>ta</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>lập</b>	<b>những</b>
	our	ASP.: past action:already	establish /achieve	some
	<b>chiến công</b>	<b>oanh liệt,</b>	<b>vẻ vang</b>	<b>có thể</b>
	feat of arms	glorious	glorious	be able to
	<b>nói</b>	<b>là</b>		
	say	be		
	<b>kinh</b>	<b>trời</b>	<b>động đất.</b>	
	frighten	sky	earthquake	

*(proverb) the great thing that can make the sky frightened and the land shake  
Although, our weapons are weak and our experience is little the strong heart  
and the will of our officers who have made sacrifice will prove to be a glorious  
and honourable feat of arms that compares with “earthshaking” feat.*

Example 6: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defenses forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 5 - **Vẻ vang**  
glorious  
*- How glorious!*      **thay!**  
(final particle for emphasize)

¶ 6 - **Oanh liệt**  
glorious  
*- How glorious!*      **thay!**  
(final particle for emphasize)

In example 6, the use of synonyms to show expressive emotion as they occur before the emphatic particle ‘thay!’ is used, perhaps to show the importance or significance of the glorious thing that follows the two words. They are used in various paragraphs to praise all the tasks that the Vietnamese did (see more in appendix: Text 3 (5), (6)).

- The synonyms of ‘increase’

The word ‘tăng’ and ‘thêm’ are synonyms, and the meaning of ‘increase’ is emphasised by using them adjacent to each other. This illustrates the large extent to which the Vietnamese should possess superior experience as a result of the protraction of the war.

Example 7: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 15	<b>Vậy</b> so	<b>ta</b> we	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>chiến lược</b> strategy
	<b>trường kỳ</b> protracted	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance	<b>để</b> for	<b>phát triển</b> develop
	<b>lực lượng,</b> power	<b>tăng</b> increase	<b>thêm</b> increase	<b>kinh nghiệm.</b> experience

*So we will use a long war of resistance to develop our force, to increase our experience.*

- The synonym of ‘difficulty’, ‘hard’, and ‘miserable’

By describing the suffering of the war as being caused by the French aggressors, the words ‘difficulty’ and ‘miserably hard’ are expressed using synonyms ‘gian nan’ and ‘cực khổ’. These are written by president Ho to demonstrate the colossal degree of difficulty and misery the Vietnamese have to face. These two words are adjoining each other as shown in example 8. Perhaps this was done to evoke intense feeling and emotion on the part of the addressees. Other examples of this synonym use occur in text 11 (14).

Example 8: Text 5: Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for National resistance

¶ 9	<b>Vì vậy,</b> therefore	<b>mặc dầu</b> although	<b>gian nan</b> miserably hard	<b>cực khổ,</b> hard and miserable
	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our	<b>ngày càng</b> more with everyday passing day	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite, solidarity
	<b>càng</b> more	<b>hăng hái,</b> enthusiastic	<b>càng</b> more	<b>kiên quyết</b> (be)determined
	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>cho</b> to	<b>đến</b> reach	<b>thắng lợi</b> win a victory
	<b>cuối cùng.</b> final			

*For that reason, even though there are many difficulties, our people are more and more united, more and more enthusiastic, and more and more determined to resist until the final victory.*

- The synonyms of ‘model’

The words ‘*gương*’ and ‘*kiểu mẫu*’ are written as shown in example (9) to drive the Vietnamese to participate in the war so that they can be a model to all other Vietnamese unto victory. In addition, the fact that these two words occur in adjoining positions to emphasize the meaning ‘model’ might also encourage the Vietnamese compatriots in Cao Bang, Bac Can and Lang Son provinces during the battle.

Example 9: Text 13 Appeal to Cao – Bac –Lang fellow-countrymen

¶ 7	<b>ĐỒNG BÀO</b> fellow- countryman	<b>HÃY</b> let’s	<b>TIẾN LÊN</b> advance	<b>LÀM</b> do
	<b>gương</b> model	<b>kiểu mẫu</b> model	<b>cho</b> for	<b>nhân dân</b> people
	<b>toàn quốc,</b> the whole country	<b>giúp</b> help	<b>cho</b> for	<b>chiến dịch</b> campaign
	<b>được</b> be able to	<b>thắng lợi.</b> victory		

*Fellow-countrymen, let’s advance to be a model for all people in the country and help in this campaign to win victory.*

-The synonyms of ‘power’

Using words ‘*sức mạnh*’ and ‘*lực lượng*’ convey the power of unity and expresses the intangible power of the democratic side. These synonyms show the assorted way of writing in Ho Chi Minh’s choice of words, shown in example 10.

Example 10: Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950

¶ 37	<b>Với</b>	<b>tình hình</b>	<b>thế giới</b>	<b>lợi</b>
	with	situation	world	good
	<b>cho</b>	<b>ta,</b>	<b>với</b>	<b>sự</b>
	for	us	with	(classifier of ủng hộ)
	<b>ủng hộ</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>phe</b>	<b>dân chủ</b>
	support	of	side	democratic
	<b>thế giới,</b>	<b>với</b>	<b>sức mạnh</b>	<b>vô địch</b>
	world	with	power	invisible
	<b>là</b>	<b>lực lượng</b>	<b>đoàn kết</b>	<b>của</b>
	be	power	unite	of
	<b>dân tộc</b>	<b>ta,</b>	<b>tôi</b>	<b>chắc</b>
	nation	our	I	sure
	<b>rằng</b>	<b>kháng chiến</b>	<b>năm</b>	<b>tới</b>
	that	resistance	year	arrive
	<b>sẽ</b>	<b>tiến bộ</b>	<b>nhều</b>	<b>hơn</b>
	will	progress	many	more
	<b>và</b>	<b>thắng lợi</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>hơn</b>
	and	win a victory	big	more
	<b>năm</b>	<b>vừa</b>	<b>qua.</b>	
	year	just	pass	

*With the world situation which is good for us, support from the Democratic world and invisible power which is a power in unity of our nation, I am sure that our resistance in the coming year will have more progress and win the great victories more than the passing year.*

- The synonyms of ‘great’

The adjoining positions of the word ‘to’ and ‘lớn’ which both mean ‘great’ intensify the meaning of the word ‘victory’, indicating that Vietnamese side gained many victories against the resistance. It expresses the great degree of pride that the

Vietnamese had in their victories, shown in example 11. Furthermore, the synonyms ‘great’ also occur in text 18 (10).

Example 11: Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance

¶ 7	Vì	<b>độc lập</b>	<b>dân tộc</b>	và
	because	independent	nation	and
	<b>hoà bình</b>	<b>thế giới</b>	<b>mà</b>	<b>quân</b>
	peace	world	that	army forces
	và	<b>dân</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>kháng chiến</b>
	and	people	our	To resist
	<b>rất</b>	<b>anh dũng</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>đã</b>
	very	heroic	and	ASP.: Past action: already
	<b>thu</b>	<b>nhiều</b>	<b>thắng lợi</b>	<b>to</b>
	get back	many	victory	great
	<b>lớn.</b>			
	great			

*Because the national independence and the peace of the world that our arm forces and heros resisted and gained back many glorious victories.*

- The synonyms of ‘patriotism’

The synonyms ‘yêu nước’ and ‘ái quốc’ are used to mean ‘patriotism’ in various ways. Even though these two words carry the same meaning of ‘patriotism’, they differ in terms of their historical origins. ‘Yêu nước’ is the original Vietnamese word, but ‘ái quốc’ is the Sino-Vietnamese word. President Ho probably used these two words to vary his way of writing. The synonym are shown in example 12 .

Example 12: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 6 - **Đồng bào** **đang** **hăng hái** **thực hiện**  
 fellow- be in the enthusiastic realize  
 countryman process of  
**thi đua** **ái quốc** **ở** **hậu phương;**  
 emulate patriotic at rear  
 - *Fellow-countrymen, who are enthusiastic, are proving their patriotism at the battlefield.*

¶ 7 - **Đồng bào** **tại** **vùng** **địch**  
 fellow- at area enemy  
 countryman  
**tạm chiếm,** **luôn luôn** **giữ vững** **tinh thần**  
 temporarily always hold fast mind  
 occupied  
**yêu nước** **của** **người** **dân**  
 patriotic of fellow people  
**Việt Nam;**  
 Vietnam  
 - *Fellow-countrymen in the areas occupied by the enemy, always hold fast to your patriotism as Vietnamese people.*

From example 12, ‘ái quốc’ is used together with ‘thi đua’, and these two words are combined to express the concept of ‘patriotic emulation’ that is part of Ho Chi Minh’s policy in the war. ‘Yêu nước’ is used in the same meaning, to attempt to remind the addressees to hold steadfastly to Vietnamese patriotism even as they are in French occupied territory.

- The synonyms of ‘win a victory’

The meaning of ‘victory’ is conveyed using two different words: ‘thắng lợi’ and ‘chinh phục’ as shown in examples 13 and 14. In example 13, ‘thắng lợi’ is the word used to convey the final purpose of the resistance, and has an affirmation of President Ho that the Vietnamese side will gain the victory.

Example 13: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 31	<b>Chúng ta</b> we	<b>nhất định</b> absolutely certain	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>thắng lợi.</b> win a victory
------	-----------------------	--	--	------------------------------------

*We are absolutely certain to win a victory.*

In example 14, ‘Chinh phục’ is used to show how the French boasted of their intention to win over Vietnam in just three months. It is a synonym of ‘thắng lợi’, which also means win.

Example 14: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for National resistance

¶ 4	<b>Từ</b> from	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>đầu,</b> beginning	<b>bọn</b> group, gang (pej.)
	<b>quân phiệt</b> militarist	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist	<b>khoe miệng</b> boast	<b>rằng:</b> that
	<b>chóng</b> quick	<b>thì</b> then	<b>dăm</b> a few	<b>tuần,</b> week
	<b>chậm</b> slow	<b>thì</b> then	<b>3</b> three	<b>tháng,</b> month
	<b>chúng</b> they (pej.)	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>chinh phục</b> win	<b>ta,...</b> us

*From the beginning, the colonial militarists boasted that they would conquer us in a few weeks or at most within three months, ...*

- The synonyms of ‘support’

The meaning ‘support’ is conveyed using two synonyms ‘bênh vực’ and ‘ủng hộ’. Using these two words is yet another example of the style of president Ho’s word use. In example 15, it is shown that because the Vietnamese side is righteous in trying to preserve their country, their resistance therefore gains the support of many people in the world.

Example 15: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 19	<b>Kháng chiến</b> resistance  <b>là</b> be  <b>nhiều người</b> many people	<b>cứu quốc</b> save the country  <b>chính nghĩa,</b> righteous  <b>bênh vực.</b> support	<b>của</b> of  <b>cho nên</b> therefore	<b>ta</b> us  <b>được</b> have got
------	--	--	---	--

*The resistance to save our country is righteous. Therefore, many people support us.*

¶ 22	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)  <b>ta.</b> us  <b>tán thành</b> agree to	<b>dân tộc</b> nation  <b>Dư luận</b> public opinion  <b>ta.</b> us	<b>châu Á</b> Asia  <b>trong</b> in	<b>ủng hộ</b> support  <b>thế giới</b> world
------	--	--	---	--

*All Asian peoples support us. World public opinion agrees with us.*

- The synonyms of ‘endeavour’ or ‘strive’

President Ho chose various words to mean ‘to strive’ or ‘to endeavour’, such as ‘cố gắng’, ‘ra sức’ and ‘gắng sức’, shown in example 16 and 17. These words are another example of his writing style that uses different words to tell the Vietnamese to try to overcome any setbacks, and to attempt to be a model to all other Vietnamese, as shown in example 16.

Example 16: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 30	<b>Khuyên</b> recommend	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cán bộ</b> cadre	<b>chính trị,</b> political
	<b>hành chính</b> administration	<b>và</b> and	<b>chuyên môn</b> speciality	<b>phải</b> must
	<b>cố gắng</b> strive	<b>khắc phục</b> overcome	<b>mọi</b> every	<b>nỗi</b> feeling
	<b>khó khăn,</b> difficult	<b>ra sức</b> strive	<b>sửa chữa</b> repair/ rectify	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
	<b>khuyết điểm,</b> shortcoming	<b>gắng</b> strive to	<b>làm</b> do	<b>những</b> some
	<b>người</b> people	<b>cán bộ</b> cadre	<b>kiểu mẫu.</b> model	

*I recommend that all political cadres, administrators and specialists try hard to overcome every bad feeling, strive to remedy all shortcomings and strive to be model cadres.*

In example 17, the word use that conveys the meaning of ‘strive’ or ‘endeavor’ attempts to show what the Vietnamese have to do in order to attack and get rid of their enemy.

Example 17: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for National resistance

¶ 14	<b>Cho nên</b>	<b>dân</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>quân</b>
	therefore	citizen	and	army forces
	<b>ta</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>luôn</b>	<b>gắng sức,</b>
	our	must	often	endeavour
	<b>cẩn thận,</b>	<b>chuẩn bị,</b>	<b>đề phòng,</b>	<b>luôn luôn</b>
	careful	prepare	take precautions(against)	always
	<b>tấn công</b>	<b>địch</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>phá hoại</b>
	attack	enemy	and	destroy
	<b>địch,</b>	<b>tuyệt</b>	<b>đói</b>	<b>chớ</b>
	enemy	nap	treat	must not
	<b>tự kiêu,</b>	<b>chớ</b>	<b>khinh</b>	<b>địch,...</b>
	be proud	must not	despise	enemy

*Therefore our citizens and army forces must always try, be careful, be prepared, and take precautions. You must always attack the enemy and destroy the enemy. ...*

- The synonyms identify the verbal of ‘how to eliminate’

The group of synonymy of ‘how to eliminate’ is expressed through various verbs with parallel meanings, such as ‘struggle’, ‘fight’, ‘attack’, ‘defeat’, ‘get rid of’ etc, which as a whole describe how to drive the enemy out of Vietnam and are used especially to incite the Vietnamese against their enemy. These synonyms occur in general in Ho Chi Minh’s letter as shown in some examples in example 18-22.

In example 18, there are two words: ‘tấn công’ or ‘attack’ and ‘phá hoại’ or ‘destroy’ which are verbs used to identify ‘how to’ or ‘the way to eradicate’ their enemy. It proposes the tasks that the Vietnamese citizens and the army have to complete for their country during the time that they are under attack. Specifically, it is declared that they have to attack or destroy the French colonialists to drive them of their country.

Example 18: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for National resistance

¶ 14	<b>Cho nên</b>	<b>dân</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>quân</b>
	therefore	citizen	and	army forces
	<b>ta</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>luôn</b>	<b>gắng sức,</b>
	our	must	often	endeavour
	<b>cẩn thận,</b>	<b>chuẩn bị,</b>	<b>đề phòng,</b>	<b>luôn luôn</b>
	careful	prepare	take precautions(against)	always
	<b>tấn công</b>	<b>địch</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>phá hoại</b>
	attack	enemy	and	destroy
	<b>địch,</b>	<b>tuyệt</b>	<b>đôi</b>	<b>chớ</b>
	enemy	nap	treat	must not
	<b>tự kiêu,</b>	<b>chớ</b>	<b>khinh</b>	<b>địch,...</b>
	be proud	must not	despise	enemy

*Therefore our citizens and army forces must always try, be careful, be prepared, and take precautions. You must always attack the enemy and destroy the enemy. ...*

In example 19, there are two words which mean ‘the way to eliminate or fight’ against the French aggressors. These two words are ‘phá tan’ or ‘break’ and ‘tranh’ or ‘fight for’. ‘Phá tan’ is used to mean to break the fetters of slavery, which implies that the French rule is a kind of imprisonment from which they have to liberate themselves. The word ‘Tranh’ is the direct synonym of ‘chiến đấu’, meaning ‘fight’. Following the example, it means that the Vietnamese have to fight until they gain the right of unity and independence of their nation.

Example 19: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 27	<b>Nhưng</b>	<b>chúng ta</b>	<b>quyết</b>	<b>hy sinh</b>
	but	we	be determined	sacrifice

<b>chịu</b>	<b>khổ</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>gắng sức</b>
accept	miserable	and	endeavour
<b>5</b>	<b>năm,</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>năm</b>
five	year	ten	year
<b>để</b>	<b>phá tan</b>	<b>cái</b>	<b>xiềng xích</b>
for	break(silence,peace)	(classifier of xiềng xích)	fetters
<b>nô lệ</b>	<b>hơn</b>	<b>80</b>	<b>năm</b>
slave	more	eighty	year
<b>vừa qua,</b>	<b>để</b>	<b>tranh</b>	<b>lấy</b>
last	for	fight for	get
<b>quyền</b>	<b>thống nhất</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>độc lập</b>
right	unify	and	independent
<b>cho</b>	<b>muôn đời</b>	<b>sắp</b>	<b>đến.</b>
for	forever	be forthcoming	arrive

*But we are determined to sacrifice, accept misery, and strive for 5 years, 10 years to break the fetters of more than 80 years of slavery and fight to win our rights, unity and independence that is forthcoming forever.*

In example 20, it is proposed that the word ‘đánh tan’ or ‘defeat’ has the purpose of driving the people to fight in the war that the Vietnamese are waging against the reactionary colonialists. Though, under the same context, words other than ‘đánh tan’ can be used to describe the way to eliminate the aggressors.

Example 20: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 17	<b>Hai mươi</b>	<b>triệu</b>	<b>đồng bào</b>	<b>Việt Nam</b>
	twenty	million	fellow-countryman	Vietnam
	<b>quyết</b>	<b>đánh tan</b>	<b>mấy</b>	<b>vạn</b>
	be determined	defeat(an army)	a few	ten thousand
	<b>thực dân</b>	<b>phản động.</b>		
	colonialist	reactionary		

*Twenty million Vietnamese compatriots are determined to defeat ten thousand reactionary colonialists.*

In example 21, ‘Chiến đấu’ is a word meaning ‘fight’. It was chosen by President Ho to explain how the people should rise up and fight against the Vietnamese colonialists.

Example 21: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 3	<b>Từ</b>	<b>19</b>	<b>tháng Chạp,</b>	<b>thực dân</b>
	from	nineteenth	Twelfth lunar month	coloninailist
	<b>Pháp</b>	<b>đánh úp</b>	<b>ta,</b>	<b>các</b>
	French	spring a surprise attack	us	(pluralizer)
	<b>anh em</b>	<b>là</b>	<b>những</b>	<b>người</b>
	brothers	be	(pluralizer)	people
	<b>đầu tiên,</b>	<b>lập tức</b>	<b>đứng lên</b>	<b>chiến đấu.</b>
	first	immediately	rise up	fight

*From the nineteenth of the 12<sup>th</sup> lunar month, the French colonialists sprang a surprise attack against us. You were the first to rise up to fight them.*

In example 22, the word ‘tranh đấu’ which means ‘struggle’ is one of many verbs which indicate how the Vietnamese countrymen should oppose the French aggressors. From this example, President Ho attempts to give encouragement that he and his government are backing all compatriots who are struggling for the nation.

Example 22: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 10	<b>Trong</b>	<b>dịp</b>	<b>này,</b>	<b>lòng</b>
	in	occasion	this	heart
	<b>tôi</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>lòng</b>	<b>Chính phủ</b>
	my	and	heart	government

<b>đặc biệt</b>	<b>đi</b>	<b>đến</b>	<b>chiến sĩ</b>
especial	go	to	fighter
<b>và</b>	<b>đồng bào</b>	<b>Nam Bộ</b>	<b>và</b>
and	fellow-countryman	southern part	and
<b>miền</b>	<b>Nam</b>	<b>Trung Bộ,</b>	<b>vi</b>
area	south	central	because
<b>chiến sĩ</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>đồng bào</b>	<b>ở</b>
fighter	and	fellow-countryman	at
<b>đó</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>tranh đấu</b>	<b>trước nhất</b>
that	ASP: Past action: already	struggle	earliest
<b>và</b>	<b>hy sinh</b>	<b>nhiều</b>	<b>nhất.</b>
and	sacrifice	many	most

*On this occasion, from my heart and the heart of the Government, in particular go with fighters and fellow-countrymen in the South and Southern Central region because they were the first who struggled and sacrificed the most.*

All the above examples are just some of the synonyms in Ho Chi Minh’s text, which have the general meaning of showing – in various ways – how to eliminate or wipe out the French colonialists. These examples attempt to demonstrate an aspect of Ho Chi Minh’s writing style in the way he carefully chooses various words to convey meaning.

## 2) Antonymy

Antonymy is the oppositeness of meaning or semantic (Crystal: 1991). The uses of antonyms regularly occur in Ho Chi Minh’s letters. He mostly conveys the antonyms in the struggle of meaning. It is mainly the comparison in morality –between goodness and badness. He reveals the representative of the morality by using Vietnamese and French colonialists’ side. Vietnamese’s side is represented as the righteousness, while French colonialists’ side is represented as the unrighteousness. Additionally, he demonstrates antonyms on advantageous and disadvantageous to

report the current situation. Vietnamese's side has advantageous results, while French colonialists' side has disadvantageous results. It is the way to encourage his addressees in senses they are advantageous over the enemy. Examples of antonyms are presented as follows:

- The antonyms of 'righteousness' and 'unrighteousness'

There are antonyms: '*chính nghĩa*' or 'righteousness' and '*phi nghĩa*' or 'unrighteousness'. '*Chính nghĩa*' is represented as Vietnamese's side who preserves the country. On the other hand, '*phi nghĩa*' is represented as the French reactionary colonialists who are the wanton plundered people. They are identified the struggle meaning between accuracy and inaccuracy to convey the ethic – definitely righteousness win over unrighteousness. It implies to his addressees, as the Vietnamese's side, to know that they would certainly win over the French colonialists. The antonyms are shown in example 23.

Example 23: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 19	<b>Chiến tranh</b>	<b>xâm lược</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>thực dân</b>
	war	commit aggression	of	colonialist
	<b>phản động</b>	<b>là</b>	<b>phi nghĩa.</b>	<b>Ai</b>
	Reactionary	be	unrighteous	who
	<b>cũng</b>	<b>chán ghét.</b>	<b>Kháng chiến</b>	<b>cứu quốc</b>
	also	dislike	resistance	save the country
	<b>của</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>là</b>	<b>chính nghĩa,</b>
	of	us	be	righteous
	<b>cho nên</b>	<b>được</b>	<b>nhều</b>	<b>người</b>
	Therefore	have got	many	people
	<b>bên vực.</b>			
	Support			

*The reactionary colonialists' aggressive war is unrighteous. Everyone is against them. The resistance to save our country is righteous. Therefore, many people support us.*

In example 24, it also reveals the ideological struggle on morality between righteousness and unrighteousness. 'Chính' or 'righteousness' is represented as the Vietnamese fellows, on the one hand, 'tà' or 'unrighteousness' is represented as the reactionary colonialists. The morality makes sense to the addressees that 'chính' absolutely overcome 'tà'. The relevant comparison using antonyms implies that the Vietnamese fellows surely conquer the French aggressors. This example also shows synonym of 'chính nghĩa' as using 'chính' and 'phi nghĩa' as using 'tà'.

Example 24: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 6	<b>Vậy</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>là</b>	
	So	we	be	
	<b>chính nghĩa,</b>	<b>địch</b>	<b>là</b>	<b>tà.</b>
	righteous	enemy	be	unrighteous
	<b>Chính</b>	<b>nhất định</b>	<b>thắng</b>	<b>tà.</b>
	righteous	absolutely certain	win	unrighteous

*Thus we are righteous but the enemy is unrighteous. Righteousness is certain to win over unrighteousness.*

These antonyms are used as an encouragement to the Vietnamese participated to fight for their homeland. It makes in the sense that they would win over the French colonialists, though, they are weaker than the French colonialists in almost fields. Because they follow the way of righteousness as President Ho wrote - '*righteousness is certain to win the victory over unrighteousness*'. It implies President Ho used the ideological struggle – which is legitimacy and illegitimacy – to convince his addressees.

- The antonyms of ‘Vietnamese compatriots’ and ‘the French colonialists’

The contrary ideology between Vietnamese compatriots and the reactionary colonialists is conveyed. Vietnamese compatriots are descendants of the fatherland, on the contrary, ‘the reactionary colonialists’ is a term to call the enemy. The antonyms are compared as shown in example 25. The use of antonyms implies the Vietnamese compatriots were fighting for the righteousness because it is their own land.

Example 25: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 17	<b>Hai mươi</b> twenty	<b>triệu</b> million	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman/ compatriot	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam
	<b>quyết</b> be determined	<b>đánh tan</b> defeat(an army)	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>vạn</b> ten thousand
	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist	<b>phản động.</b> reactionary		

*Twenty million Vietnamese compatriots are determined to defeat ten thousand reactionary colonialists.*

- The antonyms of ‘the reactionary colonialists’ aggressive war’ and ‘the resistance to save country’

Antonyms are used to compare the resistance to save country and the reactionary colonialists’ aggressive war. ‘Kháng chiến cứu quốc’ or ‘the resistance to save country’ is a term of Vietnamese’s side. It implies the positive meaning to the Vietnamese - they have rights to fight for saving their country. It distinctly identifies by the word ‘cứu nước’ or ‘save the country’. On the other side, ‘chiến tranh xâm lược’ or ‘the reactionary colonialists’ aggressive war’ is used to the French colonialists’ side. It implies the negative meaning of ‘chiến tranh’ or ‘war’ and ‘commit aggression’ or ‘xâm lược’ as an aggression. Antonyms are shown in example 26.

Example 26: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 19	<b>Chiến tranh</b> war	<b>xâm lược</b> commit aggression	<b>của</b> of	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist
	<b>phản động</b> reactionary	<b>là</b> be	<b>phi nghĩa.</b> unrighteous	<b>Ai</b> who
	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>chán ghét.</b> dislike	<b>Kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>cứu quốc</b> save the country
	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us	<b>là</b> be	<b>chính nghĩa,</b> righteous
	<b>cho nên</b> therefore	<b>được</b> have got	<b>nhiều người</b> many people	<b>bên vực.</b> support

*The reactionary colonialists' aggressive war is unrighteous. Everyone is against them. The resistance to save our country is righteous. Therefore, many people support us.*

In example 27, it reveals the oppositeness between ‘the righteous resistance’ and ‘the aggression war’. It implies the negative meaning by the word ‘xâm lược’ or ‘commit aggression’. But the positive meaning refers to Vietnamese’s side by the word ‘chính nghĩa’ or ‘righteous’. Additionally, it implies the contrary meaning between ‘kháng chiến’ or ‘resistance’ - as a positive action, and ‘chiến tranh’ or ‘war’ – as a negative action. It can be interpreted that ‘kháng chiến’ is an accuracy, and ‘chiến tranh’ is an inaccuracy.

Example 27: Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 11	<b>Nhân dịp</b> occasion	<b>này,</b> this	<b>tôi</b> I	<b>trân trọng</b> respectful
	<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nhân sĩ</b> patriotic personality	<b>và</b> and

<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>bầu bạn</b> friends	<b>đã</b> ASP: Past action: already
<b>ủng hộ</b> support	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>chính nghĩa</b> righteous
<b>của</b> of	<b>Việt Nam.</b> Vietnam	<b>Tôi</b> I	<b>riêng</b> personal
<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>đoàn thể</b> organization	<b>dân chủ</b> democratic
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>đã</b> already	<b>và</b> and	<b>đang</b> be in the process of
<b>hoạt động</b> be an activist in	<b>để</b> for	<b>đòi</b> ask for	<b>chính phủ</b> government
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>chấm dứt</b> bring to an end	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of chiến tranh)	<b>chiến tranh</b> war
<b>xâm lược</b> commit aggression	<b>Việt Nam.</b> Vietnam		

*On this occasion, I respectfully thank all patriots and our neighbor country that supported the righteous resistance of Vietnam. I myself thank all the French Democratic organizations which have been being activists to ask the French Government to stop the aggression war in Vietnam.*

- The antonyms of 'lose' and 'win'

The results of the war are conveyed by the use of antonyms. It reports the situation between Vietnamese's side and enemy's side. Vietnamese's side is shown as the winner but the French colonialists is shown as the loser. As the result of the war must have the winner and the loser, President Ho uses these antonyms to emphasize

the oppositeness - if one side wins, the contrary side actually loses. It clarifies the result that Vietnamese's side won over their enemy to Ho's addressees by antonyms 'thắng' or 'win a victory' and 'thất bại' or 'lose' as shown in example 28.

Example 28: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 23	<b>Về mặt</b>	<b>tinh thần</b>	<b>địch</b>	<b>đã</b>
	as side of	mind/ morale	enemy	ASP.: past actions: already
	<b>hoàn toàn</b>	<b>thất bại,</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>đã</b>
	complete	lose	we	ASP.: past actions: already
	<b>hoàn toàn</b>	<b>thắng lợi.</b>		
	complete	win a victory		

*Morally on the enemy's side, they know they have lost and we have already won victory.*

- The antonyms of 'optimistic' and 'pessimistic'

'Lạc quan' meaning 'optimistic' and 'bi quan' meaning 'pessimistic' are used in Ho Chi Minh's teaching with the Vietnamese. It is the way to annihilate the bad habits. He teaches the good habit - 'not too optimistic and not too pessimistic' - as shown in example 29. It insinuates the best way that how to manage the equal between 'optimistic' and 'pessimistic' mind.

Example 29: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 26	<b>Vì vậy,</b>	<b>mỗi</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>người</b>
	therefore	each	One	person
	<b>quốc dân</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>tẩy</b>	<b>sạch</b>
	people(of a country)	must	wipe out	cleanly
	<b>cái</b>	<b>thói:</b>	<b>khi</b>	<b>thì</b>
	(classifier of thói)	bad habit	when	then

<b>quí</b> very	<b>lạc quan,</b> optimistic	<b>khi</b> when	<b>thì</b> then
<b>quá</b> very	<b>bi quan.</b> pessimistic		

*Therefore, everyone must overcome bad habits discretely and take of your work and don't worry about other things so you may benefit from your efforts.*

- The antonyms of 'big' and 'small'

The comparison between 'big' and 'small' are in place of the previous time and the current time. It assesses the power of the enemy that used to be powerful in the past but the power presently declines. Furthermore, President Ho uses antonyms in nearby sentence to intensify the previous antonyms. They define the power of French aggressors that is formerly strong but it is currently weak as shown in example 30.

Example 30: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 25 <b>Lực lượng</b> power	<b>của</b> of	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>trước</b> before
<b>to</b> big	<b>sau</b> after	<b>nhỏ,</b> small	<b>trước</b> before
<b>mạnh</b> strong	<b>sau</b> after	<b>yếu.</b> weak	

*The power of enemy is very big before and small after, strong before and weak after.*

- The antonyms of 'strong' versus 'weak'

President Ho describes the comparison between the power of the empire's side consisting of the French colonialists and American empire, and the democratic's side. The empire's side is a supporter of the French colonialists in the war. On the contrary,

the democratic's side is a sustainer of Vietnam. The comparison shows the weakness of French colonialists and the American intervenists, and the strength of Vietnamese allies - which are increasingly strong - as shown in example 31. Antonyms 'mạnh' meaning 'strong' and 'yếu' meaning 'weak' also occur in example 30. It compares the power of the French colonialists which was strong in the past but it is weak at the present. The more example can see in text 17 (4) (see more in appendix I).

Example 31: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 14	<b>Phe</b> side <b>đần</b> dull <b>thì</b> then	<b>đế quốc</b> empire <b>xuống,</b> go down <b>ngày càng</b> more and more	<b>thì</b> then <b>phe</b> side <b>mạnh</b> strong	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; display: inline-block;"> <b>yếu</b> weak                 </div> <b>dân chủ</b> democratic <b>lên.</b> go up
------	--	---	---	--

*The empire side is weak and dull to go down meanwhile the democratic side is stronger.*

The antonymy in Ho Chi Minh's letters presents the relevant ideology which point out the oppositeness between Vietnamese's side and French colonialists' side. It is clear for the addressees by the use of antonyms which makes sense to understand immediately what he attempts to express.

### 3) Nominalization

Nominalization is a term to refer the process of forming a noun from other word class or the derivation of a noun phrase (Crystal: 1991). The nominalization is constructed by combining a main noun, adjective, verb, and classifier. There are nominalizations occur in Ho Chi Minh's letters which almost construct more than two elements as shown in the following examples.

In example 32, it shows the nominalization of ‘the National resistance’ or ‘cuộc kháng chiến toàn quốc’ which is combined from classifier + verb + adjective as following pattern:

cuộc	+	kháng chiến	+	toàn quốc
(classifier)		verb		adjective
(classifier of kháng chiến)		resist		the whole country

Example 32: Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance

¶ 1	<b>Bước</b>	<b>sang năm</b>	<b>thứ 8</b>	<b>của</b>
	situation	next year	eighth	of
	<b>cuộc</b>	<b>kháng chiến</b>	<b>toàn quốc, ...</b>	
	(classifier of kháng chiến)	resist	the whole country	

*The situation in next year which will be the eighth year of the National resistance, ...*

In example 33, it shows the nominalization of ‘the unrighteous war’ meaning ‘cuộc chiến tranh phi nghĩa’ which is combined from classifier + noun + adjective as following pattern:

cuộc	+	chiến tranh	+	phi nghĩa
(classifier)		noun		adjective
(classifier of chiến tranh)		war		unrighteous

This nominalization is constructed from classifier + noun but the adjective as ‘unrighteous’ does a role to modify the main noun.

Example 33: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 5	<b>Vì</b>	<b>chết</b>	<b>nhiều</b>	<b>người</b>
	because	die	many	people
	<b>tốn</b>	<b>nhiều</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>mà</b>
	cost/spend	many	of	that
	<b>nhân dân</b>	<b>Pháp</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>lên tiếng</b>
	people	French	ASP.: past actions: already	speak up(after keeping silent for some time)
	<b>phản đối</b>	<b>cuộc</b>	<b>chiến tranh</b>	<b>phi nghĩa.</b>
	oppose	(a classifier of noun)	war	unrighteous

*Because of the many deaths and the great costs, the French people have spoken up in opposition to this unrighteous war.*

In example 34, it shows the nominalization of ‘the protracted war’ meaning ‘cuộc trường kỳ kháng chiến’ which is combined from classifier + adjective + noun as following pattern:

<b>cuộc</b>	+	<b>trường kỳ</b>	+	<b>kháng chiến</b>
classifier		adjective		noun
(classifier of trường kỳ)		protracted/long		resistance

Example 34: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 17	<b>Hơn nữa</b>	<b>trong</b>	<b>cuộc</b>	<b>trường kỳ</b>
	moreover	in	(a classifier of	protracted
			trường kỳ kháng	
			chiến)	

<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance	<b>mỗi</b> each	<b>công dân</b> citizen	<b>là</b> be
<b>một</b> one	<b>chiến sĩ.</b> soldier	<b>Mỗi</b> each	<b>làng</b> village
<b>là</b> be	<b>một</b> one	<b>chiến hào.</b> combat trench	

*Moreover, in the long war of resistance, each citizen is a soldier. Each village is a combat trench. Twenty million Vietnamese compatriots are determined to defeat ten thousand reactionary colonialists*

Furthermore, the same nominalization also occurs in text 4 (26) and text 7 (13),(14), (15) (see more in appendix).

In example 35, it shows the nominalization of ‘our victory’ or ‘sự thắng lợi của ta’ which is combined from classifier + verb + preposition + pronoun as following pattern:

<b>Sự</b>	+	<b>thắng lợi</b>	+	<b>của</b>	+	<b>ta</b>
classifier		verb		preposition		pronoun
(classifier of thắng lợi)		win a victory		of		our

Example 35: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 3	<b>Mà</b> but	<b>sức</b> strength	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>của</b> of
	<b>ta</b> us	<b>càng</b> more	<b>mạnh.</b> strong	<b>Sự</b> (classifier of thắng lợi)
	<b>thắng lợi</b> win a victory	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us	<b>càng</b> more

**rõ ràng.**

evident

*But the force of our war of resistance is stronger. Our victory is more clear-cut.*

In example 36, it shows the nominalization of ‘the single mind of our fellow-countrymen’ or ‘sự đồng tâm của đồng bào ta’ which is combined from classifier + verb + preposition + noun + pronoun as following pattern:

<b>Sự</b>	+	<b>đồng tâm</b>	+	<b>của</b>	+	<b>đồng bào</b>	+	<b>ta</b>
classifier		verb		preposition		noun		pronoun
(classifier of		be of the same		of		fellow-		our
đồng tâm)		mind				countryman		

Example 36: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 10	<b>Sự</b>	<b>đồng tâm</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>đồng bào</b>
	(classifier of đồng tâm)	be of the same mind	of	fellow-countryman
	<b>ta</b>	<b>đúc</b>	<b>thành</b>	<b>một</b>
	our	cast	to be something	one
	<b>bức</b>	<b>tường</b>	<b>đồng</b>	<b>xung quanh</b>
	(use before noun)	wall	bronze	surrounding
	<b>Tổ quốc.</b>			
	fatherland			

*The single mind of our fellow-countrymen will cast a bronze wall to surround our fatherland.*

In example 37, it shows the nominalization of ‘a disloyal and dutiful puppet’ or ‘lũ bất trung, bất hiếu bù nhìn’. The nominalization is combined from classifier + adjective + adjective + main noun as follow pattern:

<b>lũ</b>	+	<b>bất trung</b>	+	<b>bất hiếu</b>	+	<b>bù nhìn</b>
classifier		adjective		adjective		noun
group/gang (pej.)		Disloyal		unfilial		puppet

Example 37: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 5	<b>Chúng</b> they	<b>Đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>mua chuộc</b> bribe	<b>được</b> get
	<b>một</b> one	<b>lũ</b> group/gang (pej.)	<b>bất trung,</b> disloyal	<b>bất hiếu</b> unfilial
	<b>bù nhìn</b> puppet	<b>Nhưng</b> But	<b>lũ</b> group/gang (pej.)	<b>đó</b> that
	<b>đều</b> all	<b>bị</b> be/-ed (passive)	<b>tan hoang.</b> broken up	

*They lured until they got a disloyal and undutiful puppet which was devastated.*

The use of nominalization Ho Chi Minh reveals the modification of the main noun by using adjective as shown in example 37 or personal intensify word by using pronoun as shown in example 35, 36.

#### 4) Addressee terms

Addressee terms are addressed to all the Vietnamese people in all social strata, gender, and age in various styles following three types of Ho Chi Minh's letters wrote in various occasions. In addition, there are the addressees terms refer to the Vietnamese contrary side as the French colonialists by using specify terms in the pejorative meaning. The significance of addressee terms can analyze into two issues in terms of the Vietnamese side and the enemy side. As the Vietnamese side, he chose the addressee terms which are related to the background of Vietnamese society especially in depth relationship in concept of 'family and relatives' by using 'kinship terms'. Furthermore, for the special occasion, he used the specify addressee terms follow the status or responsibility of his addressee for example 'soldiers' and 'fighter' in the battlefield occasion. For enemy side which means the French colonialists,

President Ho chose the words which identify the negative meaning and pejorative terms. It emphasizes more to the addressees feel that their contrary side is the representatives of the badness and perhaps makes them have clearly feeling to fight or to follow Ho Chi Minh's thinking. President Ho attempts to distinguish two groups which is related to the French by using the discrimination between the French colonialists and the French people. That means he focused the enemy just for aggressors who invaded Vietnam but that does not mean the other French who is Vietnamese allies and also support Vietnamese side. In addition, the using of the contrary terms between 'we' and 'enemy' are clearly separation to his fellows makes sense that it has to have only one side win over another side. The contrary terms of use might inspire to the Vietnamese feel that they have to win over their 'enemy' and gain the victory finally.

#### **4.1) Kinship terms**

Kinship terms are used as addressee with all the Vietnamese strata because in the Vietnamese society has a closed relationship in their family and relatives. It is the special characteristic which occurs in Vietnamese society. Using Vietnamese kinship terms to addressee the Vietnamese in various terms by using age and family's relationship i.e. 'anh em' or 'brothers', 'các cụ' or 'grandparents', 'các cháu' or 'grandchildren'. It might decrease gaps between the leader of the country and fellow-countrymen. It perhaps makes his addressees perceive as members of Ho Chi Minh's family. The particular style by using terms which adapted from the background of Vietnamese society makes the Vietnamese might feel that they have closed relationship with president and might agree to follow Ho Chi Minh's thoughts as they are his relatives, children or grandchildren instead of doing for their leader. Furthermore, using kinship terms is one factor that makes deeply touch with his people heart to follow his strategies. The examples by using kinship terms are shown in example 38, 39, 40, 41, and 42.

From example 38, President Ho used the term of 'brother' as 'anh em' to the Vietnamese fellows who were struggling with their enemy to save their country that

Ho's brothers were doing glorious task even they have to fight with miserable hard. Moreover, he encouraged his fellows as brothers to compete to kill the enemies.

Example 38: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 5	- <b>Vẻ vang</b>	<b>thay!</b>	<b>Cái</b>	<b>nhiệm vụ</b>
	glorious	(final particle for emphasize)	(classifier of nhiệm vụ)	duty
	<b>của</b>	<b>anh em.</b>	<b>Ăn gió nằm sương,</b>	<b>xung phong</b>
	of	brothers	to be weather-beaten	assault
	<b>hãm</b>	<b>trận,</b>	<b>các</b>	<b>anh em</b>
	besiege	Battle	(pluralizer)	brothers
	<b>không</b>	<b>quả</b>	<b>gian lao.</b>	<b>Máu</b>
	afloat	fire	burn,	rain
	<b>đạn</b>	<b>rừng</b>	<b>bom,</b>	<b>các</b>
	bullet	forest	bomb	(pluralizer)
	<b>anh em</b>	<b>không</b>	<b>quả</b>	<b>nguy hiểm.</b>
	brothers	NEG.	mind(difficulty, hardship)	dangerous
	<b>Các</b>	<b>anh em</b>	<b>chỉ</b>	<b>biết</b>
	(pluralizer)	brothers	only	know
	<b>đua</b>	<b>nhau</b>	<b>giết</b>	<b>giặc.</b>
	compete	each other	kill	aggressor

*- How glorious your task is! This is a struggle like no other struggle. But you do not mind the difficulties. Even if they shoot us with a rain of bullets that makes our blood flow and they bomb us with a forest of bombs that sets our houses blaze, you still do not mind the dangers. Brothers, you only know to strive to kill the aggressors*

In example 39, President Ho addresses to the old fellow-countrymen and the young fellow-country by using kinship terms as 'cụ' means 'great-grandparent' to

address to his old Vietnamese addressees and using ‘cháu’ meaning ‘grandchild’ to address to his young Vietnamese who have age compare with him as his grandchildren. In addition, the kinship term ‘cụ’ occurs in text 8 (30) and the kinship term ‘cháu’ occurs in text 8 (31) (see more in appendix).

Example 39: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 4	<b>Cùng</b> to	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cụ</b> great-grandparent	<b>phụ lão,</b> elderly people
	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cháu</b> grandchild	<b>thanh niên</b> youth	<b>và</b> and
	<b>nhì đồng.</b> small child			

*To all great-grandparents, youths, and grandchildren,*

In example 40, President Ho used kinship terms ‘cháu’ meaning ‘grandchild’ to teach how the Vietnamese children can participate in the war by helping the adults in many works. Using ‘cháu’ or ‘grandchild’ imply to show seniority as a tradition in Vietnamese society that grandchildren have to obey their elder people in their family. In addition, the kinship term ‘con cháu (con means ‘offspring’ or ‘son’ or ‘daughter’ and ‘cháu’ means ‘grandchild’)’ makes the Vietnamese children realize that they are offspring of the Great King as Phu Dong Vuong and Tran Quoc Toan. It might make the Vietnamese children are proud in themselves as they are descendants of the great heroes of the Vietnamese history.

Example 40: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 22	- <b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cháu</b> grandchild	<b>nhì đồng,</b> small child	<b>có</b> have
------	------------------------------	---------------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------

<b>cháu</b> grandchild	<b>thì</b> then	<b>giúp</b> help	<b>bộ đội</b> army
<b>lập</b> establish	<b>chiến công,</b> feat of arms	<b>có</b> have	<b>cháu</b> grandchild
<b>thì</b> then	<b>giúp</b> help	<b>tăng gia sản xuất,</b> increase production	<b>hoặc</b> or
<b>tuyên truyền</b> propaganda	<b>cử động.</b> propagandize	<b>Thật</b> real	<b>xứng đáng</b> worthy
<b>là</b> be	<b>con cháu</b> offspring	<b>Phù Đổng Vương</b> Phu Dong Vuong	<b>và</b> and

**Trần Quốc Toản.**

Tran Quoc Toan

- [As for] children , some are helping the soldiers in their fight, and others are helping to increase production or engage in propaganda. They are truly worthy offspring/descendants of Phù Đổng Vương [a legendary child warrior hero] and Trần Quốc Toản [a thirteenth-century warrior].

In example 41, President Ho used kinship term ‘bác’ or ‘uncle’ as first person pronoun refer to himself to talk with his fighters by using ‘chú’ means ‘formal to younger or middle-aged man’. It perhaps makes closed feeling as uncle in the same family which might be better than use president status with his addressees as fighters before go to the battlefield in Dien Bien Phu.

Example 41: Text 20 Address, sent to cadres and fighters at the Dien Bien Phu  
Battlefront

¶ 4	<b>Bác</b> (I) uncle	<b>chờ</b> wait	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chú</b> you
	<b>báo cáo</b> report	<b>thành tích</b> achievement	<b>để</b> for	<b>thưởng</b> reward

<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>đơn vị</b> unit	<b>và</b> and	<b>cá nhân</b> individual
<b>xuất sắc</b> outstanding	<b>nhất.</b> most		

*I wait you to report you achievement so that I can reward the most outstanding units and individuals.*

In example 42, using ‘đàn con’ or ‘child-group’ of the heros of Vietnamese fatherland to the fighters might have in depth feeling be proud as they are sons or daughters of the Vietnamese heroes.

Example 42: Text 3 Address, sent to soldier of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 8	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>là</b> be	<b>đàn con</b> child-group
	<b>anh hùng</b> heroic	<b>của</b> of	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland	

*Fighters are children of heros of our fatherland.*

#### 4.2) General addressee terms

The general addressee terms can identify in this study as the general Vietnamese fellow-countrymen as shown in example 43 and 44 and the addressees which distinguish from the different tasks and status in society for example fighters, soldiers, or Vietnamese organizations as shown example in example 45, 46 and 47.

In example 43, president Ho addressed to the Vietnamese fellow-countrymen in the beginning of his letter. ‘Đồng bào’ or ‘fellow-countrymen’ is the simplest term that uses in the beginning of Ho Chi Minh’s letters and occurs generally in his letters. In this example, President Ho used ‘quốc dân đồng bào’ to refer to the fellow-countrymen of the country.

Example 43: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 1	<b>Cùng quốc dân</b> to people(of a country) <i>To fellow citizens,</i>	<b>đồng bào,</b> fellow-countryman/ compatriot
-----	---	---

In example 44, it is one example that President Ho addressed sent to the general Vietnamese countrymen all over the country.

Example 44: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 1	<b>Hỡi</b> exhortative particle <i>Fellow countrymen around the country!</i>	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman/compatriot	<b>toàn quốc,</b> the whole country
-----	--	---	--

In example 45, other addressee term as ‘chiến sĩ’ is specific terms that president Ho addressed sent to the Vietnamese fighters in the specific tasks during the war.

Example 45: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 9	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer) <i>Fighters advance!</i>	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>cứ</b> (emphasize particle)	<b>tiến lên!</b> advance
-----	--	----------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

In example 46, the terms ‘tướng sĩ’ or ‘officer’, ‘Vệ quốc quân’ or ‘Vietnamese National Army’ and ‘dân quân du kích’ or ‘the Guerilla’ are the specific addressee to identify the special tasks to this group of addressees.

Example 46: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 2	<b>Hỡi</b> exhortative particle	<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>tướng sĩ</b> officers	<b>Vệ quốc quân,</b> Vietnamese National Army
	<b>dân quân</b> Militia	<b>du kích,</b> Guerilla		

*All officers, the Vietnamese National Army, the Guerilla Militia,*

In example 47, President Ho uses ‘đồng bào nông dân’ or ‘peasants’ to address to Vietnamese peasants. By using ‘fellow-countrymen’ in front of ‘peasants’ might imply that peasants are also equal as the fellow-countrymen like other occupation and social status and they are the largest amount of the Vietnamese people.

Example 47: Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 10	<b>Đồng bào</b> fellow- countryman	<b>nông dân</b> farmer	<b>đóng góp</b> contribute	<b>nhều</b> many
	<b>nhất</b> most	<b>cho</b> for	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice
	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>nhất</b> most	<b>cho</b> for	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland

*Our peasants contributed for our resistance and sacrificed for our homeland.*

For general addressee terms, wrote by preserving the original Vietnamese as ‘đàn ông’ or ‘man’ and ‘đàn bà’ or ‘woman’ in place loan words in Sino-Vietnamese as ‘nữ’ or ‘woman’ as shown in example 48. Additionally, he used the general addressee terms as ‘đàn ông’ or ‘men’ and ‘đàn bà’ or ‘women’ which is separated by gender, and ‘người già’ or ‘old people’ and ‘người trẻ’ or ‘young people’ is separated by age. These terms can distinguish the different position of each people.

Original Vietnamese	Sino-Vietnamese
đàn bà	nữ

Example 48: Text 1 Appeal for national resistance

¶ 6	<b>Bất kỳ</b> regardless	<b>đàn ông,</b> man	<b>đàn bà,</b> woman	<b>bất kỳ</b> regardless
	<b>người già,</b> old people	<b>người trẻ,</b> young people	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>chia</b> distinguish
	<b>tôn giáo,</b> religious	<b>đảng phái,</b> parties(in general)	<b>dân tộc.</b> race	

*Regardless of whether you are men, women, old or young people, is without distinction of divide into religious groups, parties or races.*

#### 4.3) The discriminated addressee terms

The other use of Ho Chi Minh addressee terms is discriminated the address terms which is related to two groups of the French. They consist of the French colonialists group and the French people or French organization which is the allies of Vietnam. In terms of ‘thực dân Pháp’ or ‘The French colonialists’ and ‘thực dân phản động Pháp’ or ‘The French reactionary colonialists’ is used to distinguish this group from the French group while ‘nhân dân Pháp’ or ‘the French’ is another group that President Ho discriminated. The discriminated addressee terms can analyse that he might distinguish by following his ideology to gain more friends and decrease the number of enemies. The examples of these terms are shown in example 49, 50, 51 and 52.

- The reactionary French colonialists

In example 49, it proposes the specific term to refer to the French colonialist's side as ‘thực dân phản động Pháp’ or ‘the reactionary French colonialists’. This term

intensifies by the specific word as ‘reactionary’ to the contrary side with another French side.

Example 49: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 3	<b>Thực dân</b> colonialist	<b>phản động</b> reactionary	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>động viên</b> mobilize
	<b>hải lục không quân</b> navy, ground and airforce <b>người.</b> people	<b>hàng</b> (used in front of round figures to denote severalty)	<b>chục</b> ten	<b>vạn</b> ten thousand

*The reactionary French colonialists have mobilized tens thousands of sea, ground and air forces.*

In example 50, president Ho used the term ‘thực dân Pháp’ to refer the French colonialists that the Vietnamese fought all over country in the north, the middle and the south.

Example 50: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 4	<b>Sau</b> after	<b>85</b> 85	<b>năm</b> year	<b>nước</b> country
	<b>ta</b> our	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>chiếm,</b> occupy	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
	<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>là</b> be	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>người</b> people
	<b>đầu tiên</b> first	<b>đứng lên</b> rise up	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist

<b>Pháp,</b> French	<b>một</b> one	<b>cách</b> way	<b>nhất trí,</b> be unanimous
<b>khắp</b> all over	<b>Bắc,</b> north	<b>Trung,</b> middle	<b>Nam.</b> south

*After 85 years under the French occupation of our country, you were the first to rise up against the French colonialists. This is a united effort all over, in the North, Middle and South of our country.*

- The French people

In example 51, President Ho used the term ‘nhân dân Pháp’ or ‘the French people’ to specify the Vietnamese ally that tried to help Vietnam by opposing the war that he called ‘the unrighteous war’.

Example 51: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 5	<b>Vì</b> because	<b>chết</b> die	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>người</b> people
	<b>Tốn</b> cost/spend	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>của</b> of	<b>mà</b> that
	<b>Nhân dân</b> people	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>lên tiếng</b> speak up(after keeping silent for some time)
	<b>Phản đối</b> oppose	<b>cuộc</b> (a classifier of noun)	<b>chiến tranh</b> war	<b>phi nghĩa.</b> unrighteous

*Because of the many deaths and the great costs, the French people have spoken up in opposition to this unrighteous war.*

In example 52, the particular terms as ‘nhân dân Pháp’ or ‘the French people’ and ‘thực dân phản động’ or ‘the reactionary colonialists’ show the relevant discriminative terms which are the Vietnamese’s enemy and the Vietnamese ally.

Example 52: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 25	<b>Tôi</b> I	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)
	<b>Tầng lớp</b> section/stratum	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Pháp,</b> French	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already
	<b>bằng</b> equal	<b>lời nói</b> saying	<b>hoặc</b> or	<b>bằng</b> equal
	<b>việc làm,</b> action	<b>phản đối</b> oppose	<b>bọn</b> group	
	<b>thực dân</b> colonize	<b>phản động.</b> reactionary		

*I also thank the various groups of French people who have opposed the reactionary colonialists through their words or their actions.*

#### 4.4) Pejorative terms

The pejorative terms are used to demonstrate the enemy side means the French colonialists, the Vietnamese puppet government which worked for the French colonialists and the American intervene. President Ho Chi Minh used three terms of pejorative words as ‘chúng’ which is used as pronoun, and ‘bọn’ or ‘lũ’ which is used as classifiers of the French aggressors group. Using the pejorative terms demonstrate the negative meaning of the groups are used as shown in example 53, 54, 55, 56 and 57.

- The pejorative term by using ‘chúng’

In example 53, the pejorative term as ‘chúng’ or ‘they’ is a pronoun which refer to the French aggressors as the Vietnamese enemy.

Example 53: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 3	<b>Chúng</b> They (pej.)	<b>mong</b> wish	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>lực lượng</b> power
	<b>ào ạt,</b> impetuous	<b>chiến lược</b> strategy	<b>chóp</b> like	<b>nhoáng,</b> lightning
	<b>trong</b> in	<b>vài</b> a few	<b>ba</b> three	<b>tháng,</b> month
	<b>cướp</b> plunder	<b>lấy</b> take	<b>nước</b> country	<b>ta.</b> our

*They hope to use overwhelming force, lightning strategy in two or three months to plunder our country.*

In example 54, it shows the pejorative word ‘chúng’ is used with ‘lũ’ that implies the negative meaning to the addressees have to wipe out this group as it is enemies.

Example 54: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 15	<b>Ta</b> we	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>chiến thuật</b> tactics	<b>du kích,</b> carry out guerilla warfare
	<b>để</b> for	<b>làm</b> make	<b>chí</b> will	<b>địch</b> enemy
	<b>hao mòn,</b> wear down	<b>cho đến</b> until	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>ta</b> we

<b>sẽ</b>	<b>tổng phản công,</b>	<b>để</b>	<b>quét</b>
FUT: will	general counter-offensive	for	sweep

<b>sạch</b>	<b>lũ</b>	<b>chúng.</b>
clean	group	they

*We will use this method in order to crush the enemy's will until the day we have the upper hand in order to wipe them out.*

- The pejorative term by using 'bọn'

'Bọn' is used to be a classifier of the meaning of the negative thing. In example 55, it refers to a group of colonial militarists which imply the negative meaning of colonial militarists.

Example 55: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 4	<b>Từ</b>	<b>ngày</b>	<b>đầu,</b>	<b>bọn</b>
	from	day	beginning	group, gang (pej.)
	<b>quân phiệt</b>	<b>thực dân</b>	<b>khoe miệng</b>	<b>rằng: ...</b>
	militarist	colonialist	boast	that

*From the beginning, the colonial militarists boasted that ...*

In example 56, it proposes the pejorative 'bọn' is used with 'the reactionary colonialists' which implies the negative meaning to 'thực dân phản động'.

Example 56: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

(25)	<b>Tôi</b>	<b>cũng</b>	<b>cảm ơn</b>	<b>những</b>
	I	also	thank	(pluralizer)

<b>tầng lớp</b>	<b>nhân dân</b>	<b>Pháp,</b>	<b>đã</b>
section/stratum	people	French	ASP.: past actions: already
<b>bằng</b>	<b>lời nói</b>	<b>hoặc</b>	<b>bằng</b>
equal	saying	or	equal
<b>việc làm,</b>	<b>phản đối</b>	<b>bọn</b>	<b>thực dân</b>
action	oppose	group	colonize
<b>phản động.</b>			
reactionary			

*I also thank the various groups of French people who have opposed the reactionary colonialists through their words or their actions.*

- The pejorative term by using 'lũ'

In example 57, 'lũ' is a pejorative term that uses with a group of the disloyal and unfilial puppet. Not only the modifier by using adjective 'bất trung' or 'disloyal' and 'bất hiếu' or 'unfilial' that give negative meaning to 'bù nhìn' or 'puppet' but it also gives intensification by using pejorative word 'lũ' is also give more negative meaning on that puppet group.

Example 57: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 5	<b>Chúng</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>mua chuộc</b>	<b>được</b>
	they	ASP.: past actions: already	bribe	get
	<b>một</b>	<b>lũ</b>	<b>bất trung,</b>	<b>bất hiếu</b>
	one	group/gang (pej.)	disloyal	unfilial
	<b>bù nhìn</b>	<b>nhưng</b>	<b>lũ</b>	<b>đó</b>
	puppet	but	group/gang (pej.)	that
	<b>đều</b>	<b>bị</b>	<b>tan hoang.</b>	
	all	be/-ed (passive)	broken up	

*They bribed a bunch of disloyal, unfilial puppets, but that bunch has now been broken up.*

#### 4.5) The contrary pronoun in the concept of ‘we’ versus ‘enemy’

Ho Chi Minh attempted to distinguish in terms of ‘we’ or ‘ta’ and ‘enemy’ or ‘địch’ to use as the other pronouns which refer the relevant difference between the Vietnamese and the French colonialists. ‘Địch’ or ‘enemy’ is a term to refer to the French colonialists which is defined as ‘enemy’ of the Vietnamese people. It might imply the perception to the addressees in general feeling in sense of ‘ta’ or ‘we’ as thier own addressees an other as ‘enemy’ which they have to eliminate in whatever way.

In example 58, a term ‘địch’ or ‘enemy’ is used as the contrary side which is compared as fire while a term ‘ta’ or ‘we’ is represented as water. From an example, it reveals the opposite thing by using other materials as fire and water leading to the contrary in sense if ‘enemy’ and ‘own’.

Example 58: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 16	<b>Thé</b> situation	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>như</b> like	<b>lửa.</b> fire
	<b>Thé</b> situation	<b>ta</b> we	<b>như</b> like	<b>nước.</b> water

*So the enemy is like fire and we are like water.*

In example 59, it proposes the contrary terms between ‘we’ and ‘enemy’ that the Vietnamese or we have to endeavour to win over their enemies.

Example 59: Text 21 Telegram from the Central Committee Party and Ho Chi Minh President send to cadres and fighters at Dien Bien Phu Battlefront

¶ 3	<b>Địch</b> enemy	<b>sẽ</b> ASP: future action: will	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>đối phó,</b> face
-----	----------------------	---------------------------------------	----------------------------	-------------------------

<b>ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>cố gắng,</b> effort	<b>chiến đấu</b> fight
<b>đẻo dai,</b> resistant	<b>bền bỉ,</b> stubborn	<b>chớ</b> do not	<b>chủ quan</b> subjective feeling
<b>khinh</b> despise	<b>địch,</b> enemy	<b>giành</b> conquer	<b>toàn thắng</b> complete victory
<b>chi</b> line of descent	<b>chiến dịch</b> campaign	<b>này.</b> this	

*Our enemy will endeavour to face us down so we must try, fight and be adamant. Don't despise the enemy but conquer in this campaign for our total complete victory.*

### 5) Expressive meanings

Expressive meanings which occur in Ho Chi Minh's letter in this study can distinguish into two groups consisting the negative and positive expressive meanings. These two groups of expressive words are direct expressive to the Vietnamese people which is President Ho focuses on. The negative meaning consists of two groups which is demonstrated to the Vietnamese side and the French side. Meanwhile, the positive meaning is demonstrated directly to the Vietnamese on the advantageous issues if compares with the French colonialists side. This is a psychological way that might build the addressee emotion to feel following that expressive words.

#### 5.1) Negative expressive meaning

The negative expressive words occur regularly in two main groups which consists of the negative meaning which describes on the way and things that the French rule used to do with the Vietnamese people which is the negative things as the Vietnamese is passive by the French rule. From the former experience, President Ho attempted to propose that if the French can come back to rule Vietnam again the Vietnamese will be passive by the colonialists' rule again. Therefore, it implies to the

Vietnamese have to do in anyway to against the French returning. The another group of negative meaning to the French side that tried to describe the failure on the war of the French side. Using the negative word to describe the French failure is not necessary to depend on the fact during that situation. But using this way of language use is the psychological tactic of the leader to arouse his people to endeavour to resist more as they are advantageous over their enemy side.

- The negative meaning as TheVietnamese be passive by the French ruler

In example 60, Ho used a group of negative meaning word consists of ‘*nô lệ*’ or ‘enslave’, ‘*ăn cướp*’ or ‘plunder’, ‘*giật*’ or ‘snatch’, ‘*chiếm giết*’ or ‘massacre’ to proposed that the French colonialists will bring the suffer to the Vietnamese. All suffer are things that President Ho wrote to show to his addressees by using the words in example 60 are a part of expressive words which occur in Ho Chi Minh’s letter. Using these words might arouse to the addressees feel that they have to resist automatically in any ways which do not give so that the French rulers do not come back and bring suffer to the Vietnamese again. The words ‘rob’, ‘catch’, and ‘slave’ make relevant senses and can interpret an inaccuracy that the Vietnamese are passive by the French rule because they have rights as their own country.

Example 60: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 23	<b>Còn</b>	<b>thực dân</b>	<b>phản động</b>	<b>Pháp</b>
	but	colonize	reactionary	French
	<b>thì</b>	<b>mong</b>	<b>ăn cướp</b>	<b>nước</b>
	then	wish	rob	country
	<b>ta,</b>	<b>mong</b>	<b>bắt</b>	<b>dân</b>
	our	wish	catch	people
	<b>ta</b>	<b>làm</b>	<b>nô lệ.</b>	
	our	make	slave	

*But the reactionary French colonialists wish to plunder our country and enslave our citizens.*

- The negative meaning for the French colonialists side

Another negative expressive words which occur in President Ho's letter are the words which describe the failure or the disadvantageous events of the French colonialists' side. This aspect is a normal style in rhetorical writing which the leader attempts to show the weaker points of the contrary side to his/her fellows. As shown in example 63, President Ho used the word 'thất bại' or 'lose' and 'hao phí' or 'waste' to the French rulers' side from the result in the battlefields. In the economic issue, the word 'kiệt quệ' or 'crippled' is used to clarify the economical failure of the French colonialists. The negative expressive meaning can see more examples generally in each text of Ho Chi Minh especially the texts on the anniversary occasion to appeal for National resistance in each year (see more in appendix).

Example 63: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 20	<b>Tình hình</b> situation	<b>địch:</b> enemy	<b>Về</b> in terms of	<b>quân sự –</b> army
	<b>Chiến lược</b> strategy	<b>chớp nhoáng</b> with lightning attacks	<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> they
	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>thất bại</b> lose	<b>rồi.</b> already	<b>Sau</b> after
	<b>1.000</b> 1,000	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>chiến tranh,</b> war	<b>chúng</b> they
	<b>đã</b> ASP: Past action: already	<b>chết</b> die	<b>và</b> and	<b>bị thương</b> wounded
	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>vạn</b> ten thousand	<b>người,</b> person	<b>hao phí</b> waste
	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>ngàn</b> thousand	<b>triệu</b> million	<b>bạc.</b> money

*The situation of the enemy side: about military army and lighting attacks strategy were defeated. After 1,000 days of war, ten thousand died or were wounded and billions spent .*

(21)	<b>Về</b>	<b>kinh tế:</b>	<b>Ở</b>	<b>đây</b>
	about	economics	at	here
	<b>cũng như</b>	<b>ở</b>	<b>Pháp,</b>	<b>kinh tế</b>
	as well as	at	France	economics
	<b>của</b>	<b>chúng</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>kiệt quệ,</b>
	of	them	ASP.: Past action:	crippled
			already	
	<b>chỉ</b>	<b>sống</b>	<b>ngắc ngoải</b>	<b>vào</b>
	only	live	be at death's door	into
	<b>sự</b>	<b>vay</b>	<b>nợ</b>	<b>các</b>
	(classifier of vay nợ)	borrow	debt	(pluralizer)
	<b>nước</b>	<b>khác.</b>		
	country	other		

*The economy: Here as in France, their economy is crippled lowest ebb and they only survive by the borrowing from other countries.*

## 5.2) Positive expressive meaning

The positive expressive meaning, occurs in Ho Chi Minh's letter, is a positive meaning which is clarify the advantageous events or things of the Vietnamese side for example 'thắng lợi' or 'win the victory'. This characteristic of Ho Chi Minh's writing occurs regularly in each text which describe about the situation of Vietnam (see more in appendix). Using the positive expressive meaning might encourage the Vietnamese to have a good feeling that they gain the success and have a good feedback from their works. In example 64, President Ho used the synonyms 'bênh vực' and 'ủng hộ' which mean 'support' to express that their resistance is supported from many people. The word 'đồng tình' or 'unanimous' and 'tán hành' or 'agree to' are also the positive meaning to modify more about their resistance.

Example 64: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 19	<b>Kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>cứu quốc</b> save the country	<b>là</b> be	<b>chính nghĩa,</b> righteous
	<b>cho nên</b> therefore	<b>được</b> have got	<b>nhiều người</b> many people	<b>bênh vực.</b> support

*The resistance to save our country is righteous. Therefore, many people support us.*

¶ 21	<b>Nhân dân</b> people	<b>thuộc địa</b> colony	<b>đồng tình</b> unanimous	<b>với</b> with
	<b>ta.</b> us			

*All colonized peoples agree with us.*

¶ 22	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>châu Á</b> Asia	<b>ủng hộ</b> support
------	----------------------------	--------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------

<b>ta.</b>	<b>Dư luận</b>	<b>trong</b>	<b>thế giới</b>
us	public opinion	in	world

<b>tán thành</b>	<b>ta.</b>
agree to	us

*All Asian peoples support us. World public opinion agrees with us.*

In example 65, President used the word ‘hy sinh’ or ‘sacrifice’ as the glorious concept to construct to the Vietnamese conscious mind to be patriots. The sacrifice for homeland even they have to die is the good thing to do. Therefore the resistance in terms of sacrifice is the positive concept might make the good model and be proud in that sacrifice.

Example 65: Text 1 Appeal for national resistance

¶ 4	<b>Giờ</b>	<b>cứu</b>	<b>nước</b>	<b>đã</b>
	time	save	country	ASP.: past action: already
	<b>đến.</b>	<b>Ta</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>hy sinh</b>
	arrive	we	must	sacrifice
	<b>đến</b>	<b>giọt</b>	<b>máu</b>	<b>cuối cùng,</b>
	arrive	drop	blood	last
	<b>để</b>	<b>giữ gìn</b>	<b>đất nước.</b>	
	for	preserve	homeland	

*The time to save our country has arrived. We have to sacrifice to the last drop of blood to preserve our homeland.*

### 6) The emphatic particle

The emphatic particles are used to identify more stress on the main meaning of words. In President Ho’s letter, he used two emphatic particles as ‘cứ’ and ‘thay’ to intensify the expressive emotion to his addressees as shown in example 66, 67 and 68.

In example 66, the emphatic article ‘cứ’ might use to arouse more expression to be more advance and rush for the resistance. It perhaps stimulate to the addressee feel have to try more to do in their works.

Example 66: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 7	<b>Mặc kệ</b> ignore <b>anh</b> brothers <b>xông</b> rush	<b>tàu bay,</b> aircraft <b>cứ</b> (emphatic particle) <b>vào!</b> more	<b>thiết giáp,</b> armor/tank <b>tiến lên,</b> advance	<b>các</b> (pluralizer) <b>cứ</b> (emphatic particle)
-----	--	--	---	--

*Don't bother about aircrafts and armours. Brothers advance and hurry on!*

In example 67, it shows more example of the emphatic particle ‘cứ’ to stress more expression to the addressees to advance more in the struggle.

Example 67: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 9	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>cứ</b> (emphasize particle)	<b>tiến lên!</b> advance
-----	----------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

*Fighters advance!*

In example 68, it reveals the use of the emphatic particle ‘thay!’ to emphasize the main adjective ‘vẻ vang’ and ‘oanh liệt’ which mean ‘glorious’, and ‘anh dũng’ which means ‘great fortitude’. Using the emphatic particle ‘thay’ might give expressions the addressees feel more glorious and great fortitude in their tasks to take part in the resistance.

Example 68: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country

- ¶ 5 - **Vẻ vang** thay!  
(final particle for emphasize)  
 glorious  
 - *How glorious your task is!*
- ¶ 6 - **Oanh liệt** thay!  
(final particle for emphasize)  
 glorious  
 - *How glorious!*
- ¶ 8 - **Anh dũng** thay!  
(final particle for emphasize)  
 of great fortitude  
**Lòng** **quyết thắng** **của anh em.**  
 heart set one's mind on victory(success) of brothers  
 - *How heroic your determination to win! All fighters are heroes of our fatherland.*

### 7) Intensify adverb

Intensify adverb is the particular characteristic which occur in Ho Chi Minh's letter. It gives the modification and stress more expression of the main verb. There are a huge amount intensify adverbs which occur in Ho's letters. The examples 69, 70 and 71 show the example of intensify adverbs in modifying more strength of verbs.

In example 69, it proposes verb 'to kill' which is not a normal 'kill'. But it is intensified by adverb 'glorious' which make the meaning of 'kill' is 'to kill which is glorious'. Or it might not mean bad meaning as normally, the conception of 'to kill' is given the negative sense but President Ho using this adverb can change that negative sense into the positive sense of word.

Example 69: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 5	- <b>Tướng sĩ</b>	<b>đang</b>	<b>oanh liệt</b>	<b>giết</b>
	officers	be in the process of	glorious	kill
	<b>giặc</b>	<b>trước</b>	<b>mặt trận;</b>	
	aggressor	before	front	
	- <i>Officers, who are glorious, are killing aggressors at the battlefield;</i>			

In example 70, the intensify adverb ‘khẩn khoản’ or ‘entreat persistently’ gives more strength to the word ‘kêu gọi’ or ‘appeal’ that President Ho sent to the people who take the wrong way by following the French colonialists’ side should be back quickly to the Vietnamese side. It might interpret that President Ho used this intensify adverb to deliver and ultimatum to his focused people to follow his suggestions.

Example 70: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 9	<b>Tôi</b>	<b>lại</b>	<b>khẩn khoản</b>	<b>kêu gọi</b>
	I	again	entreat persistently	appeal
	<b>những</b>	<b>người</b>	<b>đang</b>	<b>lầm đường</b>
	(pluralizer)	person	be in the process of	take the wrong way
	<b>theo</b>	<b>địch,</b>	<b>mau</b>	<b>mau</b>
	follow	enemy	quick	quick
	<b>trở về</b>	<b>với</b>	<b>Tổ quốc.</b>	
	return	with/to	fatherland	

*I entreat and appeal people who is taking the wrong way by following the enemy, return quickly to your fatherland.*

In example 71, the intensify adverb ‘quyết’ or ‘be determined’ is used to emphasize the decision of the Vietnamese to bring their life by using the metaphor ‘xương máu’ or ‘blood and bone’ replace meaning of ‘life’ to participate in the resistance.

Example 71: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 18	- Các	tướng sĩ	từ	Bắc
	(pluralizer)	officers	from	north
	đến	Nam,	đang	dũng cảm
	to	south	(be in process of)	brave
	xung phong	giết	địch,	<b>quyết</b>
	assault	kill	enemy	be determined
	đem	xương máu	giữ vững	nền
	bring	blood and bone	hold firm	base
	thống nhất	và	độc lập	cho
	unity	and	independent	for
	nước nhà.			
	home country			

- Officers from the north to the south are bravely attacking to kill the enemy. They are determined to sacrifice their lives for the unity and independence of our country.

### 8) Modality ‘must’

The modality ‘phải’ or ‘must’ is used to tell to the addressees in doing things follow the verb after the modality. Using modality which occurs in Ho Chi Minh’s letters is used generally. From his letters, it occurs only modality ‘must’ as President try to tell or suggest or order his fellows to do as shown in example 72 and 73. Furthermore, other examples of using modality ‘phải’ can see more in all letters in an appendix.

In example 72, President Ho used ‘phải’ to address to the Vietnamese officers that they must be more enthusiastic to fight and must be more enthusiastic to compete to kill the enemy. The modality ‘phải’ or ‘must’ firmly tell to his addressees that they have to do these works.

Example 72: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 28	<b>Ra lệnh</b>	<b>cho</b>	<b>toàn thể</b>	<b>tướng sĩ,</b>
	order	to	whole	officers
	<b>trước</b>	<b>đánh</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>hăng,</b>
	previously	fight	ASP.: past actions: already	very enthusiastic
	<b>từ nay</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>đánh</b>	<b>hăng</b>
	from now on	must	fight	very enthusiastic
	<b>hơn,</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>thi đua</b>	<b>nhau</b>
	more	must	emulate	each other
	<b>xung phong</b>	<b>sát</b>	<b>địch.</b>	
	assault/ change	kill	enemy	

*I order all officers to who have already fought enthusiastically, from now on, to fight even more determinedly and follow each other to change and kill the enemy.*

In example 73, the modality ‘phải’ or ‘must’ is used to tell the things that the Vietnamese must do in terms of fulfillment in two responsibilities following Ho’s policy or strategy. They consist of must do land reform to the Vietnamese peasants and must push forward this policy to increase more power of the resistance because this policy is very important as the basis for the agricultural society as Vietnam.

Example 73: Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 9	<b>Vậy,</b>	<b>để</b>	<b>thực hiện</b>	<b>độc lập</b>
	so	for	realize	dependent
	<b>thật sự</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>hoà bình</b>	<b>thật sự,</b>
	real	and	peace	real
	<b>quân</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>dân</b>	<b>ta</b>
	army forces	and	people	our

<b>phải</b> must	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>làm tròn</b> fulfil	<b>hai</b> two
<b>nhiệm vụ</b> responsibility	<b>trung tâm</b> centre	<b>là:</b> be	<b>đẩy mạnh</b> push forward
<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>và</b> and	<b>cải cách ruộng đất.</b> land reform	<b>Hai</b> two
<b>nhiệm vụ</b> responsibility	<b>ấy</b> that	<b>gắn liền</b> combine	<b>chặt chẽ</b> close
<b>với</b> with	<b>nhau:</b> together	<b>Phải</b> must	<b>cải cách ruộng đất</b> land reform
<b>để</b> for	<b>bồi dưỡng</b> strengthen	<b>lực lượng</b> power	<b>nhân dân,</b> people
<b>đảm bảo</b> guarantee(against)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>thắng lợi.</b> victory	
<b>Phải</b> must	<b>đẩy mạnh</b> push forward	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>để</b> for
<b>bảo đảm</b> guarantee	<b>cải cách ruộng đất</b> land reform	<b>thành công.</b> succeed	

*Thus, the realization of the real dependence and peace in our army forces and people must be endeavor to fulfill two main responsibilities which are: pushing forward the resistance and land reform. Two responsibilities which closely combine together are: to take land reform for the strong power of our people, to guarantee our victory, and to push forward our resistance to guarantee the success of land reform law.*

### 9) Numeral words

In this study, numeral words which occur in Ho Chi Minh's letters is a general characteristic for his writing style. There are two kinds of using the numeral number. They consist of the numeral word using to describe the duration of time especially in describing time war and the numeral word to describe amount of things. In this study, the numeral in time duration might interpret as it is used to remind the addressees on how long for war time. Meanwhile, the numeral word to describe amount of things tell the amount of money, amount of soldier of enemy's side be wounded and died, the calculation on the results of each issue ,for example, in politics, economics, war strategy. This kind of numeral number makes more believable to the addressee because it makes sense of the reality of the situation.

In example 73, the numeral number is used to remind the resistance to the Vietnamese that in the south had gone for 27 months and the resistance in the whole country after President Ho declared the National resistance had gone for a year. This characteristic by describing the duration occurs in all the appeal on the occasion of anniversary of appeal for national resistance in each year (see more in appendix).

Example 73: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 3	<b>Thảm thoát</b> soon	<b>toàn quốc</b> the whole country	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already
	<b>chẵn</b> even	<b>một</b> one	<b>năm</b> year	<b>và</b> and
	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>ở</b> at	<b>miền</b> area	<b>Nam</b> south
	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>27</b> <b>27</b>	<b>tháng.</b> month	

*The National resistance has gone on for one year and the resistance in the south has gone on for 27 months*

In example 74, President Ho attempted to remind the duration of the Vietnamese resistance as 1,000 days of resistance which he wrote the appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance. This numeral word is used to remind as the amount of the resistance which is very long time.

Example 74: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 23	<b>Tình hình</b> situation	<b>ta:</b> our	<b>Sau</b> after	<b>80</b> eighty
	<b>năm</b> year	<b>nô lệ,</b> slave	<b>sau</b> after	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of Thế giới đại chiến)
	<b>Thế giới</b> world	<b>đại chiến</b> world war	<b>thứ hai,</b> second	<b>sau</b> after
	<b>1.000</b> 1,000	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>thực dân</b> colonize
	<b>tàn phá,</b> devastate	<b>dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our	<b>không sao</b> cannot
	<b>khỏi</b> Avoid	<b>cực khổ</b> hard and miserable	<b>gian nan.</b> miserably hard	

*The situation of our side: after 80 years as their slaves, after the world war II, after the 1,000 days of devastation by the French colonialists devastated, our people don't worry about hardship.*

In example 75, the numeral number is used as a fraction to report about an amount of area in Vietnam which still has freedom. It might make sense as the reality to the addressees can imagine themselves on their freedom areas.

Example 75: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 24	<b>9</b>	<b>phần</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>đất nước</b>
	nine	part	ten	homeland
	<b>vẫn</b>	<b>tự do.</b>	<b>Quân đội</b>	<b>ngày càng</b>
	still	free	army	more and more
	<b>mạnh mẽ.</b>	<b>Nhân dân</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>càng</b>
	strong	fellow-countryman	our	more
	<b>đoàn kết.</b>	<b>Oai</b>	<b>tín</b>	<b>Chính phủ</b>
	unite	stately	faith	government
	<b>ta</b>	<b>càng ngày càng</b>	<b>vững vàng.</b>	
	our	more... and more...	stable	

*Nine-tenths of our homeland already has freedom. Our army is stronger more and more. Fellow-countrymen are united more and more. Our Government is more and more stable.*

In example 76, the large amount of the fellows in Vietnam that President attempted to tell to all fighters make sense to his addressees as the real amount of the Vietnamese who are determined to support all of them. It might make all fighters who were fighting be proud and encourage them to fight as they might think that they have huge amount of fellows support them.

Example 76: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 10	<b>20</b>	<b>triệu</b>	<b>đồng bào</b>	<b>đang</b>
	20	million	fellow-countryman	(be in the process of)
	<b>hoan hô</b>	<b>anh em</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>quyết</b>
	acclaim	brothers	and	determine

<b>làm</b>	<b>hậu thuẫn</b>	<b>cho</b>	<b>anh em.</b>
do	force in support	for	brothers
	in the rear		

*Twenty million of our fellow-countrymen are cheering on you and determined to support you all, brothers.*

### 10) Reduplication

Reduplication is a term to be a process of repetition. In this study, the use of word reduplication is one of the most significant characteristic of Ho Chi Minh's language use. There are large amount of using this language style in each letter. His using the word reduplication can analyze as it attempts to intensify the words or phrases are repeated. It implies one way to make the strength on meaning that makes the addressees automatically feel that which words the writer would like to emphasize. Ho's style in using word reduplication seems like the fulfillment of word after the reduplication words to refer to the other things that President Ho meant.

In example 77, President Ho used three words as a rhythm of these three sentences equally. He used 'diệt' meaning 'destroy' and 'giặc' meaning 'enemy' as word reduplication to intensify these two words that make senses to his addressees know that his main meaning is 'to destroy' or 'to eliminate' the enemies. Because there are many meanings of enemy he wanted to refer. Therefore he might use the reduplication to emphasize each enemy that he referred as 'đói' or 'starvation' which is the difficulty that the Vietnamese must win over, 'dốt' or 'illiteracy' which president Ho attempted to use it as his policy to increase the literacy people, and finally 'ngoại xâm' or 'foreign aggressors' which means the French colonialists. As from each enemy, it proposes that if the Vietnamese have to eradicate the first two enemies, the third enemy which is the most significant enemy that they also have to eliminate.

## Example 77: Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism

- ¶ 2 **Diệt** **giặc** **đói,**  
destroy enemy be starve  
*to eliminate starvation,*
- ¶ 3 **Diệt** **giặc** **đốt,**  
destroy enemy uneducated  
*to eliminate illiteracy,*
- ¶ 4 **Diệt** **giặc** **ngoại xâm.**  
destroy foreign aggressor foreign aggression  
*to destroy the aggressors who invade us.*

In example 78, it shows President Ho chose a word ‘dân’ or ‘people’ as the most important word that he meant. ‘Dân’ is focused as it is the factor that lead to the success in this war by their power, spirits. He started from a causing which could lead to the victory by power and spirits of people will lead to the final result as a people’s happiness.

## Example 78: Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism

- ¶ 6 **Lực lượng** **của** **dân,**  
power of people  
*the power of the people,*
- ¶ 7 **Tinh thần** **của** **dân,** **để**  
spirit/mind of people, for  
**gây:**  
provoke/produce  
*the spirit of people:*

- (8) **Hạnh phúc**                      **cho**                      **dân.**  
 happiness                      to                      people  
*Happiness to our people.*

In example 79, the word ‘làm cho’ or ‘do’ is used as reduplication of the things that President Ho appealed to his fellows that they have to do quickly, do well, and do a lot. The word reduplication in this example is used as the emphasis on his war strategy. It might make his addressees are easy to remember and understand. The pattern of Ho’s using reduplication can show as ‘làm cho + adjective’ that he is blank to fill in the adjective ‘mau’ or ‘quick’, ‘tốt’ or ‘well’ and ‘nhiều’ or many after the word reduplication.

Example 79: Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism

- ¶ 10 **Làm**                      **cho**                      **mau,**  
 do                      for                      quick  
*Do quickly,*

- ¶ 11 **Làm**                      **cho**                      **tốt,**  
 do                      for                      good  
*Do well,*

- ¶ 12 **Làm**                      **cho**                      **nhiều.**  
 do                      for                      many  
*Do a lot.*

In example 80, ‘kháng chiến’ is a reduplication term that Ho Chi Minh attempted to keep meaning on. It means both of all things consist of all people and all-sided have to do the important thing as the resistance which Ho Chi Minh want to emphasize.

## Example 80: Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism

¶ 14 **Toàn dân** **kháng chiến,**  
resist(against foreign aggression)  
*all the people*  
*All people resist foreign aggression,*

¶ 15 **Toàn diện** **kháng chiến.**  
resist(against foreign aggression)  
*all-sided*  
*Complete resistance,*

In example 81, there are the reduplication ‘đánh’ or ‘fight’ and ‘cho đến’ or ‘to reach to’ that Ho Chi Minh use to give the strength to the meanings to his addressees to ‘fight’ until gain victory, independence, and unify of their country. The blank that Ho Chi Minh wanted to fill is the final purpose from the way that they have to do for those purposes.

## Example 81: Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 20	<b>Hễ</b>	<b>còn</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>tên</b>
	whoever	still have	one	name
	<b>lính</b>	<b>thực dân</b>	<b>trên</b>	<b>đất nước</b>
	soldier	colonize	on	homeland
	<b>Việt Nam,</b>	<b>thì</b>	<b>Việt Nam</b>	<b>cứ</b>
	Vietnam	then	Vietnam	(emphatic particle)

<b>đánh,</b> fight			
<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>cho</b> for	<b>đến</b> arrive	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory
<b>hoàn toàn,</b> complete			

<b>đánh</b>	<b>cho</b>	<b>đến</b>	<b>độc lập</b>
fight	for	arrive	
<b>và</b>	<b>thống nhất</b>	<b>thật sự.</b>	
and	Unify	real	

*Whoever is still the colonial soldiers in Vietnam, the Vietnamese have to fight. We fight until win a victory and gain our independence and unify.*

In example 82, there are two phrases reduplication. The phrases ‘chỉ có một’ or ‘only have one’ are filled by the things which will lead to the purposes by using reduplication ‘quyết không’ or ‘be determined not’ follow by the purpose of those things. President Ho wrote ‘chỉ có một (just have one) + (things) + quyết không (be determined not) + do something (negative things)’. From an example, it means he might want to emphasize that the Vietnamese just have one heart (implies unity), they are determined not be enslaved. And if they just have one will, they are determined not concede their country to the French aggressors.

Example 82: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 8 **Toàn dân Việt Nam**  
the whole people Vietnam

<b>chỉ</b>	<b>có</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>lòng:</b>
only	have	one	heart
<b>Quyết</b>	<b>không</b>	<b>làm</b>	<b>nô lệ,</b>
be determined	NEG.	be	slave
<b>Chỉ</b>	<b>có</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>chí:</b>
only	have	one	will
<b>Quyết</b>	<b>không</b>	<b>chịu</b>	<b>mất nước,</b>
be determined	NEG.	concede	lose one’s country

*The whole of the Vietnamese people are whole-heartedly determined not to be enslaved. We have just one will, that is to be determined not to concede our country to the foreign aggressors.*

In example 83, Ho Chi Minh used reduplication in two sentences. They are reduplicated as a pattern ‘mỗi (each) + (thing) + là một (to be a) + (thing)’ to give meaning that each (thing) is the one (thing). This pattern can interpret that President Ho might attempt to assemble things together to be the one. As occurring in example, in each ‘công dân’ or ‘citizen’ is a ‘soldier’. That means Ho Chi minh gave meaning to give unity of each citizen to be the same status as soldier. It is also the word ‘làng’ or ‘village’ is replace in the came pattern to make unity of each village as a combat trench.

Example 83: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 17	<b>Hơn nữa</b> moreover	<b>trong</b> in	<b>cuộc</b> (a classifier of trường kỳ kháng chiến)	<b>trường kỳ</b> protracted
	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance			
	<b>mỗi</b> each	<b>công dân</b> citizen	<b>là</b> be	<b>một</b> one
	<b>chiến sĩ.</b> soldier			
	<b>Mỗi</b> each	<b>làng</b> village	<b>là</b> be	<b>một</b> one
	<b>chiến hào.</b> combat trench			

*Moreover, in the long war of resistance, each citizen is a soldier. Each village is a combat trench.*

In example 84, Ho Chi Minh used the reduplication ‘từ Nam đến Bắc’ or ‘from the South to the North’ + people who do something. It is interpreted that he might try to emphasize the same event that happened in all country from the South to the North which is not only any one place of the country. In addition the reduplication

word as ‘quyết’ or ‘be determined’ is used in front of to emphasize their works that the Vietnamese did as against the French aggressors and fight for their independence.

Example 84: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 17	<b>Từ</b>	<b>Nam</b>	<b>đến</b>	<b>Bắc,</b>
	from	south	to	north
	<b>cả</b>	<b>nước</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>lòng,</b>
	all	country	one	mind
	<b>quyết</b>	<b>chống</b>	<b>ngoại xâm,</b>	
	be determined	anti-	foreign aggression	
	<b>quyết</b>	<b>tranh</b>	<b>độc lập.</b>	
	be determined	fight for	independent	
	<b>Từ</b>	<b>Nam</b>	<b>đến</b>	<b>Bắc,</b>
	from	south	to	north
<b>bộ đội</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>dân quân,</b>	<b>hăng hái</b>	
army	and	militia	enthusiastic	
<b>dũng cảm,</b>	<b>chỉ huy</b>	<b>thống nhất.</b>		
valiant	direct	unite		
<b>Từ</b>	<b>Nam</b>	<b>đến</b>	<b>Bắc,</b>	
from	south	to	north	
<b>toàn dân</b>	<b>nghe</b>	<b>theo</b>	<b>mệnh lệnh</b>	
all the people	listen to	follow	order	
<b>của</b>	<b>Chính phủ</b>	<b>trung ương,</b>	<b>một</b>	
of	government	central	one	
<b>Chính phủ</b>	<b>do</b>	<b>nhân dân</b>	<b>cử</b>	
government	by	people	designate	
<b>ra,</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>kiên quyết</b>	<b>kháng chiến</b>	
out	and	resolute	resistance	
<b>đến cùng</b>	<b>để</b>	<b>tranh</b>	<b>thống nhất</b>	
to finish	for	fight for	unite	

**và độc lập cho Tổ quốc.**  
and independent for fatherland

*Our resistance has favourable conditions which no other nation has. From the South to the North, all over the country we have only one mind, to fight against foreign aggression and to fight for our independence. From the North to the South, all the people are following the orders of the Central Government. The Government, chosen by the people, and determined its resistance, to fight for the unity and independence of our fatherland.*

In example 85, the word ‘ra sức’ or ‘endeavour’ is used to emphasize to the Vietnamese have to try do to each works as increasing products, harvesting paddy and preserving dykes, and supporting the army. The reduplication ‘endeavour’ makes sense to the addressees know that they have to ‘endeavour’ to do in each work. It gives more strength on each work by using reduplication.

Example 85: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 29	<b>Kêu gọi</b> appeal	<b>toàn thể</b> the whole country	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	
	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>tăng gia sản xuất,</b> increase production		
	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>cắt</b> harvest	<b>lúa,</b> paddy	<b>giữ</b> preserve
	<b>đê,</b> dyke			
	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>ủng hộ</b> support	<b>bộ đội.</b> army	

*I appeal to all fellow-countrymen, endeavour to increase production and harvest more paddies, preserve dykes, and support our army.*

In example 86, using reduplication by word ‘quyết tâm’ or ‘be determined’ follows with the works that the fighters have to do in the battlefield make strong

perception that in each work they have to add more degree to be determined to follow in war strategies.

Example 86: Text 19 Address, sent to cadres and fighters at the Dien Bien Phu battlefield

¶ 4	<b>Quyết tâm</b> be determined(to)	<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out	<b>địch,</b> enemy	
<i>Be determined to wipe out the enemy,</i>				
¶ 5	<b>Quyết tâm</b> be determined(to)	<b>giữ vững</b> hold firm	<b>chính sách,</b> policy	
<i>Be determined to hold firm our policy,</i>				
¶ 6	<b>Quyết tâm</b> be determined(to)	<b>tranh</b> fight for	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>thắng lợi.</b> victory
<i>Be determined to fight for win many victory</i>				

In example 87, it is only one repetition occurs in this study. The word ‘mau’ or ‘quick’ is repeated two times to intensify more degree for adjective ‘quick’. It is also interpreted that the repetition can arouse more feeling to follow to the addressees.

Example 87: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 9	<b>Tôi</b>	<b>lại</b>	<b>khẩn khoản</b>	<b>kêu gọi</b>
	I	again	entreat persistently	appeal
	<b>những</b>	<b>người</b>	<b>đang</b>	<b>lầm đường</b>
	(pluralizer)	person	be in the process of	take the wrong way
	<b>theo</b>	<b>địch,</b>	<b>mau</b>	<b>mau</b>
	follow	enemy	quick	quick

<b>trở về</b>	<b>với</b>	<b>Tổ quốc.</b>
return	with/to	fatherland

*I entreat and appeal people who is taking the wrong way by following the enemy, return quickly to your fatherland.*

### 11) Metaphor

Metaphor is a persuasive language. It is important because of its function in explaining, clarifying, describing, expressing and evaluating the content of discourse (Moon: 2005). In this study, many kinds of metaphor are used by Ho Chi Minh on his letters. This is an important characteristic of Ho Chi Minh's language use. The types of metaphor which occur in his letters are simile, symbol, personification, proverb and idiom. In terms of Vietnamese culture, a significant character in Vietnamese language is the use of the figurative language. It makes senses to the Vietnamese in all levels because its language inherits from generation to generation and it is understandable as it is reflected and constructed from the Vietnamese culture. Therefore, using many kind of figurative language is a crucial of Ho Chi Minh's language style. It makes to the Vietnamese can imagine and easy to understand more in-depth what he wanted to imply.

In example 88, Ho Chi Minh used metaphor to describe how large amounts of the bullets and bombs that the French use to attack Vietnam. He replaced the large amounts of bullets and bombs by using 'mưa' or 'rains' and 'rừng' or 'forests'. It makes senses immediately to the addressees that how a lot of amount of bullets and bombs have. An example shows more that Ho Chi Minh tried to praise his fellows. From the meaning, he praised to describe that even the bullets that the French colonialists use with the Vietnamese are a lot like the rains. The drops of rain imply directly to how large amount of them. The 'forest' of bombs make senses that the Vietnamese have to encounter a lot with bombs but they are do not mind for all dangers.

Example 88: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 5	<b>Máu</b> blood	<b>trôi</b> afloat	<b>lửa</b> fire	<b>cháy,</b> burn,
	<b>mưa</b> rain	<b>đạn</b> bullet	<b>rừng</b> forest	<b>bom,</b> bomb
	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>quản</b> mind(difficulty, hardship)
	<b>nguy hiểm.</b> dangerous			

*Even if they shoot us with a rain of bullets that makes our blood flow and they bomb us with a forest of bombs that sets our houses blaze, you still do not mind the dangers.*

In example 89, it occurs President Ho used metaphor to tell how great intention of the Vietnamese fighters sacrifices to their country. The metaphor ‘xương máu’ or ‘bone and blood’ is used as a metaphor. It implies to Vietnamese fighters that they can sacrifice even their bone blood to save their country. Eventhough in fact, it is impossible to bring blood and bone to fight in practical way but it gives imply meaning that they can sacrifice their life.

Example 89: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 8	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>quyết</b> determine	<b>đem</b> bring with one
	<b>xương máu</b> bone and blood	<b>để</b> for	<b>giữ vững</b> hold fast	<b>non nước</b> country

**Lạc Hồng!**

(Name of the race that is the combination between the dragon and goddess/fairy)

*All fighters are determined to sacrifice bone and blood for our Lac Hong land.*

In example 90, the simile is used to represent for the Vietnamese or their own side as ‘chính nghĩa’ or ‘righteousness’ and the French or the enemy side as ‘tà’ or ‘unrighteousness’. He used the principle of morality to describe that the common thing that everyone knows. In terms of the ‘righteousness’ is certain win over the ‘unrighteousness’. It makes sense that the Vietnamese is certain win over the French colonialists because of the reason of the truth.

Example 90: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 6	<b>Vậy</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>là</b>	<b>chính nghĩa,</b>
	so	we	be	righteous
	<b>địch</b>	<b>là</b>	<b>tà.</b>	
	enemy	be	unrighteous	
	<b>Chính</b>	<b>nhất định</b>	<b>thắng</b>	<b>tà.</b>
	righteous	absolutely certain	win	unrighteous

*Thus we are righteous but the enemy is unrighteous. Righteousness is certain to win over unrighteousness.*

In example 91, the strong expressive word ‘trâu’ means ‘buffalo’ and ‘ngựa’ means ‘horse’ are used as personification to compare as the Vietnamese instead of buffaloes and horses of the French colonialists. It implies the Vietnamese were enslaved of the French colonialists. As the conception of the buffaloes and horses are slaves of human-being. Using this personification imply the Vietnamese have to serve as the French’s slaves. Therefore, it makes the Vietnamese might remind that they should to liberate themselves from that status because they should not enslave as they were their own country.

Example 91: Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist

¶ 5	<b>Vì</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>không</b>	<b>chịu</b>
	because	we	NEG.	accept/bear
	<b>làm</b>	<b>trâu</b>	<b>ngựa</b>	<b>cho</b>
	be	buffalo	horse	for
	<b>Pháp,</b>	<b>vì</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>phải</b>
	French	because	we	must
	<b>giữ gìn</b>	<b>non sông</b>	<b>đất nước</b>	<b>ta,</b>
	preserve	homeland	homeland	our
	<b>cho nên</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>đánh</b>
	therefore	we	must	fight
	<b>bọn</b>	<b>thực dân</b>	<b>Pháp.</b>	
	gang (pej.)	colonialist	French	

*Because we can not concede to be buffaloes and horses for the French. And because we must preserve our homeland, we have to fight the French colonialists.*

In addition, in example 92, president Ho also used the personification by comparing the Vietnamese as ‘xiềng xích’ or ‘fetters’ of the French slavation. As the Vietnamese have their own wills and rights that there is no reason to be the aggressors’ fetters. It makes the addressees remind that they are passived so they have to do in any ways that can liberate themselves from that fetters.

Example 92: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 27	<b>Nhưng</b>	<b>chúng ta</b>	<b>quyết</b>	<b>hy sinh</b>
	but	we	be determined	sacrifice
	<b>chịu</b>	<b>khổ</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>gắng sức</b>
	accept	miserable	and	endeavour

<b>5</b>	<b>năm,</b>	<b>10</b>	<b>năm</b>
five	year	ten	year
<b>để</b>	<b>phá tan</b>	<b>cái</b>	<b>xiềng xích</b>
for	break(silence,peace)	(classifier of xiềng xích)	fetters
<b>nô lệ</b>	<b>hơn</b>	<b>80</b>	<b>năm</b>
slave	more	eighty	year
<b>vừa qua,</b>	<b>để</b>	<b>tranh</b>	<b>lấy</b>
last	for	fight for	get
<b>quyền</b>	<b>thống nhất</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>độc lập</b>
right	unite	and	independent
<b>cho</b>	<b>muôn đời</b>	<b>sắp</b>	<b>đến.</b>
for	forever	be forthcoming	arrive

*. But we are determined to sacrifice, accept misery, and strive for 5 years, 10 years to break the fetters of more than 80 years of slavery and fight to win our rights, unity and independence that is forthcoming forever.*

In example 93, Ho Chi Minh used the metaphor by comparing the French colonialists as ‘địch’ or ‘enemy’ instead of ‘lửa’ or ‘fire’ and instead the Vietnamese as ‘nước’ or ‘water’. He described more that water certainly wins over fire. Using this comparison is a kind to give an evidence by the truth. It makes common sense to the addressees without a doubt. Consequently, it means the Vietnamese will definitely win the victory over their enemy.

Example 93: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 16	<b>Thế</b>	<b>địch</b>	<b>như</b>	<b>lửa.</b>
	situation	enemy	like	fire
	<b>Thế</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>như</b>	<b>nước.</b>
	situation	we	like	water
	<b>Nước</b>	<b>nhất định</b>	<b>thắng</b>	<b>lửa.</b>
	water	absolutely certain	win	fire

*So the enemy is like fire and we are like water. Water is sure to put out fire.*

In example 94, Ho Chi Minh used metaphor to compare the French colonialists' power by using the terms of 'sunset'. It makes senses that although their power is like the sun as twilight but it is like the sunset. It implies the small power of the sunset that nearly extinguished.

Example 94: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 13	<b>Lực lượng</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>chúng</b>	<b>cũng</b>
	power	of	them (pej.)	also
	<b>như</b>	<b>mặt trời</b>	<b>vào</b>	<b>lúc</b>
	such as	the Sun	into	very
	<b>hoàng hôn,</b>	<b>hống hách</b>	<b>lắm</b>	<b>nhưng</b>
	sunset	authoritative	very	but
	<b>đã</b>	<b>gần</b>	<b>tắt nghỉ.</b>	
	ASP.: past	near	breathe one's last	
	actions: already			

*Their strength is like the sun at twilight—very strong but nearly extinguished.*

In example 95, President Ho attempted to use metaphor to show the comparison of the Vietnamese power which is like the stream which has just begun to flow and the fire which has just been lighted. But it will definitely be have more powerful in advance. It implies that their power has just increased.

Example 95: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 14	<b>...dù</b>	<b>lực lượng</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>ta</b>
	however	power	of	us

<b>ngày</b>	<b>càng</b>	<b>thêm</b>	<b> mạnh,</b>
day	more	add	strong

<b>như</b>	<b>súi</b>	<b>mới</b>	<b> chảy,</b>
like	stream	ASP: present perfect action: has just begun	flow

<b>như</b>	<b>lửa</b>	<b>mới</b>	<b> nhóm,</b>
like	fire	ASP: present perfect action: has just begun	light

<b>chỉ</b>	<b>có</b>	<b>tiến,</b>	<b>không</b>
only	have	advance	not

<b>có</b>	<b>thoái.</b>
have	retreat

*... even though our power is stronger and stronger like a stream which has just begun to flow and a fire which has just been lighted; we can only advance and not retreat.*

In example 96, the simile is used to describe the enemy's situation. It is compared by using the word 'như' or 'same' to link the simile. The enemy's situation is compared as the sun which go down and nearly die out. It implies the negative meaning to the enemy that even if they are the sun but that sun is not powerful. Because it is the sun that will be go down and die out. It shows that even the enemy is the sun but it also have the time that the sun lose its power.

Example 96: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 25	<b>Lực lượng</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>địch</b>	
	power	of	enemy	
	<b>trước</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>sau</b>	<b>nhỏ,</b>
	before	big	after	small
	<b>trước</b>	<b>mạnh</b>	<b>sau</b>	<b>yếu.</b>
	before	strong	after	weak

<b>Tình hình</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>địch</b>	<b>như</b>
situation	of	enemy	same
<b>mặt trời</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>xế tà,</b>	<b>gần</b>
sun	ASP.: past actions: already	draw to a close(tell about day)	nearly
<b>tắt.</b>			
die out			

*The power of enemy is very big before and small after, strong before and weak after. The situation of enemy side is same the sun which go down and nearly die out.*

In example 97, the personification occurs by using the words as if it is capable of human actions. The term ‘giặc’ or ‘enemy’ is identified by Ho Chi Minh that the Vietnamese have to uproot. Ho Chi Minh insteaded the ‘enemy’ by using ‘đói’ or ‘starvation’, ‘dốt’ or ‘illiteracy’ and ‘ngoài xâm’ or ‘foreign aggressors’. These enemies have to remind by the Vietnamese to eliminate but the staravation and illiteracy are not the alive things. Therefore, this comparison is used as metaphor that the inanimate things use the action ‘to kill’ same as the animate thing which is ‘foreign aggressors’.

Example 97: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 30 **Đồng bào**                      **phải**                      **thi đua**                      **tăng gia sản xuất,**  
fellow-countryman    must                      emulation                      increase production

<b>giết</b>	<b>giặc</b>	<b>đói,</b>
kill	enemy	starve
<b>giết</b>	<b>giặc</b>	<b>dốt,</b>
kill	enemy	uneducated
<b>giúp</b>	<b>sức</b>	
help	power	

<b>giết</b> kill	<b>giặc</b> enemy	<b>ngoại xâm.</b> foreign aggression
---------------------	----------------------	---

*Fellow-countrymen must challenge to increase productions, eliminate starvation, eliminate illiteracy, and destroy the aggressors who invade us.*

In example 98, the replacement of the Vietnamese as ‘bức tường đồng’ or ‘the bronze wall’ is the simile. President Ho used this simile to clarify the strength of the Vietnamese’ single mind which is very strong like the bronze wall. As his fellows’ mind are strong like this, it is very difficult to be capable for everyone to destroy.

Example 98: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 10	<b>Sự</b> (classifier of đồng tâm)	<b>đồng tâm</b> be of the same mind	<b>của</b> of	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman
	<b>ta</b> our	<b>đúc</b> cast	<b>thành</b> to be something	<b>một</b> one
	<b>bức</b> (use before noun)	<b>tường</b> wall	<b>đồng</b> bronze	<b>xung quanh</b> surrounding

**Tổ quốc.**

fatherland

*The single mind of our fellow-countrymen will cast a bronze wall to surround our fatherland.*

In example 99, Ho Chi Minh used metaphor to compare the French colonialists’ war strategy which is ‘Use the Vietnamese fight with the Vietnamese’. He compared this strategy is like drinking the poison which implies the failure of the strategy. And it is only a result from ‘drinking the poison’ that is dead.

Example 99: Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 3	<b>Để</b> for	<b>cứu vớt</b> save	<b>thất bại</b> defeat	<b>ấy,</b> that
	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>thực hiện</b> realize	<b>âm mưu</b> conspiracy
	<b>“dùng</b> use	<b>người</b> people	<b>Việt</b> Vietnamese	<b>đánh</b> fight
	<b>người</b> people	<b>Việt”,</b> Vietnamese	<b>gấp rút</b> very urgent	<b>mở rộng</b> expand
	<b>ngụy quân;</b> puppet troops	<b>song</b> however	<b>như thế</b> like that	<b>thì</b> then
	<b>khác nào</b> just like	<b>uống</b> drink	<b>thuốc độc</b> poison	<b>cho</b> for
	<b>đỡ</b> help	<b>khát.</b> thirsty		

*For that defeat, the enemies endeavor to realize under the conspiracy “Use the Vietnamese fight with the Vietnamese” by urgently expand the puppet troops but using this is like drinking the poison to help thirsty.*

In example 100, the term ‘bàn tay trắng’ is used as metaphor. It implies the task that the Vietnamese resist in the war as they are not unrighteous. But their task is on the righteousness thing. It is like the white hands that replace the meaninf of the right thing.

Example 100: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 22	<b>Ta</b> we	<b>mới</b> just	<b>lấy</b> get	<b>được</b> be able to
------	-----------------	--------------------	-------------------	---------------------------

<b>chính quyền,</b>	<b>thì</b>	<b>liền</b>	<b>phải</b>
government	then	next to	must
<b>kháng chiến.</b>	<b>Có thể</b>	<b>nói</b>	<b>lúc</b>
resistance	can	say	time
<b>đó,</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>chỉ</b>	<b>có</b>
that	we	only	have
<b>hai</b>	<b>bàn tay</b>	<b>trắng.</b>	<b>Chúng ta</b>
two	hand	white	we
<b>vừa</b>	<b>kháng chiến,</b>	<b>vừa</b>	<b>xây dựng.</b>
just	resist	just	construct

*We just have the Government which has to resist. It is able to say that, we have only two white hands. We have just resisted and constructed.*

In example 101, it is an example of the use of Vietnamese proverb. The proverb is a mind that easy to make understand to addressees as it is a usual and well-known language because it is constructed from the social basis. Everybody is understandable. From an example, President Ho used proverb ‘đồng cam cộng khổ’ to modify the characteristic of the Government that is the Government which shares the happiness and difficulty along with its people.

Example 101: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 11	<b>Chính phủ</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>ngày càng</b>	<b>thêm</b>
	government	our	more... and	add
			more...	
	<b>oai tín,</b>	<b>càng</b>	<b>được</b>	<b>ủng hộ</b>
	prestige	more	have got	support
	<b>và</b>	<b>là</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>Chính phủ</b>
	and	to be	one	government
	<b>kiên quyết</b>	<b>kháng chiến,</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>Chính phủ</b>
	(be)determined	to resist(against foreign	one	government
		aggression)		

<b>đại</b>	<b>đoàn kết,</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>Chính phủ</b>
great	unite	one	government

<b>đồng cam cộng khổ</b>	<b>với</b>
share the happiness and difficulty together( <i>proverb</i> )	with

<b>dân,</b>	<b>một</b>	<b>Chính phủ</b>	<b>của</b>
people	one	government	of

**dân.**

people

*Our government has more and more prestige and support. Our government is the government which is determined to resist, a government of great solidarity and a government which shares both happiness and suffering with the people, a government of the people.*

In case of the struggle in the war of resistance which had many miserableness and difficulties fought by the Vietnamese fighters. This effort was praised by president Ho as a glorious and honourable feat of arms which he compared as Vietnamese proverb ‘kinh trời động đất’ or ‘earthshaking’ as shown in example 102:

Example 102: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 12	<b>Tuy</b>	<b>khi giới</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>còn</b>
	although	weapons	our	still
	<b>kém,</b>	<b>kinh nghiệm</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>còn</b>
	weak	experience	our	still
	<b>ít,</b>	<b>nhưng</b>	<b>lòng</b>	<b>kiên quyết,</b>
	little	but	heart	[be]firm in(of)purpose
	<b>chí</b>	<b>hy sinh</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>tướng sĩ</b>
	will	sacrifice	of	officers
	<b>ta</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>lập</b>	<b>những</b>
	our	ASP.: past	establish /achieve	some
		action:already		

<b>chiến công</b>	<b>oanh liệt,</b>	<b>vẻ vang</b>	<b>có thể</b>
feat of arms	glorious	honourable	be able to
<b>nói</b>	<b>là</b>		
say	be		

<b><i>kinh</i></b>	<b><i>trời</i></b>	<b><i>động đất.</i></b>
frighten	sky	earthquake
<i>(proverb) the great thing that can make the sky frightened and the land shake</i>		

*Although, our weapons are weak and our experience is little the strong heart and the will of our officers who have made sacrifice will prove to be a glorious and honourable feat of arms that compares with “earthshaking” feat.*

In example 103, Using Vietnamese idioms as metaphor were prominently style which was capable make Ho’s addressees are understandable easily. The idiom ‘ăn gió nồm sưng’ or ‘to be weather-beaten’ is understandable and well-known in particular. It lead to the parallel phrase that President attempted to mean the assault in the besiege battlefield.

Example 103: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 5	<b>Ăn gió nồm sưng,</b>	<b>xung phong</b>	<b>hãm</b>	<b>trận,</b>
	to be weather-beaten	assault	besiege	battle
	<b>các</b>	<b>anh em</b>	<b>không</b>	<b>quản</b>
	(pluralizer)	brothers	NEG.	mind(difficulty, hardship)

**gian lao.**

gruelling

*- This is a struggle like no other struggle. But you do not mind the difficulties.*

In example 104, the proverb ‘thực túc, binh cường’ or ‘a good army with enough full food for them’ is proposed to identify the situation of Vietnamese side. The proverb reflects a crucial war strategy about enough provisions. This strategy is very important as the basis factor of army which is able to lead to the victory.

Example 104: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 30 Ta ngày càng đoàn kết, ngày càng  
we more and more unite more and more

“thực	túc,	binh	cường”,
eat	full	army	strong

*(proverb) a good army with enough full food for them*

thì địch nhất định thua,  
then enemy certainly lose

ta nhất định thắng.  
we certainly win

*If we are more and more unite, more and more strong army with enough foods for them, the enemy is certain to lose but we are certain to win.*

## 12) Ideological struggle

In President Ho Chi Minh's letter, the crucial style which reflects from his language use is his ideology. There are three main ideologies from his letters. They are the ideologies which have background from the Vietnamese traditional ideologies, the Chinese ideologies and the Western ideologies. These ideologies have power as they are constructed to shape the Vietnamese people to participate in the resistance. In addition, they are used as the principle of the rational to explain to his addressees so that his letters have more strong power lead to the Vietnamese believe in him. The ideologies based on the Vietnamese tradition are realized especially on the Vietnamese history and the concept of the Vietnamese heroes. The Chinese ideologies are the ideology of Confucianism and the Chinese revolution ideology. And the western ideologies are the concept of unify, independence and freedom of the nation which relevant occur in his mottos in the final part in each letter.

### 12.1) Chinese ideology

Chinese intellectual in Ho's words can distinguished into two main ideologies consist of the Confucianism ideology which have had in depth influence in Vietnamese society since Vietnam was ruled by the Chinese imperialism and the modern Chinese ideology in political motivation in particular the ideology of Chinese revolution which is successful in 1949.

#### a) The ideology of Confucianism

The Confucianism ideology was used in president Ho's rhetoric as Confucian social organization which consists of scholars, farmers, industrials, and traders. He used this parttern of social organization because it is the Vietnamese social background which is the large amount of people in society. It caused to Vietnamese society gained influence and intellectual from China as shown in example 105:

Example 105: Text 6 Appeal for patriotic emulation

¶ 4	<b>Vì vậy,</b> therefore	<b>sĩ,</b> scholars	<b>nông,</b> farmers,	<b>công,</b> workers
	<b>thương,</b> traders	<b>binh,</b> soldiers	<b>gái</b> female	<b>traí</b> male
	<b>già</b> old	<b>trẻ,</b> young	<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>quốc dân</b> people(of a country)
	<b>ta,</b> our	<b>vô luận</b> whoever	<b>Ở</b> At	<b>địa vị</b> social position
	<b>nào,</b> which	<b>Làm</b> do	<b>công việc</b> work	<b>gì,</b> what
	<b>phải</b> must	<b>ra sức</b> strive	<b>tham gia</b> take part in	<b>cuộc</b> (a classifier of noun)

**Thi đua Yêu nước, tức là tăng gia sản xuất.**  
 emulation patriotic mean increase production(of)  
*Therefore, scholars, farmers, industrialists, soldiers, female and male, old and young, all people of our country regardless of position, whatever the work must join in patriotic emulation. That means increasing products.*

Furthermore, he used the Confucian intellectual to shape the Vietnamese follow his war strategies and policies as the motto ‘patriotic emulation’. This confucian intellectual as to be the idol of the patriot. The way to be patriotic idol is to do following the principle of ‘cần kiệm’ or ‘industry and thrift’, and ‘liêm chính’ or ‘honesty and righteousness’. He likewise shaped this intellectual as responsibilities of the Vietnamese patriots as shown in example 106:

Example 106: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 45	- Cán bộ Cadre	<b>chính quyền</b> administration	và and	<b>đoàn thể</b> Organizatio n
	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thi đua</b> emulate	<b>thực hành</b> practise	
	<b>cần kiệm</b> industrious and thrifty	<b>liêm chính,</b> honest and righteous	<b>thi hành</b> implement	<b>đúng</b> right
	<b>chính sách</b> policy	<b>của</b> of	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>và</b> and
	<b>Đoàn thể,</b> organization	<b>đi</b> go	<b>đúng</b> right	<b>đường lối</b> way
	<b>quần chúng.</b> the masses			

*- All cadres and civil servants must compete to practice in industrious, thrift, honesty and righteousness and to implement the policies of the Government and organization to go in the right way.*

### b) The ideology of Chinese revolution

In addition, President Ho used the doctrine of the modern Chinese intellectual which is the principle of Sun Yat Sen's Chinese revolution because it was the doctrine which has a successful evidence from the victory of the Chinese revolution in 1949. It was a harmonious writing style though he came from China because the shape of language structure which is short and easy to interpret and remember as shown in example 107. From the content of the principle, it shows the concept of nation and modernization through the concept of independent of the nation and the concept of the nation's people.

Example 107: Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism

¶ 24	<b>Thế là</b> so	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>thực hiện:</b> realize
¶ 25	<b>Dân tộc</b> nation	<b>độc lập,</b> independent	
¶ 26	<b>Dân quyền</b> civil rights	<b>tự do,</b> liberty	
¶ 27	<b>Dân sinh</b> People's material and moral welfare	<b>hạnh phúc,</b> happiness	

*To bring about*

*an independent nation  
with civil rights and liberty  
for the material and moral  
benefit of a happy people*

¶ 28	<b>Ba</b> three	<b>chủ nghĩa</b> doctrine	<b>mà</b> which	<b>nhà</b> (classifier of cách mạng)
------	--------------------	------------------------------	--------------------	---

<b>đại</b>	<b>cách mạng</b>	<b>Tôn Văn</b>	<b>đã</b>
great	revolutionary	Sun Yat Sen	ASP.: Past action: already

**nêu ra.**  
bring up

Three doctrines which the great revolutionary Sun Yat Sen developed.

### 12.2) The ideology of independence, unify, and freedom

The democratic ideology in terms of independence, freedom, and unify are used to construct the unanimous purpose that is the national liberation. From the letters he always identifies the main concept from his strong ideologies in terms of ‘độc lập’ or ‘independent’, ‘tự do’ or ‘freedom’ and ‘thống nhất’ or ‘unify’ as the greatest and final results from the resistance as shown in example 108. This ideologies are the concept of Western ideology especially the uprising time of the countries that were ruled by the colonialists. This concept have an origin from the concept of national construction.

Example 108: Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist

¶ 5	<b>Chúng ta</b>	<b>sẽ</b>	<b>làm</b>	<b>những</b>
	we	ASP.: future actions: will	make	(pluralizer)
	<b>đường sá,</b>	<b>cầu</b>	<b>cống</b>	<b>khéo</b>
	road(in general)	bridge	sewer	skill
	<b>hơn,</b>	<b>những</b>	<b>nhà cửa</b>	<b>tốt</b>
	more	(pluralizer)	house	good
	<b>hơn,</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>xứng đáng</b>	<b>một</b>
	more	and	worthy	one
	<b>dân tộc</b>	<b>tự do</b>	<b>độc lập</b>	<b>hơn.</b>
	nation	freedom	independent	more

*I respectfully promise you again that: after our resistance wins a victory, I will exert myself together with all of you to repair and rebuild again till we are finished. We will construct roads, bridges and sewers more skillful than before*

*and have better than before, more worthy of a freedom and independence of the nation.*

In example 109, Ho Chi Minh proposed the determination of the National resistance is for the unify and independence of their fatherland. It identifies that most important purpose of the resistance is the unify and independence of their fatherland.

Example 109: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 9	<b>Chỉ</b> only	<b>có</b> have	<b>một</b> one	<b>mục đích:</b> aim
	<b>Quyết</b> be determined	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist(against foreign aggression)	<b>để</b> for	<b>tranh thủ</b> win over/achieve
	<b>thống nhất</b> unify	<b>và</b> and	<b>độc lập</b> independent	<b>cho</b> for
	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland			

*Only one aim, be determined to resist, to achieve reunification and independence.*

In addition, it can conclude that the ideology of independence and unify are the main idea of his writing during this war. This ideology appeared in every rhetoric of Ho Chi Minh. It was maintain from that time until at present. It illustrates that this ideology which was constructed by president Ho still have an influence to the Vietnamese not only at the generation during thw war time but also this generation. Furthermore, because he frequently emphasized the important of this ideology, it identified that the most crucial purpose from this war of resistance are independence, freedom, and unity would reach to the stableness of their country and happiness. In addition, there are more example on these ideolodies in text 11 (20), text 4(27), text 5(18), text 7(17), text 8(18), etc.

### 12.3) The concept of Peace

Ho Chi Minh attempted to follow the way of peace since before the war time started. The concept of ‘peace’ is the way that he try to do instead of do the war. From example 110, it shows that he proposed the way of peace that the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic were constructing in which he might think it would be the lightening way of Vietnam.

Example 110: Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 16	Ở at	<b>Liên Xô,</b> The Union Soviet of Socialist Republic	<b>công cuộc</b> [great] undertaking	<b>xây dựng</b> construction
	<b>hoà bình,</b> peace	<b>xây dựng</b> construction	<b>xã hội</b> society	<b>mới</b> new
	<b>phát triển</b> develop	<b>vùn vụt.</b> swift like lightning		

*In the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic, the undertaking of construction of peace and social construction just developed to swift like the lightning.*

In example 111, it is also an example that reflects the concept of peace which is Ho Chi Minh attempted to find the way to solve the problem between Vietnam and France by negotiation. This way is the way of ‘peace’ that President Ho ask the French Government to do. But that ‘peace’ does not mean Vietnam has to enslave and to lose the country.

Example 111: Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 19	<b>Nhân dân</b> people	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam	<b>sẵn sàng</b> ready	<b>hoà bình</b> peace
------	---------------------------	----------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------------

<b>cộng tác</b>	<b>với</b>	<b>nhân dân</b>	<b>Pháp</b>
cooperate	with	people	French
<b>và</b>	<b>nhân dân</b>	<b>thế giới,</b>	<b>nhưng</b>
and	people	world	but
<b>nhân dân</b>	<b>Việt Nam</b>	<b>quyết</b>	<b>không</b>
people	Vietnam	determine	not
<b>chịu</b>	<b>làm</b>	<b>nô lệ,</b>	<b>quyết</b>
accept	do	slave	be determined
<b>không</b>	<b>chịu</b>	<b>mất nước.</b>	
not	accept	have one's country ruled by foreign aggressors	

*The Vietnamese are ready to cooperate the peace with the French and all the people in the world but we are not determined to accept to live in slavery and to lose our country.*

#### 12.4) The concept of 'anh hùng' or 'hero'

The concept of 'Anh hùng' or 'hero', by following the Great Vietnamese heroes from ancient time, is a word to make the Vietnamese are proud to eliminate their aggressors though they have to sacrifice their life as shown in example 112 and 113.

In example 112, President Ho accredited to his fighters that would go to the battlefield. He addressed all fighter as 'heroic fighters'. It might encourage the fighters be vigorous in themselves.

Example 112: Text 3 Address, sent to soldier of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 12	<b>Chiến sĩ</b>	<b>anh hùng</b>	<b>Việt Nam,</b>	<b>tiến lên!</b>
	fighter	heroic	Vietnam	advance

*Heroic fighters of Vietnam advance!*

In example 113, Ho Chi Minh use the psychology to build his fellows' feeling to participate in the resistance by using the concept of 'hero'. He encouraged his fellows as they are the child-group of heroes of their fatherland. That might make sense that they also have to follow their ancestors on the way of 'heroic'.

Example 113: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 8	- <b>Anh dũng</b> of great fortitude	<b>thay!</b> (final particle for emphasize)	<b>Lòng</b> heart	<b>quyết thắng</b> set one's mind on victory(success)
	<b>của</b> of	<b>anh em.</b> brothers	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter
	<b>là</b> be	<b>đàn con</b> child-group	<b>anh hùng</b> heroic	<b>của</b> of
	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland			

- *How heroic your determination to win! All fighters are child-group of heroes of our fatherland.*

### 12.5) The concept of 'đoàn kết' or 'unity'

The concept of 'đoàn kết' or 'unity or solidarity' is used as the main strategy for the war. President Ho constructed this ideology because he tried to guide that it is the way to win a victory. In addition, he attempted to use this strategy to support his other war strategy as the war of the Vietnamese people. Because Vietnam is disadvantageous than France by the materials and weapons, so President Ho attempted to use this concept to shape all Vietnamese to be one mind to struggle for country.

In example 114, it proposes the concept of 'đại' or 'great' and 'đoàn kết' or 'unity' as the 'great unity'. This ideology causes to the way of victory and the success of Vietnamese fellow-countrymen.

Example 114: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 7	<b>B- Vì</b>	<b>đồng bào</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>đại đoàn kết.</b>
	Because	fellow-countryman	our	great unity
	<i>B- Because our fellow-countrymen have great unity</i>			

In example 115, President Ho described the way to increase more powerful of the resistance which is the more unity of the fellows.

Example 115: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 14	<b>Nhân dân</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>đoàn kết</b>	<b>ngày càng</b>
	fellow-countryman	our	unite	more and more
	<b>chặt chẽ,</b>	<b>lực lượng</b>	<b>kháng chiến</b>	<b>ngày càng</b>
	close	power	resistance	more and more
	<b>đồi dào.</b>			
	strong			
	<i>Our fellow-countrymen unite more and more. We have more and more power of the resistance.</i>			

### 13) Vietnamese history

The history of Vietnam is partly written according to Ho Chi Minh's style. He wrote about Vietnamese history in terms of the people's origin and the history of great kings and well-known heroes. In addition, he used the King and the puppets who served the colonialists as an example of historical failings. The important battlefield, when Vietnam was successful after the ancient conflicts between Vietnamese and Chinese troops, is known in modern history as the glorious August Revolution.

In example 116, in the story of the origin of Vietnam, it explains Vietnam is the land of dragons and fairies, and the Vietnamese were born from these creatures. It creates the feeling of unity as everyone is also born from the same story.

Example 116: Text 3 Address, sent to soldier of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 8	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>quyết</b> determine	<b>đem</b> bring with one
	<b>xương máu</b> bone and blood	<b>để</b> for	<b>giữ vững</b> hold fast	<b>non nước</b> country

**Lạc Hồng!**

(Name of the race that is the combination between the dragon and goddess/fairy)

- All fighters are determined to sacrifice bone and blood for our Lac Hong land.

In example 117, the names of Vietnamese heroes in the folk tale as ‘Phu Dong Vương and the real history as the warrior ‘Tran Quoc Toan’ are used as models for the Vietnamese. President Ho attempted to encourage the Vietnamese to fight as they are the heroes’ offspring. It is a psychological tactic to make the Vietnamese proud of their ancestry and themselves, as they are blood-related to the heroes. This would inspire them in battle.

Example 117: Text 5 Appeal, on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 23	<b>Thật</b> real	<b>xứng đáng</b> worthy	<b>là</b> be	<b>con cháu</b> offspring
------	---------------------	----------------------------	-----------------	------------------------------

**Phù Đổng Vương**  
Phu Dong Vương

**và**  
and

**Trần Quốc Toản.**  
Tran Quoc Toan

*They are truly worthy offspring/descendants of Phù Đổng Vương [a legendary child warrior hero] and Trần Quốc Toản [a thirteenth-century warrior].*

In example 118, President Ho used an example of the failure of King Gia Long, who welcomed the Westerners to the country, and King Tu Duc, who ceded Vietnam. Because these two kings allowed aggression by the West, it led to the subsequent sacrifice of many Vietnamese countrymen.

Example 118: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 12	<b>1. Sau</b>	<b>ngày</b>	<b>vua</b>	<b>Gia Long</b>
	after	day	king	Gia Long
	<b>Rước</b>	<b>Tây</b>	<b>vào</b>	<b>nước,</b>
	welcome	western	into	country
	<b>và</b>	<b>vua</b>	<b>Tự Đức</b>	<b>nhượng</b>
	and	king	Tu Duc	cede
	<b>nước</b>	<b>cho</b>	<b>Tây,</b>	<b>biết bao</b>
	country	for	western	how many
	<b>liệt sĩ</b>	militant having laid down his life for the revolution (for the country)		
	<b>anh hùng</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>phấn đấu</b>	<b>hy sinh</b>
	hero	ASP.: past	strive	sacrifice
		actions: already		
	<b>vì</b>	<b>Tổ quốc.</b>		
	because	Fatherland		

*1. After the day of King Gia Long welcomed the Western powers into our country and King Tu Duc ceded our country to the West, so many heroes must strive for our fatherland.*

In example 119, Ho Chi Minh described his version of Vietnamese history and explained their racial origin as being descended from dragons and fairies. Moreover, he used several well-known heroes in Vietnamese history, consisting of Tran Hung Dao, a famous general who defeated a Mongol invasion in the late thirteenth century, Le Thai To, a founder of the Le dynasty in the fifteenth century, and Nguyen Quang Trung, who was the great emperor of Vietnam. These heroes are exemplars of

Vietnamese who fought for their country, and so the implication is that this resistance would enjoy similar success, after the former experience of their heroes.

Example 119: Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance

¶ 13	<b>Cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us
	<b>đã</b> ASP: Past action: already	<b>tập trung</b> Concentrate	<b>tất cả</b> all	<b>cái</b> (classifier of tinh thần)
	<b>tinh thần</b> mind/spirit	<b>quật cường</b> Indomitable	<b>yêu nước</b> patriotic	<b>của</b> of
	<b>giống nòi</b> race	<b>Hồng Lạc</b> Hong Lac	<b>lưu truyền</b> hand down	<b>từ</b> from
	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>ngàn</b> thousand	<b>năm.</b> year	<b>Nó</b> it
	<b>tập trung</b> concentrate	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>kinh nghiệm</b> experience	<b>chiến đấu</b> fight
	<b>của</b> of	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>vị</b> (only one person)	<b>dân tộc</b> nation
	<b>anh hùng</b> heroic	<b>Trần Hưng Đạo, Lê Thái Tổ, Nguyễn Quang Trung</b> Tran Hung Dao    Le Thai To    Nguyen Quang Trung		
	<b>để</b> for	<b>lại.</b> in return		

- Our resistance was focused using the indomitable and patriotic spirit of Hong Lac race which has been handed down for thousands of year. It concentrated the experience fought like heroes such as Tran Hung Dao, Le Thai To, Nguyen Quang Trung for their fight.

In example 120, President Ho referred to the troops of the August Revolution in 1945, which was a victory for Vietnam. The aftermath of the August Revolution led to the liberation of Vietnam after the second World War (1939-1945) from both the Japanese and French colonialists. Used in terms of the August Revolution troops, it suggested the effectiveness of the Vietnamese National Army that was fighting all over the country.

Example 120: Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 22	<b>Ba</b> three <b>kỷ niệm</b> anniversary <b>giải phóng</b> liberation <b>quân đội</b> army	<b>hôm</b> day <b>ngày</b> day <b>của</b> of <b>đã</b> ASP: Past action: already	<b>nữa,</b> more <b>thành lập</b> establish <b>ta,</b> us <b>xung phong</b> come forward as a volunteer	<b>chúng ta</b> we <b>đội quân</b> army <b>một</b> one <b>trong</b> in <b>và</b> and <b>ngày</b> at present
	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of Cách mạng Tháng Tám)	<b>Cách mạng</b> <b>Tháng Tám</b> The August Revolution		
	<b>đã</b> ASP: Past action: already <b>anh dũng</b> of great fortitude	<b>trở nên</b> become  <b>giết</b> kill	<b>Vệ quốc quân</b> Vietnamese National Army <b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>đang</b> be in the process of <b>khắp</b> all over
	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>mặt trận</b> front	<b>từ</b> from	<b>Nam</b> south

**đến**                      **Bắc.**  
to                              north

*Three days later, we will have an anniversary of the establishment of the Liberation army. An army in the August Revolution which become to be the Vietnamese National Army at present are doing the great fortitude to kill aggressors all over the fronts from the south to the north.*

In example 121, the Vietnamese history during the time was that Vietnam was ruled by Chinese imperialism for 1,000 years. Ho Chi Minh chose to describe three period of the Vietnamese resistance: in the Tran dynasty that resisted the Nguyen army, the Le dynasty that resisted the Ming dynasty, and the current resistance that was the Vietnamese resistance against French rule.

Example 121: Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950

¶ 11	<b>Trong</b>	<b>1.000</b>	<b>năm</b>	<b>lịch sử</b>
	in	1,000	year	history
	<b>của</b>	<b>nước</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>gần</b>
	of	country	our	nearly
	<b>đây</b>	<b>có</b>	<b>ba</b>	<b>cuộc</b>
	now	have	three	(classifier of <i>kháng chiến</i> )
	<b>trường kỳ</b>	<b>kháng chiến:</b>		
	protracted	resistance		

*A thousand years until now, our history has had three times of the protracted resistance.*

¶ 12	<b>- Đòì</b>	<b>Trần</b>	<b>chống</b>	<b>quân</b>
	dynasty	Tran	anti	army

**Nguyễn,**

Nguyen

*- Tran dynasty was against the Mongolian army,*

(13)	<b>- Đòì</b>	<b>Lê</b>	<b>chống</b>	<b>quân</b>
	dynasty	Le	anti	army

**Minh,**

Minh

*- Le dynasty was against the Ming army,*

#### 14) Ho Chi Minh mottos

Ho Chi Minh used mottos in all his letters. His mottos are about the concept of unity, national independence, the strategy of protracted war and the establishment of the nation. This characteristic always occurs in the final sections of the letters as the praise mottos for the Vietnamese fellow-countrymen and country.

In example 122, this is one pattern of President Ho's mottos that focuses on the achievement of the unity and independence of the nation. The other examples of this motto are in text 5 (36), text 16 (55), etc.

Example 122: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country

(13)	<b>Thống nhất</b>	<b>độc lập</b>	<b>nhất định</b>	<b>thành công.</b>
	Unify	independent	absolutely certain	succeed

*Our unify and independence are certain to be won.*

In example 123, it shows the other pattern of Ho Chi Minh's motto which also focuses on the independence and unity of Vietnam. It is the motto of praise to describe the utter permanence of their independence and unity by identifying the word 'muôn năm' or 'long live'. There are more examples in text 15 (39).

Example 123: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 55	<b>Việt Nam</b>	<b>độc lập</b>	<b>Và</b>	<b>thống nhất</b>
	Vietnam	independent	and	unify
	<b>muôn năm !</b>			
	long live			
	<i>Long live independence and unify of Vietnam.</i>			

In example 124, it shows the motto of the war strategy which Ho Chi Minh declared as the protracted war of resistance that certainly led to the victory of Vietnam. There are more examples that use this motto in text 5 (35), text 9 (31), text 15 (38), and text 16 (54).

Example 124: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 35	<b>Trường kỳ</b>	<b>kháng chiến</b>	<b>nhất định</b>	<b>thắng lợi !</b>
	protracted	resistance	absolutely certain	win a victory
	<i>A long war of resistance is certain to win a victory!</i>			

In example 125, it proposes the determination of two things. They consist of the victory of the resistance and the success of the establishment of the nation. There are more examples in text 7 (28), text 18 (14), (15), etc.

Example 125: Text 6 Appeal for patriotic emulation

¶ 6	<b>Kháng chiến</b>	<b>nhất định</b>	<b>thắng lợi,</b>
	resistance	absolutely certain	win a victory
	<i>the resistance is certain to win victory,</i>		

¶ 7	<b>Kiến quốc</b>	<b>nhất định</b>	<b>thành công.</b>
	establish a state	absolutely certain	succeed
	<i>We will definitely be successful in establishing our nation.</i>		

The use of various kinds of words are a part of Ho Chi Minh's language style. These characteristics of word usage factor into the power of his rhetoric. From the characteristics of the word usage, they demonstrate the effect that Ho Chi Minh intended to produce in each letter. More will be shown about Ho Chi Minh's power of language by the interpretation of his addressees.

### **b) Grammar**

The grammatical analysis in this study is based on the analysis of types of sentences and cohesiveness which occur in Ho Chi Minh's letters. In his letters, there are many types of sentences. They are distinguished by their use of declaratives, imperative sentences, question sentences and cohesion. The specific type of the use of sentence is the juxtaposed sentence and the coordinative sentence. The juxtaposed sentences occur in huge amounts in his writing style as they are long sentences. In addition, the other types of structures, passive structures, imperative structures and question structures occur in small amounts. The declarative sentences are separated into active sentences and passive sentences which refer from Srichampa: 2002.

#### **1) Active structure**

Active structure occur most frequently in President Ho's rhetoric. In this study, the main types of the active structure consist of simple sentences, compound sentences and complex sentences.

##### **a) Simple sentence**

Simple sentences consist of a main clause which has a subject and a verb as the basic elements. It might have a the complement of a subject or object in this type of

sentence. The simple sentence pattern in this study can be ordered as ‘Subject + Verb + Complement’ and ‘Subject + Verb + Object’ as shown in example 126 – 129.

In example 126, it is the simple sentence which consists of subject as ‘các chiến sĩ’ or ‘fighters’ + verb as ‘là’ or ‘to be’ + complement as noun phrase ‘đàn con anh hùng của tổ quốc’ or ‘children of the heroes of our fatherland’. The verb ‘là’ is a correlation between two noun phrases.

Example 126: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 8	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>là</b> be	
		Subject	Verb	
	<b>đàn con</b> child-group	<b>anh hùng</b> heroic	<b>của</b> of	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland
		Complement		
	<i>Fighters are children of heros of our fatherland.</i>			

In example 127, it is the simple sentence that consists of one main clause which has a structure as Subject + Verb + Object.

Example 127: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 36	<b>Chúng ta</b> we	<b>hoan nghênh</b> welcome	<b>chủ trương</b> policy	<b>ấy.</b> that
	Subject	Verb	Object	
	<i>We welcome that policies.</i>			

In example 128, it is also a simple sentence which has the same pattern with example 127. It consists of subject + verb + object. In this example, it has the

modifiers which modify the verb phrase and the noun phrase in the object part. In addition, it has the tense marker as ‘sẽ’ or the future tense marker ‘will’ to identify the future action.

Example 128: Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist

¶ 4	<b>Chúng</b> they	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future action: will	<b>cướp hết</b> rob all	<b>ruộng nương</b> fields and garden	<b>của cải</b> wealth	<b>ta.</b> us
	Subject	Verb		Object		
<i>They will rob us of all our fields, gardens and wealth.</i>						

In example 129, the pattern of simple sentence of this example is subject + verb + object. It has a tense maker as ‘đang’ or ‘be in the process of’ to be the possessive tense marker.

Example 129: Text 12 Appeal for the Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son campaign

¶15	<b>Thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>đang</b> (be in the process of)	<b>chờ</b> wait	<b>các chú.</b> (pluralizer) you
	Subject	Verb		Object
<i>The victory is waiting for you.</i>				

### b) Compound sentence

A compound sentence is a sentence that consists of two juxtaposed clauses or conjoined sentences at least. Compound sentence are the main types of sentence which occur in Ho Chi Minh’s language, especially the juxtaposed sentences and the coordinative sentences by using ‘càng...càng’ or ‘the more...the more...’ to conjoin between two clauses. These are the specific sentences that President Ho uses.

### - Juxtaposed sentence

The juxtaposed sentence is a type of sentence which regularly occurs in Vietnamese sentences. From President Ho's letters, there are many juxtaposed sentences. It can be analyzed that this is the specific writing style of Ho Chi Minh. He wrote many clauses without using conjunctions. He used commas (,) to conjoin each clause to construct a sentence. Therefore his sentences are particularly long sentences.

In example 130, it consists of three clauses by ellipsis subject of the second and the third clause. This sentence uses the comma to link in each clause.

Example 130: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 29	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighters	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thi đua</b> Compete
	<b>diệt</b> wipe out	<b>nhiều</b> Many	<b>giặc,</b> aggressor	
	<b>cướp</b> rob	<b>nhiều</b> many	<b>súng,</b> gun	
	<b>lập</b> establish	<b>nhiều</b> many	<b>công.</b> labour	

*Fighters must challenge to wipe out aggressors, to rob many guns, and to establish many labours.*

Example 131 consists of three clauses. Each clause is separated by using comma (,). In the second clause, it has a subject ellipsis which is the same subject with the first clause as 'chúng ta' or 'we'.

Example 131: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 8	<b>Chúng ta</b>	<b>biết</b>	<b>rằng</b>	<b>kháng chiến</b>
	We	know	that	resistance
	<b>Ắt</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>gay go,</b>	<b>phải</b>
	surely	must	hard	must
	<b>trường kỳ,</b>	<b>nhưng</b>	<b>chắc chắn</b>	<b>sẽ</b>
	protracted	but	definitely	ASP.: future actions: will
	<b>thắng lợi.</b>			
	succeed			
	<i>We know that our resistance must be hard and long but it will be certain to succeed.</i>			

**- Coordinative sentence**

There are many types of coordinative sentences in Vietnamese language. President Ho used this types of sentence in large numbers, especially the various types of conjunction patterns, for example ‘vừa...vừa’ or ‘both...and’, ‘chẳng những...mà’ or ‘not only...but also’, etc. The most used conjunction in Ho Chi Minh’s language use in his letters is the conjunction ‘càng...càng’ or ‘the more...the more...’

In example 132, the conjunction ‘vừa...vừa’ or ‘both...and’ is used as the linkage between two events. It links two events to resist the aggressors and to found a state together even if these events have the same subject as ‘chúng ta’ or ‘we’.

Example 132: Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism

¶ 16	<b>Trong</b>	<b>cuộc</b>	<b>thi đua</b>	<b>ái quốc,</b>
	in	(classifier of thi đua ái quốc)	emulation	patriotic
	<b>chúng ta:</b>			
	we			

¶ 17	<b>Vừa</b> both...and	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resist(against foreign aggression)
------	--------------------------	---

¶ 18	<b>Vừa</b> both...and	<b>kiến quốc.</b> found a state
------	--------------------------	------------------------------------

*To be patriotic, we have only to resist and establish our state.*

In example 133, the conjunction ‘chẳng những...mà...’ or ‘not only...but also...’ is used with the negative situations. In this example, it consists of two negative meaning of clauses. This conjunction is the linkage between two sentence to tell the negative things that the puppet government were done from the Vietnamese and the people all over the world.

Example 133: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 7	<b>Lũ</b> group	<b>bù nhìn</b> puppet	<b>phản quốc,</b> betray one’s country
	<b>chẳng những</b> not only	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman
	<b>phỉ nhổ,</b> spit at	<b>mà</b> but also	<b>ta</b> our
	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>chê cười.</b> speak scornfully of and sneer at	<b>lại</b> also
			<b>ta</b> our <b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)

*The puppet which betrayed our country was spitted by our fellow-countrymen and sneered from all the people over the world.*

In example 134, it is the coordinative sentence which uses the conjunction ‘càng...càng...’ or ‘the more...the more...’ as the linkage of each clause. There are three clauses in this sentence which has the meaning in good direction. This conjunction is linked with the parallel meaning supports the meaning in each clause.

Example 134: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 6	<b>Càng</b> more	<b>đánh</b> fight	
	<b>càng</b> more	<b>mạnh,</b> strong	
	<b>kinh nghiệm</b> experience	<b>càng</b> more	<b>nhều.</b> many

*The more we fight, be stronger, more experience we are.*

In example 135, it is an example of the largest style of the coordinative sentence. The conjunction ‘ngày càng...càng...’ or ‘the more...the more...’ is used as the linkage of the supportive meaning in the positive meaning for the Vietnamese side. From the sentence, it shows the supportive meaning that the more unified of the Vietnamese will give more enthusiastic and more determined to resist in the war. It paragraph (10), the supportive meaning of each clause shows that the fighters have more experience, training and valour. It is a positive meaning in each clause and a parallel meaning.

Example 135: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 9	<b>Vì vậy,</b> Therefore	<b>mặc dầu</b> although	<b>gian nan</b> miserably hard	<b>cực khổ,</b> hard and miserable
	<b>nhân dân</b> People	<b>ta</b> our	<b>ngày càng</b> more with everyday passing day	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite, solidarity

<b>Càng</b> More	<b>hăng hái,</b> enthusiastic	<b>càng</b> more	<b>kiên quyết</b> (be)determined
<b>kháng chiến</b> to resist (against foreign aggression)	<b>cho</b> to	<b>đến</b> reach	<b>thắng lợi</b> win a victory

**cuối cùng.**

final

*For that reason, even though there are many difficulties, our people are more and more united, more and more enthusiastic, and more and more determined to resist until the final victory.*

¶ 10

<b>Chiến sĩ</b> Fighters	<b>ta</b> our	<b>càng</b> more	<b>nhều</b> many
<b>kinh nghiệm,</b> experience	<b>càng</b> more	<b>thêm</b> add	<b> rèn luyện,</b> train
<b>càng</b> More	<b>thêm</b> add	<b> dũng cảm,</b> valiant	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)
<b>Trận</b> Battle	<b>oanh liệt</b> glorious	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Mỹ Tho,</b> My Tho
<b>Ở</b> At	<b>đèo</b> Mountain pass	<b>Hải Vân,</b> Hai Van	<b>ở</b> at
<b>Sông</b> River	<b>Lô,</b> Lo	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Thất Khê,</b> That Khe
<b>v.v.,</b> (abbr. vân vân) and so on	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions:already	<b>làm</b> make	<b>địch</b> enemy
<b>kinh hồn</b> be frightened out of one's wits	<b>mất vía.</b> out of one's wits		

*Our fighters have more experience, training, and valour. The glorious battles at My Tho, Hai Van mountain pass, Lo river, That Khe, and so on frightened the enemy out of their wits.*

### c) Complex sentence

Complex sentence consist of one main clause and subordinate clause. The complex sentences in Vietnamese have to have the conjunction which is the linkage between the main clause and the subordinate clause. In Ho Chi Minh's letters, there are the uses of complex sentences by using many kinds of conjunctions.

#### - Conditional sentence

In conditional sentences, it proposes the correlation clauses that the subordinate clause is a result from the main clause.

In example 136, it is the conditional sentence that uses the conjunction 'nếu...thì...' and 'nếu...mà...' or 'if...(then)...' to describe the contrastive sentence between the main clause and the subordinate clause. From this sentence it is the juxtaposed sentences which consist of two sets of conditional sentences. It uses two of contrastive conjunctions 'nếu...thì...' and 'nếu...mà...' to link each main clause and subordinate clause. The main clause is 'we do not destroy roads and sewers, block up rivers, canals.' and 'we do not destroy the solid strong houses' lead to the contrastive result in sub-clauses 'the French will use them', the second subordinate clause 'the French will put to use ships and tanks to fight us.', and the third subordinate clause 'they will undoubtedly burn, destroy and rob us of everything.'.

Example 136: Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist

¶ 6	<b>Nếu</b> If	<b>ta</b> we	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>phá</b> destroy
-----	------------------	-----------------	----------------------	-----------------------

<b>đường</b> road	<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>cống,</b> sewer	<b>lấp</b> stop(up)
<b>sông</b> river	<b>lấp</b> stop(up)	<b>ngòi,</b> canal	
<b>nếu</b> if	<b>ta</b> we	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>phá</b> destroy
<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nhà cửa</b> house	<b>kiên cố</b> solid	<b>mà</b> that
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>có thể</b> be able	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>làm</b> use as
<b>nơi</b> place	<b>căn cứ,</b> basis	<b>thì</b> then	<b>Pháp</b> French
<b>sẽ</b> will	<b>đem</b> put to use	<b>tàu thủy</b> ship	<b>xe tăng</b> tank
<b>đến</b> arrive	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>ta,</b> us	<b>và</b> and
<b>chúng</b> they	<b>sẽ</b> will	<b>đốt phá</b> burn and destroy	<b>cướp bóc</b> rob(in general)

**sạch trơn.**

clean finished

*If we do not destroy roads and sewers, block up rivers, canals, and if we do not destroy the solid strong houses then the French will use them and the French will put to use ships and tanks to fight us. And they will undoubtedly burn, destroy and rob us of everything.*

### - Concessive sentence

The concessive sentence is one type of complex sentence. It has conjunctions which uses as the linkage of main clause and subordinate clause. In example 137, the conjunction ‘tuy...nhưng...’ or ‘although...but...’ is used to link the main clause which

is the clause after ‘nhưng’ or ‘but’ and the subordinate clause which is the clause after ‘tuy’ or ‘although’. It follows the pattern of Vietnamese grammar.

Example 137: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 12	<b>Tuy</b> Although	<b>khi giới</b> weapons	<b>ta</b> our	<b>còn</b> still
	<b>kém,</b> weak	<b>kinh nghiệm</b> experience	<b>ta</b> our	<b>còn</b> still
	<b>ít,</b> Little	<b>nhưng</b> but	<b>lòng</b> heart	<b>kiên quyết,</b> [be]firm
	<b>chí</b> will	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice	<b>của</b> of	<b>tướng sĩ</b> officers
	<b>ta</b> our	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past action:already	<b>lập</b> establish /achieve	<b>những</b> some
	<b>chiến công</b> feat of arms	<b>oanh liệt,</b> glorious	<b>vẻ vang</b> honourable	<b>có thể</b> be able to
	<b>nói</b> say	<b>là</b> be		
	<b>kinh</b> frighten	<b>trời</b> sky	<b>động đất.</b> earthquake	

*(proverb) the great thing that can make the sky frightened and the land shake*

*Although, our weapons are weak and our experience is little the strong heart and the will of our officers who have made sacrifice will prove to be a glorious and honourable feat of arms that compares with “earthshaking” feat.*

### - Temporal sentence

The complex sentence in Vietnamese structure can be a temporal sentence. It is a type of sentence to describe about the time. Following the pattern, the first clause is the main clause and the second clause is the subordinate clause. The conjunction uses in the temporal sentence is ‘khi...(thì)...’ or ‘when...(then)...’.

In example 138, it is two temporal sentences that are linked by comma (,). This is emphasized Ho Chi Minh’s writing style. He used the reduplicate structure to compare the opposite meaning, as shown in this example. The main clauses from these sentences are ‘(someone) win’ and ‘(someone) step backward’ and the subordinate clauses are ‘not be vainglorious’ and ‘not be discouraged’. These two sentences use elliptical conjunction ‘thì’ or ‘then’ to use only ‘khi’ to identify the time.

Example 138: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese national Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 6	<b>Khi</b> when	<b>Thắng</b> Win	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>kiêu,</b> vainglorious
	<b>khi</b> when	<b>Lui</b> step backwards	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>nản!</b> be discouraged

*When we win, we will not be vainglorious. When we retreat, we will not be discouraged.*

### - Purposive sentence

The purposive sentence is the complex sentence that has a conjunction as ‘để...(thì)...’ or ‘for...(then)’ to describe the purpose of the main clause. The subordinate clause is the clause after the conjunction ‘để’. It can use the elliptical conjunction ‘thì’ as shown in example 139. The subordinate clauses in an example are the purpose of the main clause, The main clause describes ‘the army and people must follow the idol of the great fortitude of the Liberation army and strive to compete to

*prepare...'. Meanwhile the subordinate clauses are described on various purposes on the main clause. The subordinate clauses consist of 'for the quick change into the general counter-offensive', 'for sweep aggressors out and set free our homeland', 'for advance untill the final victory', and 'to fight untill gain the unity and independence of our homeland.'*

Example 139: Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 23	<b>Quân</b> army	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our
	<b>phải</b> must	<b>noi</b> follow	<b>gương</b> model	<b>anh dũng</b> of great fortitude
	<b>của</b> of	<b>Quân</b> army	<b>giải phóng,</b> liberation	<b>phải</b> must
	<b>ra sức</b> strive	<b>thi đua</b> emulate	<b>chuẩn bị</b> prepare	<b>mau</b> quick
	<b>đầy đủ</b> enough	<b>để</b> for	<b>mau</b> quick	<b>chuyển</b> change
	<b>sang</b> into	<b>tổng phản công,</b> general counter-offensive	<b>để</b> for	<b>quét</b> sweep
	<b>sạch</b> cleanly	<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>ra</b> out	<b>khỏi</b> set free
	<b>đất nước,</b> homeland	<b>để</b> for	<b>tiên</b> advance	<b>đến</b> to
	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>cuối cùng,</b> final	<b>để</b> for	<b>tranh</b> fight for
	<b>lấy</b> receive	<b>thống nhất</b> unite	<b>và</b> and	<b>độc lập</b> independent

**thật sự**                      **cho**                      **Tổ quốc.**  
 real                              for                              fatherland

*Our army and people must follow the idol of the great fortitude of the Liberation army and strive to compete to prepare for the quick change into the general counter-offensive to sweep aggressors out and set free our homeland , to advance untill the final victory, and to fight untill gain the unity and independence of our homeland.*

## 2) Passive constructions

The passive sentence is a type of complex sentence. In Ho Chi Minh’s letters the passive sentences structures are less used. The passive sentences in this study are constructed to describe the Vietnamese who are acted on by the French colonialists that is the negative meaning for the Vietnamese, and describe the French colonialists that are acted on by the Vietnamese. It is the positive meaning to the Vietnamese as it shows the success of their resistance. The passive sentences are identified by using the word ‘bị’. The subordinate clause which proposes object occurs after the word ‘bị’. It is shown as a negative connotation as shown in example 140. This example describes the passive meaning that the puppet as the passive person that was spit upon and sneered at. It shows the negative meaning to the French colonialists’ side. This sentence might give a positive meaning to the Vietnamese side as their enemies are disadvantageous.

Example 140: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 7	<b>Lũ</b> group	<b>bù nhìn</b> puppet	<b>phản quốc,</b> betray one’s country	<b>chẳng những</b> not at all
	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ta</b> our	<b>phỉ nhổ,</b> spit at

<b>mà</b>	<b>lại</b>	<b>bị</b>	<b>thế giới</b>
that	also	(passive/-ed)	world

**chê cười.**

speak scornfully of and sneer at

*The puppet which betrayed our country was spitted by our fellow-countrymen and sneered from all the people over the world.*

In example 141, it shows the negative meaning to the Vietnamese side as they are passive by their enemy's side. From an example, the main clause occurs after the word 'bị' and the subordinate clause occurs before 'bị'.

Example 141: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 4	<b>Sau</b>	<b>85</b>	<b>năm</b>	<b>nước</b>
	after	85	year	country
	<b>ta</b>	<b>bị</b>	<b>chiếm,</b>	...
	our	(passive/-ed)	occupy	

*After 85 years under the French occupation of our country,...*

### 3. Imperative sentence

The imperative sentence is one of the sentence patterns that Ho Chi Minh used in his letters. The imperative sentence is used to order, command, or arouse to addressee to follow the things. In Ho Chi Minh's letters, there are a few numbers of imperative sentences. They can distinguish into three structures of imperative sentences that consist of 'verb + !', 'subject + (modality) + (adjective) + verb + !', and 'verb + object + !'.

**- Subject + (Modality) + (Adjective) + Verb + !**

Following the pattern, it seems like a declarative sentence. But following the meaning, this pattern can interpret as the imperative meaning although its pattern is declarative pattern.

In example 142, following the pattern, it looks like the declarative sentence as 'subject + (modality) + verb'. But from the meaning the verb 'đứng lên' or 'rise up', it has a meaning of command. It especially uses with the modality 'phải' or 'must' that gives more meaning implies to order to so. Even though, it uses the declarative pattern but it has the imperative meaning.

Example 142: Text 1 Appeal for National Resistance

¶ 5	<b>Chúng ta</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>đứng lên!</b>
	we	must	rise up
	subject	modality	verb
<i>We have to rise up !</i>			

In example 143, it also uses the declarative pattern. But it has the imperative meaning because the use of word 'tiến lên' or 'advance' and the modality 'phải' give a stronger commanding tone.

Example 143: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 32	<b>Chúng ta</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>mạnh mẽ</b>	<b>tiến lên !</b>
	we	must	strong	advance
	subject	modality	adjective	verb
<i>We must advance strongly!</i>				

In example 144, it is the same case as example 142, 143. The word ‘tiến lên’ or ‘advance’ implies meaning to do. It has more strong supportive meaning especially it goes with the emphatic particle ‘cứ’.

Example 144: Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defense forces and militia in the whole country

¶ 9	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>cứ</b> (emphasize particle)	<b>tiến lên!</b> advance
	Subject		(particle)	verb
<i>Fighters advance!</i>				

In example 145, it also uses the declarative pattern but its meaning can also be interpreted as the imperative meaning. This sentence has more strong meaning it goes with adverb ‘mạnh dạn’ or ‘boldly’ and the emphatic particle ‘cứ’.

Example 145: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 34	<b>Chúng ta</b> we	<b>cứ</b> (emphatic, exhortative particle)	<b>mạnh dạn</b> boldly	<b>tiến lên !</b> advance
	subject	particle	adverb	verb
<i>Let us boldly advance!</i>				

- **Verb + Object + !**

This pattern is the other pattern of the imperative sentences. In example 146, it orders to the addressees to do as ‘đánh tan’ or ‘defeat’ the French reactionary colonialists. The French reactionary colonialists are the object element of this sentence as the passive thing.

Example 146: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 33	<b>Đánh tan</b> defeat(an army)	<b>thực dân</b> colonize	<b>phản động</b> reactionary	<b>Pháp !</b> French
	verb	object		
<i>Defeat the French reactionary colonialists!</i>				

**- Verb + (Verb phrase) + !**

This is the last pattern of imperative sentences that occur in Ho Chi Minh's letters. It starts the pattern with a verb. It might have the modifier of the main verb by verb phrase or adverb to give a stronger meaning for each sentence.

In example 147, the main verb of the sentence is 'đánh' or 'fight'. It orders to addressees to do this action. An example shows more modifiers by using verb phrases to modify main verbs more about how to do that action.

Example 147: Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist

¶ 6	<b>Đánh</b> fight	<b>thì</b> then	<b>phải</b> must	<b>phá hoại.</b> subotage
	verb	conjunction	modality	verb
Main verb		Verb phrase		
<i>Fight! We have to destroy.</i>				

In example 148, it is the imperative sentence that use only one word as 'tiến lên' or 'advance' by using the subject ellipsis.

## Example 148: Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism

¶ 31	<b>Tiến lên !</b>
	verb
	advance

In example 149, it is the imperative that has the pattern starting with verbs. It is modified more strong meaning by using the adverb ‘mạnh’.

## Example 149: Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 24	<b>Tiến</b>	<b>mạnh</b>	<b>lên!</b>
	advance	strong	raise
	verb	Adverb	verb
<i>Strongly advance!</i>			

## 4) Question sentence

The grammatical questions were used in -wh- question. The answers of these questions are used as response each question itself. The question is also used to ask to the addressees to answer themselves. There are two patterns of the question sentence. They consist of the pattern ‘-wh- word + subject + verb + (object)’ and the pattern ‘subject + verb + wh-word’.

**- Wh- word (Vietnamese)+ Subject + Verb + (Object)**

In example 150, it starts with ‘wh-word’ as ‘vì sao’ or ‘why’. The following elements are subject and verb as shown below. This question want to ask for the reason on doing the resistance.

Example 150: Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist

¶ 2	<b>Vì sao</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>kháng chiến?</b>
	why	we	must	resist (against foreign aggression)
	-wh-question	subject	verb(modality)	verb
<i>Why do we have to resist?</i>				

In example 151, Ho Chi Minh use an ellipsis for the subject elements. His writing style from this sentence starts from the subject of the sentence following by the wh-word ‘sao’ or ‘why’ + verb of the question. The ellipsis of subject in this question is ‘Mỹ’ or ‘America’. He want to ask the reason for the failure of America.

Example 151: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 31	<b>Mỹ</b>	<b>giỏi,</b>	<b>sao</b>	<b>mà</b>
	America	good	why	that
	<b>bị</b>	<b>đuổi</b>	<b>ra</b>	<b>khỏi</b>
	(passive/-ed)	expel	go out	escape
	<b>Trung Quốc?</b>			
	China			

*The United States of America is excellent. But why they were expelled from China?*

<b>Sao</b>	<b>đang</b>	<b>thất bại</b>	<b>ở</b>
why	be in the process of	lose	at

**Triều Tiên ?**

North Korea

*Why they are losing at the North Korea?*

### - Subject + Verb + Wh-word

In example 152, Ho Chi Minh firstly used wh-word to ask in general. He identifies more to his addressees that he wants to ask by using reduplication of ‘wh-word’. He asks to his fighters and units to pledge to fight for a victory so that he would give them awards. This is his style of language use.

Example 152: Text 14 Telegram, sent to fighters at Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son battlefield

¶ 4	Nào, which	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>nào</b> which	<b>và</b> and
		subject	-wh-question	
		<b>đơn vị</b> unit	<b>nào</b> which	<b>hứa</b> promise
		subject	-wh-question	
	<b>với</b> with	<b>Bác</b> (me)uncle	<b>quyết</b> determine	<b>giật</b> win
	<b>cho</b> for	<b>được</b> receive	<b>giải thưởng</b> award	<b>anh hùng</b> hero
	<b>Cao –</b> Cao Bang	<b>Bắc –</b> Bac Can	<b>Lạng</b> Lang Son	<b>và</b> and
	<b>đơn vị</b> unit	<b>kiểu mẫu?</b> model		

*Which fighters and units promise me to win to receive the award as a the hero of Cao Bang, Bac Can, Lang Son and the heroic model unit?*

In example 153, it is the question sentence to ask the reason. From the sentence it is used as the pattern ‘subject + verb (‘là’ or ‘tobe’) + wh-word’.

Example 153: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 3	<b>Đó</b>	<b>là</b>	<b>vì sao?</b>
	that	be	Why
	Subject	Verb	Wh-question
<i>Why?</i>			

In example 154, it asks the result of Vietnamese’s enemies. The pattern is used as ‘subject + tense marker (past action) + verb + object + wh-word’

Example 154: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 4	<b>chúng</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>được</b>	<b>kết quả</b>	<b>gì?</b>
	they (pej.)	ASP.: past actions: already	get	result	what
	subject	tense marker	verb	object	-wh
<i>... what results have they achieved?</i>					

In example 155, it uses the ellipsis of verb ‘to be’. In Vietnamese grammar, when it uses wh-word, it might not use verb as in an example. The pattern of this sentence is ‘subject (noun phrase) + wh-word’.

Example 155: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the national resistance

¶ 3	<b>Tình hình</b>	<b>trong</b>	<b>Hai</b>	<b>năm</b>	<b>đó</b>	<b>thế nào ?</b>
	situation	in	Two	year	that	how
	subject					Wh-word
<i>How was the situation in the early two year?</i>						

In example 156, it is the same as example 155. It uses the ellipsis of verbs. The pattern of the sentence is ‘subject + wh-word’. This example asks the situation of the Vietnam.

Example 156: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 21	<b>Tình hình</b> situation	<b>trong</b> in	<b>nước</b> country	<b>thế nào ?</b> how
subject				Wh-word
<i>How about the situation in our country?</i>				

In example 157, it has the same pattern with example 156. But this example is a complete structure that has all elements. The structure is ‘subject + modality + verb + wh-word’. It asks the way that the Vietnamese have to do this action.

Example 157: Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 40	<b>Để</b> for	<b>đi</b> go	<b>đến</b> to	<b>hoàn toàn</b> complete
	<b>thắng lợi,</b> victory	<b>từ</b> from	<b>nay</b> at present	
	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>làm</b> do	<b>gì ?</b> What
	subject	modality (Verb)	main Verb	Wh-question

*To reach to the victory, what do we have to do?*

### 5) Cohesion

The cohesion is used to link two levels of grammatical levels. In this study, there are the cohesions used to link ‘sentences by sentences’ and ‘paragraph by

paragraph. The logical cohesion were used to link by using ‘vậy’ or ‘so’, ‘dù’ or ‘however’, ‘vì’ or ‘because’, and ‘vì vậy’ or ‘therefore’, etc. The cohesions occur regularly in each text.

**-sentence by sentence**

In example 159, there are two cohesions to link sentences by sentences. Using ‘nhưng’ or ‘but’ and ‘vì’ or ‘because’ are linked between sentences.

Example 159: Text 1 Appeal for national resistance

¶ 2	... Nhưng	<b>chúng ta</b>	<b>càng</b>	<b>nhân nhượng,</b>
	But	We	the more...	make concessions
	<b>thực dân</b>	<b>Pháp</b>	<b>càng</b>	<b>lấn tới,</b>
	colonialist	French	the more...	encroach
	vì	<b>chúng</b>	<b>quyết tâm</b>	<b>cướp</b>
	because	They	be resolved	plunder
	<b>nước</b>	<b>Ta</b>	<b>lần</b>	<b>nữa!</b>
	country	Our	time	more

*...But the more concessions we make, the more encroachments the French colonialists resort to because they are resolved to plunder our country one more time!*

In example 160, using cohesion ‘dù’ or ‘however’ and ‘vì’ are the relational cohesion to link between sentence by sentence.

Example 160: Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist

¶ 4	Dù	<b>ta</b>	<b>muốn</b>	<b>để</b>
	however	we	want	leave

<b>cống</b> sewer	<b>để</b> For	<b>đường,</b> road	<b>để</b> for
<b>nhà</b> house	<b>mà</b> in order to	<b>dùng,</b> use	<b>cũng</b> also
<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>được,</b> ASP.: Pfv: complete actions: be able to	<b>vì</b> because
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>sẽ</b> FUT: will	<b>chiếm</b> occupy	<b>hết,</b> all
<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>hết.</b> All		

*However, even if we want to use sewers, roads and houses we can't because the French will use them and destroy everything.*

**- paragraph by paragraph**

In example 161, there are two levels of cohesion. The sentence by sentence cohesion is used by 'nhưng' or 'but' in paragraph (8) and 'mặc dầu' or 'although' in paragraph (9). The paragraph by paragraph cohesion is used to link between paragraph (8) and (9) by using 'vì vậy' or 'therefore'. It is used to describe the result in paragraph (9) which causes from paragraph (8).

Example 161: Text 5 Appeal on the occasion of the first anniversary of the appeal for national resistance

¶ 8	<b>Chúng ta</b> We	<b>biết</b> know	<b>rằng</b> that	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance
	<b>ắt</b> surely	<b>phải</b> must	<b>gay go,</b> hard	<b>phải</b> must
	<b>trường kỳ,</b> protracted	<b>nhưng</b> but	<b>chắc chắn</b> definitely	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will

**thắng lợi.**

succeed

*We know that our resistance must be hard and long but it will be certain to succeed.*

¶ 9	<b>Vì vậy,</b> therefore	<b>mặc dầu</b> although	<b>gian nan</b> miserably hard	<b>cực khổ,</b> hard and miserable
	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our	<b>ngày càng</b> more with everyday passing day	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite, solidarity
	<b>càng</b> more	<b>hăng hái,</b> enthusiastic	<b>càng</b> more	<b>kiên quyết</b> (be)determined
	<b>kháng chiến</b> to resist (against foreign aggression)	<b>cho</b> to	<b>đến</b> reach	<b>thắng lợi</b> win a victory
	<b>cuối cùng.</b> final			

*For that reason, even though there are many difficulties, our people are more and more united, more and more enthusiastic, and more and more determined to resist until the final victory.*

In example 162, the cohesion ‘vậy’ or ‘so’ is used to link between paragraph (14) and (15). In paragraph (14), it is the cause that results in what the Vietnamese have to do in paragraph (15).

Example 162: Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of resistance

¶ 14	<b>Địch</b> enemy	<b>muốn</b> want	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>Cách</b> way
	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>mau,</b> quick	<b>thắng</b> win	<b>mau.</b> quick

<b>Nếu</b>	<b>chiến tranh</b>	<b>kéo dài,</b>	<b>hao</b>
if	war	lengthen	waste
<b>binh</b>	<b>tổn</b>	<b>tướng,</b>	<b>chúng</b>
soldier	suffer to lose	general of army	they
<b>sẽ</b>	<b>thất bại.</b>		

ASP.: future actions: will defeatism

*The enemies want to have a quick fight for quick victory. If the war stretches on their soldiers will suffer and lose their strength, they will be defeated.*

¶ 15	<b>Vậy</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>dùng</b>	<b>chiến lược</b>
	so	we	use	strategy
	<b>trường kỳ</b>	<b>kháng chiến,</b>	<b>để</b>	<b>phát triển</b>
	protracted	resistance	for	develop
	<b>lực lượng,</b>	<b>tăng</b>	<b>thêm</b>	<b>kinh nghiệm.</b>
	power	increase	increase	experience
	<b>Ta</b>	<b>dùng</b>	<b>chiến thuật</b>	<b>du kích,</b>
	we	use	tactics	carry out
				guerilla warfare
	<b>để</b>	<b>làm</b>	<b>chí</b>	<b>địch</b>
	for	make	will	enemy
	<b>hao mòn,</b>	<b>cho đến</b>	<b>ngày</b>	<b>Ta</b>
	wear down	until	day	we
	<b>sẽ</b>	<b>tổng phản công,</b>	<b>để</b>	<b>quét</b>
	ASP.: future	general counter-	for	sweep
	actions: will	offensive		
	<b>sạch</b>	<b>lũ</b>	<b>chúng.</b>	
	clean	group	they	

*So we will use a long war of resistance to develop our force, to increase our experience. We will use this method in order to crush the enemy's will until the day we have the upper hand in order to wipe them out.*

### C Textual structures

The analysis of textual structures in three kinds of letters of Ho Chi Minh's writing style can be divided into three patterns namely, the comparison structure, the purposive and how to structure and the question-answer structure. These three structures are based on the logical writing style. In (cross out 'in') this section presents the analysis of the general structures found in Ho Chi Minh's letters. The general structure of Ho Chi Minh's letters consists of three main parts. The first part of the letter is addressed to the addressees that he wants to write to. The second part is the content of different structures including the question-answer structure, the comparison structure between the French colonialists as the enemy's side and the Vietnamese's side, and the purposive and how to structure that especially uses with the strategy or policy letters. The last part of the letter is his mottos based on the the concept of independence, unity, and the protracted resistance. The general structure of the letter is shown in Figure 5-1.

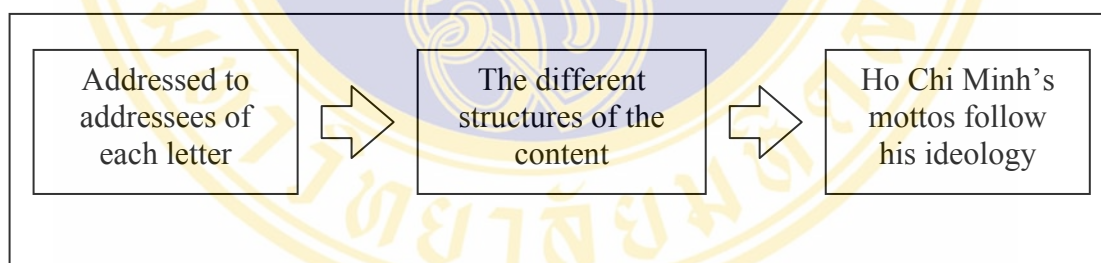


Figure 5-1: General Structure of Ho Chi Minh's Letter

As for the analysis of content's structure, this study uses the example of three letters (see Appendix I) of what in the table comprises three columns. The first column is the ordering number of paragraph in the letters. The second column is the content of the letters presenting the Vietnamese original text and the free translation ( For further details, see Appendix I). And the last column is the analysis of the content. The following sections describe the results of analysis of three columns.

### 1) Question-answer structure

The first content structure of Ho Chi Minh writing style is question-answer structure. This structure is divided into two main structures consisting of questions and responses in each issue that he attempts to propose to his addressees. The question-answer can make clear to the addressee. Ho Chi Minh uses this style to fix the frame of content he wants to write. It directs to the point of the issue before leading to the other part of content such as the purpose or how to reach to that purpose.

In text 2 (please see an example below), it is an example of the question-answer structure. Ho Chi Minh gave a question to ask about the reason to resist and he responded his question himself to explain reasons before going to the purpose of his letter -- the strategy to destroy to resist. He employed the question-answer structure as the background and the reason of this strategy. He explained his answers step by step. On the point of meaning to destroy, he explains more the way to destroy relevant and how to solve the problem after the destruction. The pattern of the question-answer content structure is shown in figure 4-2.

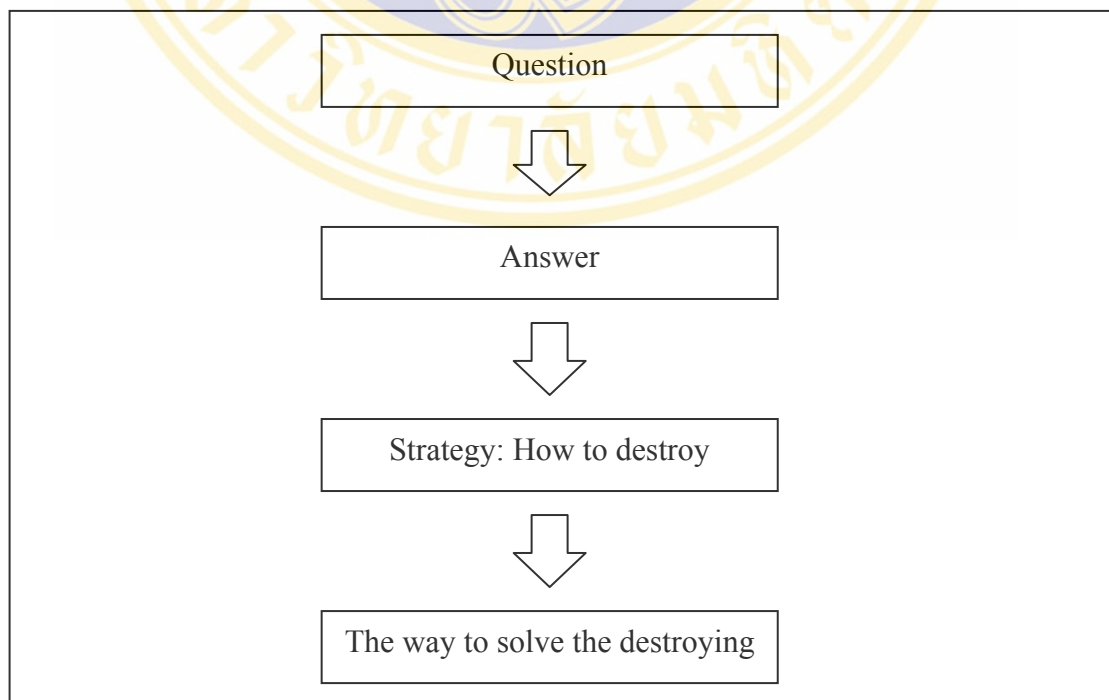


Figure 5-2: Question – answer structure

## Example 163: Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist

¶ 1	<p>Hỡi đồng bào yêu quý, <i>My dear fellow-countrymen,</i></p>	<p><b>Addressed to the addressees</b></p> <p>Ho Chi Minh addresses to the Vietnamese fellows.</p>
¶ 2	<p>Vì sao ta phải kháng chiến? <i>Why do we have to resist?</i></p>	<p><b>Question</b></p> <p>He gives the question asking the cause of the resistance.</p>
¶ 3	<p>Vì không kháng chiến, thì Pháp sẽ cướp nước ta lần nữa. Chúng sẽ bắt dân ta làm nô lệ lần nữa. <i>If we do not resist, the French will continue to rob our country. They will enslave our citizens one more time.</i></p>	<p><b>Answer: the first reason</b></p> <p>He responses the question in (2). In paragraph (3), (4), President Ho responses the first reason causes to resist the aggressors to his addressees. The first reason is described by the negative meaning to Vietnamese people as the passive person from the colonialists. In addition, he describes the coming situation that Vietnamese people will be suffered from the French colonialists. He gives an example to show the clear example that his addressees can see by themselves.</p>
¶ 4	<p>Chúng sẽ bắt dân ta đi phu đi lính, nộp thuế nộp sưu. Chúng sẽ giạt hết quyền tự do độc lập của ta. Chúng sẽ cướp hết ruộng nương của cải ta. Chúng sẽ khùng bó chém giết anh em bà con ta. Chúng sẽ đốt phá nhà của đền chùa ta. Đồng bào thử xem Hà Nội, Hải Phòng thì rõ. <i>They will take our citizens for their coolies and armies, to pay taxes and poll taxes. They will take away all our rights of freedom and independence. They will rob us of all our fields, gardens and wealth. They will impose a reign of terror and massacre our brothers.</i></p>	

	<i>They will burn and destroy all from our houses to pagodas. Fellow-countrymen, take a look at Hanoi and Hai Phong and then you will see clearly.</i>	
¶ 5	<p>Vì ta không chịu làm trâu ngựa cho Pháp, vì ta phải giữ gìn non sông đất nước ta, cho nên ta phải đánh bọn thực dân Pháp.</p> <p><i>Because we can not concede to be buffaloes and horses for the French. And because we must preserve our homeland, we have to fight the French colonialists.</i></p>	<p><b>Answer: the second reason</b></p> <p>He describes the reason why Vietnamese side has to do for the resistance -- they are the own of this land.</p>
¶ 6	<p>Đánh thì phải phá hoại. Ta không phá thì Pháp cũng phá. Nếu ta không phá đường phá cống, lấp sông lấp ngòi, nếu ta không phá những nhà cửa kiên cố mà Pháp có thể dùng làm nơi căn cứ, thì Pháp sẽ đem tàu thủy xe tăng đến đánh ta, và chúng sẽ đốt phá cướp bóc sạch trơn. Vì vậy, ta phải phá trước, cho Pháp không dùng được. Dù ta muốn đắp cống để đường, để nhà mà dùng, cũng không dùng được, vì Pháp sẽ chiếm hết, phá hết.</p> <p><i>Fight! We have to destroy. If we do not destroy, the French will destroy our properties. If we do not destroy roads and sewers, block up rivers, canals, and if we do not destroy the solid strong houses then the French will use them and the French will put to use ships and tanks to fight us. And they</i></p>	<p><b>How to: the way to do</b></p> <p>He suggests the way to fight or to resist to Vietnamese people. As the topic that he attempted to propose is about how to destroy to resist from the aggressors. Therefore, in this paragraph, he described the way to destroy e.g., destroying whose properties, roads, sewers, etc. He also shows the impact if the Vietnamese do not destroy that the colonialists would use it as the beneficial basis to attack the Vietnamese side, and they would also</p>

	<i>will undoubtedly burn, destroy and rob us of everything. Therefore we have to destroy everything before them, so that the French can not use them. However, even if we want to use sewers, roads and houses we can't because the French will use them and destroy everything.</i>	destroy all of Vietnamese things.
¶ 7	Bây giờ ta phải đi, để chặn Pháp lại, không cho chúng tiến lên, không cho chúng lợi dụng. <i>Now, we have to intercept the French again, to stop them advancing so they can not use us.</i>	<b>How to: the way to do</b> It shows the concept against the French colonialists and the reason to do that.
¶ 8	Ta vì nước hy sinh, chịu khổ một lúc. Đến ngày kháng chiến thắng lợi ta sẽ cùng nhau kiến thiết sửa sang lại, nào có khó gì. <i>For our country, we have to sacrifice and accept misery for awhile again. When our resistance leads to victory, we will construct and repair everything together again. This is not too hard.</i>	<b>Ho Chi Minh's teaching and the way to solve the problem</b> President Ho teaches the Vietnamese about the task to do for the nation. Moreover, he showed the way to reconstruct their properties again by using their solidarity.
¶ 9	Các chiến sĩ ở trước mặt trận hy sinh xương máu cho Tổ quốc, họ còn không tiếc. Không lẽ đồng bào ta lại tiếc một đoạn đường, một cái cống, hoặc một ngôi nhà, mà để bọn Pháp lợi dụng, đặng đánh Tổ quốc ta.	<b>Use the example for comparison</b> In order to persuade the Vietnamese, He uses the example of the fighters who

	<p><i>Soldiers at the front sacrifice their bones and blood for our fatherland. They don't regret. There is no reason for our fellow-countrymen to regret the loss of roads, sewers or houses which the French can make full use of to fight our fatherland.</i></p>	<p>sacrifice more than materials. He compared with the task to destroy which is one of the war strategies. This paragraph uses the example this comparison (Repeat) to persuade the Vietnamese follow his strategy.</p>
¶10	<p>Đồng bào đều là người ái quốc, chắc không ai nỡ lòng như thế. <i>Fellow-countrymen, everyone is a patriot. Surely no one would dare to (do that).</i></p>	<p><b>Give the trust to the Vietnamese compatriots.</b></p>
¶11	<p>Vậy tôi thiết tha kêu gọi toàn thể đồng bào ở đây, mọi người đều ra sức giúp phá. Phá cho rộng, phá cho sâu, phá sao cho bọn Pháp không lợi dụng được. Một nhát cuốc của đồng bào, cũng như một viên đạn của chiến sĩ bắn vào quân địch vậy. <i>So, I eagerly appeal to all fellow-countrymen here. Everyone must strive to destroy. Destroy wide. Destroy deep. Destroy however you need so that the French can not make use of anything. To stab with a fellow-countrymen's hoe is as good as a bullet from a soldier.</i></p>	<p><b>Do the appeal for the war strategy and how to do destroy</b> He emphasizes the war strategy the concept of 'destroy' as one way to resistance. This paragraph shows his relevant war strategy and policy by using the reduplication of 'destroy'. It proposes the way to destroy in all-sided.</p>
¶12	<p>Tôi lại trân trọng hứa với đồng bào rằng: kháng chiến thắng lợi rồi, tôi sẽ ra sức cùng đồng bào sửa sang tu bổ lại hết. Chúng ta sẽ</p>	<p><b>Ho Chi Minh's promising</b> As Ho Chi Minh is the leader of the Government and</p>

	<p>làm những đường sá, cầu cống khéo hơn, những nhà cửa tốt hơn, và xứng đáng một dân tộc tự do độc lập hơn.</p> <p><i>I respectfully promise you again that: after our resistance wins a victory, I will exert myself together with all of you to repair and rebuild again till we are finished. We will construct roads, bridges and sewers more skillful than before and have better than before, more worthy of a freedom and independence of the nation.</i></p>	<p>country, he gives plan and promises to the Vietnamese that he will be the one to do all works for his fellows. He reduced the gap between his status as he is the same status with all fellows. He also shows his responsibilities by promising to pursue the reconstruction with high quality</p>
(13)	<p>Kháng chiến thắng lợi muôn năm! <i>Long live victory resistance!</i></p>	<p><b>Ho Chi Minh's motto</b> Using the motto on the main ideology about the western ideology on independence</p>
(14)	<p>Việt Nam độc lập muôn năm! <i>Long live independent Vietnam!</i></p>	

## 2) Purpose and solution structure

The purposive and how to structure found in Ho Chi Minh's letter is proposed directly to tell the addressee on the purpose of the letter. It leads to the results from the purpose as the way and how to get to the point of the purpose. As shown in Example 164, text 8 is an example of this structure. It is the strategy to appeal to the patriotic emulation. President Ho directly explained the purpose of the strategy to make his addressees clearer. He showed the way to do the patriotic emulation in various ways by using the slogans and mottos. One of the important parts of this letter is to appeal all the people to take part in this strategy. Also he expressed the results and the advantages of this strategy to his addressees of this strategy.

## Example 164: Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism

¶ 1 ¶ 2- ¶ 4	<p>Mục đích thi đua ái quốc là, <i>Purpose of patriotic emulation is</i></p> <p>Diệt giặc đói, Diệt giặc đói, Diệt giặc ngoại xâm. <i>to eliminate starvation,</i> <i>to eliminate illiteracy,</i> <i>to destroy the aggressors who invade us.</i></p>	<p><b>Show purposes of the text</b></p> <p>This is Ho Chi Minh's writing style. He used precise and short words and the reduplication to make clear to the addressees to understand his purpose.</p>
¶ 5 ¶ 6- ¶ 8	<p>Cách làm là: dựa vào: <i>The way to do this is to stand up against them with</i></p> <p>Lực lượng của dân, Tinh thần của dân, để gây: Hạnh phúc cho dân. <i>the power of the people,</i> <i>People's spirits:</i> <i>Happiness to our people.</i></p>	<p><b>The way to do</b></p> <p>He gave advices to his addressees about the way to reach to the purposes by using motto.</p>
¶ 9	<p>Vì vậy bốn phận của người dân Việt Nam, bất kỳ sĩ, nông, công, thương, binh; bất kỳ làm việc gì, đều cần phải thi đua nhau: <i>Therefore, this is the obligation of Vietnamese people whether you are scholars, farmers, industrials, traders or soldiers, you also must challenge in every thing you do.</i></p>	<p><b>Appeal to follow the strategy by occupational separation</b></p> <p>President Ho appeals the addressees that separate by occupation. The addressees are appealed to follow his strategy on the patriotic</p>

¶10- ¶ 12	<p>Làm cho mau, Làm cho tốt, Làm cho nhiều. <i>Do quickly,</i> <i>Do well,</i> <i>Do a lot.</i></p>	<p>emulation by using his motto. Using a motto, president Ho appealed the addresses to follow his strategy on the patriotic emulation.</p>
¶ 13  ¶14- ¶ 15  ¶16- ¶ 18	<p>Mỗi người dân Việt Nam, bất kỳ già, trẻ, trai, gái; bất kỳ giàu, nghèo, lớn, nhỏ, đều cần phải trở nên một chiến sĩ tranh đấu trên mặt trận: Quân sự, Kinh tế, Chính trị, Văn hóa. Thực hiện khẩu hiệu: <i>All Vietnamese people, even old and young, men and women, rich and poor, adults and youths have to become fighters to fight at the front: military, economy, politics, and culture.</i> <i>Realize our slogans as:</i></p> <p>Toàn dân kháng chiến, Toàn diện kháng chiến. <i>All people resist foreign aggression,</i> <i>All-sides resist,</i></p> <p>Trong cuộc thi đua ái quốc, chúng ta: Vừa kháng chiến, Vừa kiến quốc. <i>To be patriotic, we have only to resist and establish our state.</i></p>	<p>- <b>Appeal to follow the strategy that separates by age, gender and the economical status</b> - <b>War strategy by using mottos</b> President Ho appealed all the Vietnamese by using the separation from many factors. He appealed his addressees do the patriotic in all-sided. Again, he used the mottos to appeal for the war strategy.</p>

¶19-	Kết quả đầu tiên của Thi đua ái quốc sẽ là:	<b>Results of this strategy</b>
¶ 23	<p>Toàn dân đủ ăn đủ mặc,          Toàn dân biết đọc, biết viết,          Toàn bộ đội đầy đủ lương thực, khí giới,          để diệt ngoại xâm,          Toàn quốc sẽ thống nhất độc lập hoàn toàn.  <i>The first result of our patriotic challenge will be</i>  <i>All people to have adequate food and clothing,</i>  <i>All people to know how to read and write,</i>  <i>All soldiers to have adequate provisions and weapons to eliminate foreign aggression,</i>  <i>The whole country will have completely unity and independence.</i></p>	<p>He proposed the results of the patriotic emulation which is useful for the Vietnamese people in various ways. First, His language use is the use of mottoes which is the main characteristic of this letter. Second, he proposed the doctrines of the Chinese Revolution declared by doctor Sun Yat Sen to use in Vietnamese case. These doctrines can be considered as the results of this war strategy.</p>
¶24-	Thế là chúng ta thực hiện:	
¶27	<p>Dân tộc độc lập,          Dân quyền tự do,          Dân sinh hạnh phúc,  <i>To bring about</i>  <i>an independent nation</i>  <i>with civil rights and liberty</i>  <i>for the material and moral</i>  <i>benefit of a happy people</i></p>	
¶ 28	<p>Ba chủ nghĩa mà nhà đại cách mạng Tôn Văn đã nêu ra.  <i>Three doctrines which the great revolutionary Ton Van developed.</i></p>	

¶ 29	<p>Để đi đến kết quả tốt đẹp đó, tôi xin <i>In order to be fully satisfied with the results I ask</i></p>	<p><b>Ask for each specific groups to do in different tasks</b></p>
¶ 30	<p>Các cụ phụ lão thi đua đốc thúc con cháu hăng hái tham gia mọi công việc, <i>all elders to urge your offspring to enthusiastically take part in all efforts.</i></p>	<p>President Ho delegates the different tasks to the different groups. He attempted to advise how to do as the patriotic emulation in the different</p>
¶ 31	<p>Các cháu nhi đồng thi đua học hành và giúp việc người lớn, <i>all small grandchild, study and help adults work.</i></p>	<p>status of each people. In addition, he revealed the summary of the concept in Patriotic emulation that the most important thing. It is</p>
¶ 32	<p>Đồng bào phú hào thi đua mở mang doanh nghiệp, <i>Local influential or rich fellow-countrymen, expand your businesses,</i></p>	<p>focused to every people to take part in this strategy.</p>
¶ 33	<p>Đồng bào công nông thi đua sản xuất, <i>Workers and peasant fellow-countrymen, labour to produce more,</i></p>	
¶ 34	<p>Đồng bào trí thức và chuyên môn thi đua sáng tác và phát minh, <i>Educated and professional fellow-countrymen, create and invent,</i></p>	

¶ 35	Nhân viên Chính phủ thi đua tận tụy làm việc, phụng sự nhân dân, <i>Government employees, be dedicated in your work and serve our people.</i>	
¶ 36	Bộ đội và dân quân thi đua giết cho nhiều giặc, đoạt cho nhiều súng. <i>Soldiers and militias to kill more foreign aggressors and take their arms.</i>	
¶ 37	Nói tóm lại, ai cũng thi đua, ai cũng tham gia kháng chiến và kiến quốc. Phong trào sôi nổi. <i>In brief, whoever is able take part in this resistance and found our state. Our movement is positive.</i>	<b>Advantages and results of this strategy</b> He proposed the advantages of the strategy leading to the victory of the war.
¶ 38	Với tinh thần quật cường và lực lượng vô tận của dân tộc ta, với lòng yêu nước và chí kiên của nhân dân và quân đội ta, chúng ta có thể thắng lợi, chúng ta nhất định thắng lợi. <i>With undaunted minds, and the endless efforts, patriotism of our people and armed forces, we can win a victory. We are assured certain victory.</i>	<b>Teaching to reach the success</b> He suggested the way that the Vietnamese people can do to win the victory with the patriotic emulation.
¶ 39	Hỡi toàn thể đồng bào, <i>Dear fellow-countrymen,</i>	<b>Addressed to the general addressee and the specific group</b>
¶ 40	Hỡi toàn thể chiến sĩ, <i>Dear fighters,</i>	

¶ 41	Tiến lên ! <i>March forward!</i>	<b>Use imperative sentence to arouse the people</b>
------	-------------------------------------	---

### 3) The comparative structure

The comparative structure is the regular structure which occurs in Ho Chi Minh's letters, especially in the annual appeal letters. The contents of the comparison include the situation of the French colonialists' side and the Vietnamese side in the passing year that is separated into many issues e.g., politics, military affairs, economics, the foreign affairs, the result from the battlefield, etc. President Ho always shows the negative point and the failure of the enemy's side. Meanwhile, he proposed the advantageous and positive point of the Vietnamese side. This is the tactic of Ho Chi Minh that can encourage the addressees for the resistance even though the real situation at the time he proposed might be disadvantage for the Vietnamese's side. The example of this structure is shown in example 165.

Example 165: Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance

¶ 1	Cùng đồng bào toàn quốc, <i>To fellow-countrymen all over country,</i>	<b>Addressed to the addressees</b>  He addressed to the general addressees -- Vietnamese people and the specific addressees being as the fighters
¶ 2	Cùng toàn thể chiến sĩ, <i>To all fighters,</i>	
¶ 3	Hôm nay, cuộc trường kỳ kháng chiến bước sang năm thứ ba, riêng Nam Bộ đã đến năm thứ tư. Chúng ta hãy xét lại tình hình hai năm vừa qua, để tiến hành công việc trong năm sắp	<b>Ask the question to make the summary of the passing year</b>  President Ho repeated the

	<p>đến. Tình hình trong hai năm đó thế nào ?</p> <p><i>Today, the protracted war of resistance is entering its third year and in the south, it is in its fourth year. Let us review the situation over the past two years in order to carry out our work in the coming year. How was the situation in those first two years?</i></p>	<p>duration of the war time.</p> <p>This character regularly occurs in annual letters. It occurs at the beginning of the letter. In addition, he writes a question that leads to an answer. It is the comparison between the enemy's side and the Vietnamese side.</p>
¶ 4	<p>VỀ PHÍA ĐỊCH:</p> <p><i>About the enemy's side</i></p>	<p><b>Respond the question by summarize the situation of the enemy's side in each issue</b></p> <p>Ho Chi Minh distinguished the situation of the enemy's side into 4 issues.</p> <p>-- politics, military affairs, economics and the failure from the war.</p>
¶ 5	<p>1. Chính trị: Từ ngày khởi cuộc chiến tranh phi nghĩa, Chính phủ Pháp đã bị Quốc hội và nhân dân Pháp lật đổ hơn 10 lần.</p> <p><i>1. Politics: from the beginning of the unrighteous war, French governments have been toppled by the French National assembly and people more than ten times.</i></p>	<p><b>Political issue of the enemy's side</b></p> <p>He attempted to draw a conclusion on the situation of the enemy's side. The contents of this issue focused on the failure in the management of the French Government,</p>

¶ 6	<p>Những kẻ thay mặt Chính phủ Pháp ở Đông Dương cũng phải thay đổi ba lần. Nhà quân phiệt Đácgiăng lơ thất bại, phải trở về đi tu. Nhà chính trị Bôlae cũng thất bại, lại bị nhân dân Pháp hất ra khỏi Thượng nghị viện. Nay đến lượt công chức Pinhông, chắc rồi cũng thất bại.</p> <p><i>The representatives of the French government in Indochina have had to be changed three times. The war lord D'Argenlieu lost and had to go back to the monastery, the politician Bollaertt also lost and was thrown out of the upper chamber. Currently, it's the turn of the civil servant Pignon, who is certain to lose.</i></p>	<p>especially the Government in Indochina. He describes more the failure in the political strategies and policies of the French that constructed the Vietnamese puppet because it is mocked by the whole people. From the content, it proposes that Ho Chi Minh used the psychological tactics to show the disadvantageous things of the enemy. This is a tactic of the leader to encourage his fellows feel that their enemy is weakened than their side. It might make his addressees feel more vigorous to work on the resistance.</p>
¶ 7	<p>Chích sách chia rẽ, chính sách dùng người Việt đánh dân Việt cũng thất bại. Lũ bù nhìn phản quốc, chẳng những bị đồng bào ta phỉ nhổ, mà lại bị thế giới chê cười.</p> <p><i>Their policy of division, of "Using the Vietnamese to fight the Vietnamese" was also defeated. The traitorous puppets not only were spit out by our fellow-countrymen, they were mocked by all the people over the world.</i></p>	

¶ 8	<p>2. Quân sự: Từ tướng Locléc, tướng Valuy, tướng Xalăng đến tướng Bledô, địch đã phải thay đổi thống soái bốn lần.</p> <p><i>2. Military affairs: from General Leclerc, General Value, General Salan to General Bledaux, the enemy has had to change commanders four times.</i></p>	<p><b>Military affairs issue of the enemy side</b></p> <p>He attempted to show the loss on the French military issue by proposing the unstable status of the army. Furthermore, he</p>
¶ 9	<p>Binh sĩ địch mỗi tháng bị ta tiêu diệt từ 800 đến 1.000 người, cho nên ngoài lính Pháp, chúng phải dùng những tội nhân Pháp, những tù binh Đức và Ý, những lính Maroc, da đen. Chúng lại bắt ép những thanh niên Việt Nam trong vùng tạm bị chúng chiếm đi làm bia đỡ đạn. Phần đông những đồng bào ấy chỉ chờ dịp để quay về với Tổ quốc.</p> <p><i>Every month, from 800 to 1,000 enemy soldiers are eliminated. Therefore, they used not only French soldiers but also French prisoners, German and Italian Prisoners of war, and Moroccan black-skinned soldiers. They also compelled Vietnamese youths in the temporary occupied area to go to block the bullets. The majority of those compatriots are waiting for their chance to return to their fatherland's side.</i></p>	<p>showed the number of the soldiers that the French colonialists lost and the unrighteous rights that the French colonialists compel the prisoners from France and foreign country to take part in the war. Taken together, He shows the failure of the French colonialists' side by the majority of their soldiers who wait to return to the Vietnamese side.</p>
¶ 10	<p>3. Kinh tế: Chúng phải hao tổn hàng muôn triệu về binh bị, mà nền kinh tế của chúng ở đây lại bị phá sản. Trước kia 100 phần, nay chỉ còn bà, bốn phần.</p>	<p><b>Economical issue of the enemy side</b></p> <p>He attempted to show the economical assessment of</p>

	<p>3. <i>Economics: they wasted ten thousand million Francs for their armaments. It shows their economy here also was bankrupted. They have 100 parts before but currently they have only 3-4 parts [meaning that their economy is only about 3 or 4 percent of what it once was].</i></p>	<p>the French Government which lost a large amount of money. In addition, he proposed the economic crisis of the French Government due to the expense in the war.</p>
¶ 11	<p>4. Thêm vào những thất bại đó, tình hình nội bộ nước Pháp lại rất rối ren. Trên trường ngoại giao, Pháp cũng thất bại, và bị các đế quốc khác lần át, đánh lừa.</p> <p>4. <i>In addition to those defeats, their internal situation is very confused. France has been defeated on the diplomatic stage. They were encroached upon and deceived by other empires.</i></p>	<p><b>The internal issue of the French colonialists' side</b></p> <p>This paragraph is also the negative point of the French colonialist in the foreign affairs issue. It shows the failure of Vietnamese's enemy.</p>
¶ 12	<p>VỀ PHÍA TA: <i>About our side,</i></p>	<p><b>Respond the question by summarize the situation of the enemy's side in each issue</b></p> <p>President Ho Chi Minh gave the same issues with the French colonialists' side to do summary of situations on the Vietnamese side</p>
¶ 13	<p>1. Trong khi Chính phủ Pháp lập lên, đổ xuống mấy lần, oai tín Chính phủ kháng chiến</p>	<p><b>Political issue of the Vietnamese side</b></p>

	<p>ta càng ngày càng vững chắc, chẳng những được Quốc hội và nhân dân ta ủng hộ, mà danh vọng trên thế giới càng thêm cao.</p> <p><i>1. While French governments have been established and fallen again and again, the prestige of our government of the resistance is more and more solid. Not only do we receive the support of our National Assembly and people, our reputation around the world is getting better and better.</i></p>	<p>Ho shows the comparison between the failure of the enemy and the success of the Vietnamese side. This comparison gives the encouragement to the addressees in order to endeavour to participate in the war. In addition, he proposes the advantageous situation of their own side , being more powerful to resist.</p>
¶ 14	<p>Nhân dân ta đoàn kết ngày càng chặt chẽ, lực lượng kháng chiến ngày càng dồi dào.</p> <p><i>Our fellow-countrymen unite more and more. We have more and more power of the resistance.</i></p>	
¶ 15	<p>2. Năm đầu kháng chiến, quân đội ta còn thơ trẻ, vũ khí ta rất thô sơ. Trong Nam thì gậy tầm vông, ngoài Bắc thì súng đạn cũ. Thế mà ta cũng cản được địch.</p> <p><i>2. During the first/early years of the resistance, our army had little experience. Our weapons were very primitive. In the south, we used bamboo sticks. In the north, we used old guns and bullets. However we still could obstruct/block the enemy.</i></p>	<p><b>Military affairs issue of the Vietnamese side</b></p> <p>He showed the success in the war strategies even they are inferior in terms of the weapons but they can win the victory in many battlefields. Additionally, he proposed the supportive situation on the military about stronger armies and guerillas. He discusses more the fighters that even they are female or old</p>
¶ 16	<p>Ngày nay quân đội ta đã trưởng thành về mọi mặt. Ta đã nhiều phen cho địch nếm mùi vũ khí mới của ta, như ở Đồng Tháp Mười, ở đèo</p>	

	<p>Hải Vân, ở Việt Bắc, và ở nhiều trận khác.</p> <p><i>Currently, our army has grown up in every respect. We gave the enemy many chances to taste our new weapons in Dong Thap Muoi, Hai Van mountain pass, Viet Bac and other battlefields.</i></p>	<p>people, they also have their abilities to kill the enemies.</p>
¶ 17	<p>Ta lại có lực lượng dân quân du kích to lớn mạnh mẽ. Chẳng những các đội du kích trai tráng, mà những đội phụ lão du kích, phụ nữ du kích cũng đã nhiều lần giết giặc, lập công.</p> <p><i>We also have the powerful guerilla militia because we have not only groups of young and strong guerillas, but also elderly and female guerilla units who have on many occasions killed aggressors and achieved [great] feats.</i></p>	
¶ 18	<p>3. Kinh tế, tài chính, văn hóa của ta đã vượt qua những bước khó khăn, và vẫn theo đà phát triển.</p> <p><i>3. Our economics, finance and culture have passed through many difficulties and are still developing</i></p>	<p><b>Economical issue of the Vietnamese side</b></p> <p>He proposes the economic situation that could pass the economic crisis and be in development. It is a positive point to the Vietnamese side.</p>
¶ 19	<p>Ta có những thắng lợi vẻ vang ấy, là do lòng nồng nàn yêu nước và sự đoàn kết nhất trí của đồng bào và chiến sĩ.</p> <p><i>We have those glorious victories because of</i></p>	<p><b>Praise and give cause of the victory</b></p> <p>He praised the strong power of the unity and the</p>

	<i>the patriotism and unity of our fellow-countrymen and fighters.</i>	patriotism of the Vietnamese people, which is a good point leads to the victory.
¶ 20	Vậy nhân dịp này tôi thay mặt Chính phủ cảm ơn và khen ngợi: <i>On this occasion, on behalf of the Government, I thank and praise</i>	<b>Give praise</b> Ho praised the people who involved in the resistance because of the success of the situation of the year.
¶ 21	<i>Toàn thể chiến sĩ, Vệ quốc quân và dân quân du kích. Toàn thể đồng bào ở vùng tự do cũng như ở vùng tạm bị chiếm và kiều bào ở hải ngoại. Toàn thể cán bộ hành chính và chuyên môn.</i> <i>All fighters, The Vietnamese National Army, The Guerilla Militia, fellow-countrymen in the free and temporarily occupied areas and the Vietnamese overseas, cadres, administrations and specialists.</i>	
¶ 22	Tôi lại thay mặt Chính phủ, kính cảm nghiêng mình trước linh hồn các chiến sĩ và đồng bào đã hy sinh cho Tổ quốc và gửi lời thân ái an ủi các thương binh, cựu binh, cùng gia đình các chiến sĩ. <i>On behalf of the Government, I show the respect to the fighters and fellow-countrymen who sacrificed themselves for our fatherland, and send my condolences to war wounded fighters, ex-soldiers and fighters' families.</i>	<b>Give an inquired after to all people</b> He inquired after to all the Vietnamese especially the people who sacrificed for the country before or in current time.

¶ 23	<p>Theo sự so sánh trên đây, chúng ta thấy rằng: <i>According to this comparison, we can see that</i></p>	<p><b>The comparison on the power between the enemy's side and the Vietnamese's side</b></p>
¶ 24	<p>Lực lượng của địch trước to sau nhỏ, trước mạnh sau yếu. Tình hình của địch như mặt trời đã xế tà, gần tắt. <i>The power of the enemy was once great but now is small, was once strong but now is weak. The situation of enemy side is like the setting sun which will soon die out.</i></p>	<p>He used the comparison between the enemy's side and the Vietnamese side, which remains the contrary meaning. In comparison, the enemy's side is the representative of the weakness whilst the Vietnamese's side is the stronger side. He used the metaphor to his addressees imagine.</p>
¶ 25	<p>Lực lượng của ta trước nhỏ sau to, trước yếu sau mạnh. Thanh thế của ta cũng như những nguồn nước nhỏ nhón dần thành một đại dương. <i>Our power was once small and is now great, once strong and is now weak. Our prestige is like small and large springs of water which will gradually [come together to] form an ocean.</i></p>	
¶ 26	<p>Cuộc kháng chiến của ta: <i>Our resistance:</i></p>	<p><b>Ho Chi Minh's mottos</b></p>
¶ 27	<p>NĂM ĐẦU là vất vả, <i>The first year was the year of difficulties,</i></p>	<p>He used mottos to sum up the situation in the passing year. These mottos show the process of the Vietnamese resistance from the miserable hard at the beginning to the resistance.</p>
¶ 28	<p>NĂM THỨ HAI là tiến bộ, <i>The second year was the year of progress,</i></p>	
¶ 29	<p>NĂM THỨ BA sẽ là năm bước gần đến thắng</p>	

	<p>lợi hoàn toàn.</p> <p><i>The third year will be a step closer to complete victory.</i></p>	
¶ 30	<p>Song chúng ta chớ chủ quan, khinh địch. Để đi đến thắng lợi cuối cùng, chúng ta còn phải kinh qua những bước gay go hơn trước, còn phải chiến đấu hăng hái hơn trước, mạnh hơn trước.</p> <p><i>However we should not scorn the enemy. For the final victory, we must undergo more difficulties, fight with more enthusiasm, and more strength.</i></p>	<p><b>Ho Chi Minh teaching</b></p> <p>He taught his fellows how to prepare for the coming situation and what to do to increase power.</p>
¶ 31	<p>Vì vậy toàn thể đồng bào và toàn thể chiến sĩ đều phải hăng hái xung phong thi đua ái quốc.</p> <p><i>Therefore all fellow-countrymen and fighters must enthusiastically be in the vanguard of patriotic emulation.</i></p>	<p><b>Give suggestion: How to</b></p> <p>He gave some suggestions and tasks to do for the different status of his fellows. The suggestions make clear in the task of the different status that Vietnamese people have to do. The clear-cut works that Ho Chi Minh gave to his fellows are one of his writing style that might be easy to understand. In addition, he shows results of each task so that his addressees could know that what the beneficial thing</p>
¶ 32	<p>Các chiến sĩ phải thi đua diệt nhiều giặc, cướp nhiều súng, lập nhiều công.</p> <p><i>Fighters must compete to wipe out aggressors, to rob many guns, and to establish many labours.</i></p>	
¶ 33	<p>Đồng bào phải thi đua tăng gia sản xuất, giết giặc đói, giết giặc dốt, giúp sức giết giặc ngoại xâm. Các cán bộ phải thi đua thực hành Cần, Kiệm, Liêm, Chính, tẩy sạch khuyết điểm, phát triển ưu điểm. Ta ngày càng đoàn kết,</p>	

	<p>ngày càng “thực túc, binh cường”, thì địch nhất định thua, ta nhất định thắng.</p> <p><i>Fellow-countrymen must compete to increase production, eliminate starvation, eliminate illiteracy, and destroy the aggressors who invade us. Cadres must compete in industrial implement, thrift, honesty, righteousness, wiping out mistakes, and developing their good points. If we are more and more united, more and more strong army with enough foods for them, the enemy is certain to lose but we are certain to win.</i></p>	of their works.
¶ 34	<p>Trường kỳ kháng chiến nhất định thắng lợi !</p> <p><i>A long war of resistance is certain to win a victory!</i></p>	<p><b>Ho Chi Minh’s motto</b></p> <p>It is Ho Chi Minh’s pattern of writing that he keep giving his mottos based on his ideology to make sure for the strategy and results of the war.</p>
¶ 35	<p>Độc lập, thống nhất nhất định thành công !</p> <p><i>Our unity and independence are certain to succeed.</i></p>	
¶ 36	<p>Chào thân ái và quyết thắng</p> <p><i>Dearly greet and resolve to win the victory</i></p>	<b>The final part of the letter</b>
¶ 37	<p>Chủ tịch nước Việt Nam Dân Chủ Cộng hòa</p> <p><i>The President of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam</i></p>	<b>Addressed the status as the leader of the country</b>
¶ 38	HỒ CHÍ MINH	

### 5.2.2 Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and the stage of interpretation

The interpretation dimension is the correlation and results from the description dimension as presented in 5.2.1. This stage directly deals with the interpreter as an addressee. It is also associated with attitude of the addressee to the texts and characters of the texts. Furthermore, this stage emphasizes the significance of the interpretation which leads to the relationship between text and social interaction.

In this study, the interpretation directly involved the Vietnamese people who took part, lived or had experience during the war time because they are the direct addressees of the letters. Therefore, they are the real interpreter of these letters. It is necessary for the interpreter to have the direct experience in the interpretation. For the interpretation, it cannot replace the feeling as a person who had directly experienced. It has many elements that the people used for the interpretation. In this regard, the social context in Vietnam is the crucial element of the interpretation. The Vietnamese in various occupation and tasks during the war time were the interviewees completing the questionnaire (see the question in appendix C). They are the people who are between 70-90 years old (see more in appendix B). From the interviewing, there are two main results from the questionnaire. Firstly, it is the opinion over the Ho Chi Minh language use and his style from his letter. Secondly, it is the other factors which are not related to the use of language e.g. the attitude to President Ho and the concept of patriotism. The other factors which are not related to the use of language will be proposed in 5.2.3 Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric in the explanation dimension.

Ho Chi Minh's language use and his style is interpreted as the instrument of the war as Thang, 89 years old, the Confucianism intellectual, said that '*...the Appeals of Ho Chi Minh were the instrument that lead to the participation of the Vietnamese people...*'. He interpreted Ho Chi Minh's letters as the instrument to shape the Vietnamese, it implies the power of his rhetoric as they could make the Vietnamese people took part in the war. In addition, President Ho's letters are the media to suggest and to guide the Vietnamese about the ways or tasks that they can help their country. Tuan, 83 years old a member of the People's army during 1945-1954, said that

*‘...Uncle Ho shaped the Vietnamese to follow his strategies. I think that I were a fighter at that time. I followed him because he was my good leader and I agreed the way he suggested to liberate for our country. I think his letters are clear for us to know what we should do. His letters gave us know our tasks to do for the resistance...’*. The utterance from Khai, 84 years old, a trader during the war time, reveals that he interpreted Ho Chi Minh’s letters as the pattern or guideline to participate in defending the Vietnamese’s country as *‘...I think I was a person without power. Although I hoped to save my country but I could not do it. I just thought that I might have to fight in the rear as the best way to defend my country because I loved my homeland. Ho Chi Minh made me realized that I could help my country in one way. His letters were guidance for the Vietnamese knew the way to help their country...’*. The supportive reason that the Vietnamese followed his rhetoric because they think that all letters are the guideline for them as Nam, 90 years old, a peasant and a fighter in the rear during the war time, also said that *‘...I heartily followed President Ho’s policies and strategies because I thought it was the way to liberate my fatherland...’* Therefore, Ho Chi Minh’s letters are interpreted as the instrument of the resistance to shape the Vietnamese people took part in the war by all-sided and all-level.

As for his language style, there are three main opinions from the interviewees: his relevant language use, the use of easy language, and the use of expressive language. They interpreted all Ho Chi Minh’s language style is the crucial factor persuading his addressees believe in him. The examples of the Vietnamese opinion is shown as follows.

The remarkable of president Ho’s language use could touch upon the Vietnamese soldiers and people as Dung, 73 years old , a student during the war time, said that *‘...I passed a special feeling to Uncle Ho, which I called him because he made me felt that I was his grandchild. Even though I didn’t know a historical situation at that time because I was a child. Therefore, I just thought the way that how I do against the aggressors, and those ways that I followed were the ways that uncle Ho guided all his grandchildren to do which helped our parents and adults, and paid a lot of attention to study.* It proposes by using the kinship addressee term can touch the

Vietnamese feeling as they are the member of his family. It highlights the closed relationship between him and his people that did not distinguish the position and social status even he had a status as president. This style could touch the Vietnamese feeling as Tuan, 83 years old, a member in the People's Army during 1945-1954, said *"...Uncle Ho called us as brother. It seemed I was the member in his family. This could encourage me as I thought I had a warmly emotion that he did not distinguish himself from us and he wanted to step along with us. That led me to struggle vigorously..."*.

Since these mottos which are clear and easy to understand and remember made the Vietnamese determined and recognized to follow their President. Khai, a person, 84 years old worked as a trader during the war time, narrated *'...President Ho used an simple language to talk with his people. At that time (,) his motto 'All people resist foreign aggression, complete resistance' made me recognized to participate in the war by supporting all stuffs to our army. He made me determine that I was one people who loved my country and I could support my nation in various ways not only go to the rear...'*. Furthermore, his language style that largely used as the cause-reason could make his addressees realize that his rhetoric are believable as Van's utterance, 80 years old who was a soldier in the Dien Bien Phu battlefield in 1954, said that *'...the logical rhetoric of President Ho made me agree with him. As I am a ordinary people who did not have power but my heart wanted to help my country. How could I do? He is (was) the lightning of the Vietnamese people. His speeches made me knew that I could help my country in the way of normal person...'*. The special language style on choosing the suitable words, short words, easy words is the character that was the component to his people make the decision as Hien (assumed name), 82 years old, a civil servant during 1950-1954 said that *'...He use the popular language. What do I mean?I meant that he could choose the language that everybody can understand. Regardless literacy or illiteracy people were understand his rhetoric...'*.

Furthermore, some of the Vietnamese narrated his feeling with President Ho's strong oration which he illustrates that it can encourage and arouse Vietnamese people. They try participate in the war in all strategies following President Ho's

rhetoric even during a time of great difficulties in Vietnam as he said “...*Following President Ho’s Declaration, I thought nothing was more precious than independence and freedom, and no one in the countries all over the world could be equal with my President Ho ...When I listened to his speech, it touched on my heart and all the Vietnamese went to struggle in the war...*”, Thê Vãn, 86 years old, a messenger worked for the Vietnamese government during 1946-1950, narrated on the occasion of the sixtieth anniversary of the Appeal for National Resistance. From The Van’s responses, The Van’s responses indicates that Ho Chi Minh’s words encouraged and touched his fellows to participate in the war.

The style of Ho Chi Minh’s language could make his fellows in all strata understand his thought. During that time, the Vietnamese have a social problem of the illiteracy, but his language is understandable. He could present all issues to make his addressees understand. As Yen, 78 years old, a peasant and supporter for the rear on Cao Bang battlefield said that ‘...*President Ho is the novelists. He knew how to use the suitable language. I am a farmer. I do not know how to write at that time, his speeches made me understand all he wanted to say...*’. Additionally, it supports more that regardless the different age and gender are not the obstacle to Ho Chi Minh to communicate with his people as Lan, 79 years old, a woman soldier in the Vietnamese National Army during 1953-1954, said that ‘...*I was a student at that time. Uncle Ho used simple words to understand. He made me realized that I could fight even though I am a woman. I have my way to fight...*’. He used the language as an instrument to give credit to his people as they are the glorious fighter. This concept can encourage his addressees as Doi, 80 years old, a cadre during 1949-1954 and a soldier in the People’s Army during 1950-1954 said that ‘...*he made me proud in myself. The history of our homeland made me proud as I could be a hero who sacrificed for the nation. He called us as ‘heros of the country’. That was my pride.*’.

The interpretation from the Vietnamese addressees during the war time has various opinions but they share the similar opinion. It can conclude in the stage of interpretation as president Ho’s rhetoric during this war time could shape in whole of

the Vietnamese to follow his strategies. This shows that Ho Chi Minh's language use had power to the Vietnamese during this war time.

### 5.2.3 Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric in the stage of explanation

The explanation refers the correlation of texts as the description dimension, interpretation dimension and social context. In this study, it refers to the explanation dimension that the inter-relation between Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric, the interpretation of the Vietnamese addressees. These lead the explanation dimension. The explanation stage consists of social context of Vietnam and other factors that have an effect on the interaction to the resistance. It is other factors that concern with the decision of the interpretation and the text production.

The general elements that support the interpretation of the Vietnamese people except the letters are separated into the personal relationship and feeling with President Ho Chi Minh, and the social attitude and situation. The Under the Vietnamese social context during the war time is one of the factors which had more a power to make a decision for the Vietnamese struggle. It means the necessity to save the country as the patriots lead to the Vietnamese made a decision to take part and to follow Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric. Furthermore, their own direct experience, the liberation for the country and feeling under the rule of the French colonialists are the other factors that can be explained as the elements of the Vietnamese interaction. The explanation dimension in this study is the broadest dimension of the elements of the Vietnamese resistance. It is the basis of the description stage and the interpretation stage. The description dimension that is directly related to Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric have the background from these general elements. President Ho produced his letters because of the hope that it would be appeal his fellows to be responsible for the resistance. In the interpretation dimension, Ho's letters are an component of the decision of the interpreter.

As the decision of the interpreters, another crucial factor for their decision is their personal feeling with President Ho as their leader. The admiration, praise and

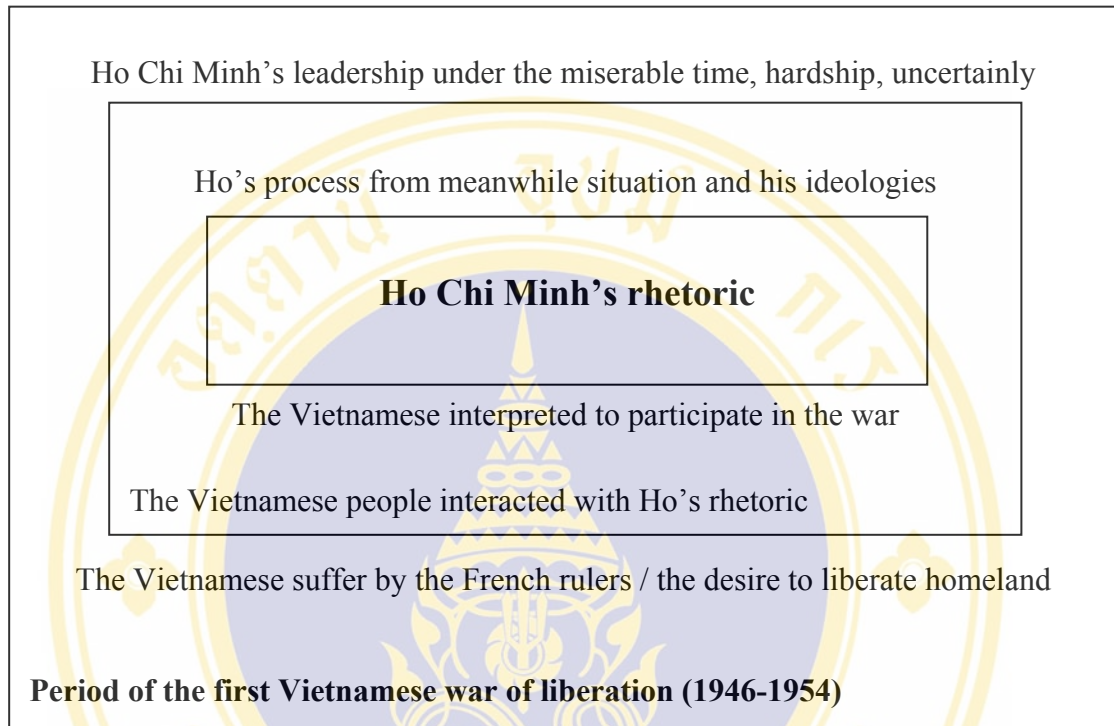
belief in their leader lead the Vietnamese people trust in his rhetoric. It is a particular idea that they agree with their leader in the sense of the liberation and the logical process following his rhetoric which is the supportive factor to the Vietnamese decision.

### **5.3 MACRO LEVEL**

At a macro level it analyzes on the broadest frame of the relationship between the micro level, interaction as the result of the micro level, and the context of the situation. In this study, the analysis was made to Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric as a social practice in the first Vietnamese war of liberation. His rhetoric and the social situation have the interrelation. They have the effect on mutually between both the rhetorical process, the Vietnamese interpretation, and the situation as the context of the society in Vietnamese society.

This section is divided into two main parts. They consist of the general analysis of the macro level of all Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and the first Vietnamese war of liberation and an example from his rhetoric by using text I Appeal for national resistance.

### 5.3.1 The relation of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric, and context as a social practice in the Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954)



**Figure 5-3: Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric as text, interaction and contexts**

- *Period of the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954) as context* is a general and primary factor leads to the text productions. It is separated into internal factor which is an inner situation and exterior situations. An inner situation is a historical background of struggle for national liberation since ancient time under the rule of Chinese imperialism and the former struggle from French ruler and the crisis in Vietnamese society. The external factor which is the political motivation to liberate their own countries, especially the Third world countries and the achievement from the socialist country e.g, The Union Soviet of Social Republic, The Social Republic of China, and other countries in Southeast Asia, Asia and South Africa.

- *The Vietnamese suffer by the French aggression and desire to liberate homeland as social conditions of interpretation* is a factor of the Vietnamese as an addressee and an interpreter that they decided to participate or fight for their own

freedom and happiness, which were suffered from the French colonialists i.e. starvation, French salvation etc.

- *Ho Chi Minh's leadership under the miserable time, hardship and uncertainly as social conditions of production* is an influence on Ho produced his rhetoric as the president of the country. This is a crucial way to persuade his people to follow him as his endeavor to solve his people's miserable.

- *The Vietnamese interacted with Ho's rhetoric by struggling in the war as interaction* is a result from the Vietnamese after the process of interpretation which agreed with Ho's rhetoric. It leads to their participant in the Vietnamese resistance war.

- *The Vietnamese interpreted to participate in the war as process of interpretation* which is an influence from some factors, i.e. Ho Chi Minh's characteristic which they admired in him. It combines with their patriotic with their nation and effects from their social condition which leads to their decision to take part in the war.

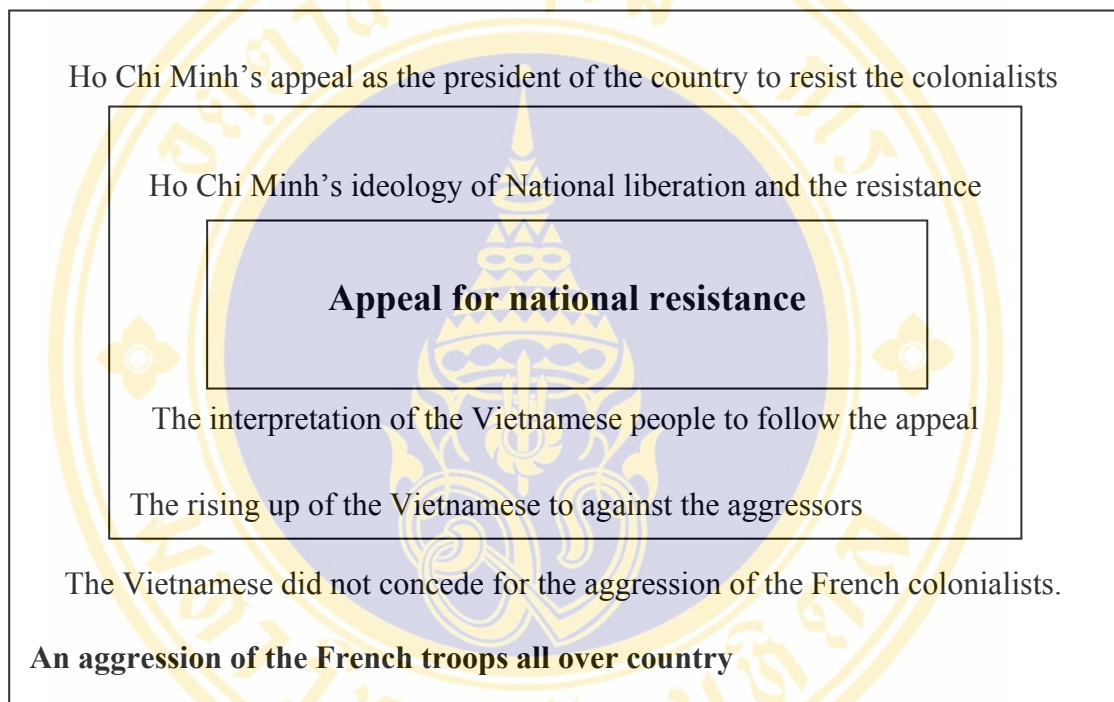
- *Ho's process from meanwhile situation and his ideologies as process of production* is methods of his text production in his strategies in war, mottos, purposes which were a result form each context and his fundamental ideologies i.e. the motto like 'Đoàn kết, đoàn kết, đại đoàn kết (Unity, unity, great unity)'.

- *Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric as text* is a core of the process as it was used as an instrument of the motivation. Ho's rhetoric not only had an influence from the society in the process of text production, but also feedback to the society leading to a social motivation.

In conclusion, the relationship between Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric, the interaction of the Vietnamese to his rhetoric and feedback after they received his rhetoric, and the Vietnamese context are involved one way or another. It proposes that president Ho wrote his rhetoric by using the relationship of social situation and his ideological background. Meanwhile, his rhetoric had feedback to Vietnamese society to shape and

struggle the new Vietnamese society which was motivated by the interaction from the Vietnamese who participated in all strategies of the war.

**5.3.2 Example of the relation of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric, and context as a social practice in the Appeal for national resistance, December 19, 1946 (see more in appendix I, text I)**



**Figure 5-4: Appeal for national resistance as text, interaction and context**

The appeal for national resistance is the crucial rhetoric as it is the first appeal which is the formal appeal of this war. Each element can be analyzed according to the macro level as follows:

- *An aggression of the French troops all over country as context:* From the time that the French colonialists started to invade Vietnam repete-started in the south of Vietnam and after the failure of negotiation between Ho Chi Minh's government and the French Government leded to the breaking up of the war between these two sides.

- *The Vietnamese did not concede for the aggression of their country as social conditions of interpretation:* As the Vietnamese are the fellows of the country, they have the patriotism on their homeland. This is a factor of the interpretation to resist their aggressors. This is the task that they have to do for their own country. Because they realized that they could not be enslaved and lose their homeland, they have only one way to do to reach to their purposes, which is the liberation of their country.

- *Ho Chi Minh's appeal as the president of the country to resist the colonialists as social conditions of production:* As the president of Vietnam, Ho Chi Minh used his status to appeal his fellows. The situation of Vietnam during that time is a reason that Ho Chi Minh had to produce this appeal to arouse his fellows against their aggressors.

- *The rising up of the Vietnamese to against the aggressors as interaction:* The Vietnamese rose up to against the French troops all over country after Ho Chi Minh's appeal. The resistance was spread largely in all area and all the Vietnamese.

- *The interpretation of the Vietnamese people to follow the appeal as process of interpretation:* There are two ways for the interpretation: (1) to resist, and (2) not to resist the French aggressors. The interpretation of the Vietnamese depends on various factors. The appeal is one factor to make a decision. The Vietnamese who participate in the resistance might use their own experience that they suffer from the colonialists and they might agree with the appeal; therefore they decided to participate in the resistance.

- *Ho Chi Minh's ideology of National liberation and the resistance as process of production:* President Ho used his ideology to produce the appeal, using the liberation and the independence of the country as the background of the production. He used the concept of sacrifice and saved the country to propagandize all the Vietnamese to take part in the resistance.

- *The appeal for national resistance as text:* it is the product from all factors. Although it is produced from all factors especially the situation, context and Ho Chi

Minh's ideology, it has the feedback to the Vietnamese society as it could arise the Vietnamese rising up to participate in the resistance by passing the interpretation process. And it is the factors that lead to the interaction of the Vietnamese and the social change from the social motivation in the resistance.



## CHAPTER VI

### CONCLUSION AND DISCUSSION

#### 6.1 Conclusion

This study attempts to show the power of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric in the first Vietnamese war of liberation by employing the CDA framework. This study mainly focuses on the linguistic perspective with its relationship with social context(s). Ho Chi Minh's rhetorical analysis is conducted through two main channels: an analysis of the micro level and that of the macro level. The micro level is concerned with the more delicate linguistic characteristics of Ho's rhetoric, while the macro level focuses on a broader perspective of the explanation of his rhetoric and the social context.

Following the CDA framework, the micro level can be distinguished into three dimensions or stages: description, interpretation, and explanation. The stage of description reveals three levels of linguistic characteristics in his rhetoric: vocabulary, sentence structure, and textual structure.

In the analysis of vocabulary, it is shown how there are various kinds of words that Ho used for his rhetoric:

1. The use of synonyms
2. The use of antonyms
3. The use of nominalization
4. The use of addressee terms: kinship terms; general addressee terms; the discriminated addressee terms; pejorative terms; and the contrary pronoun in the concept of 'we' versus 'enemy'
5. The use of expressive meanings: negative expressive meanings; and positive expressive meanings
6. The use of emphatic particle

7. The use of intensify adverb
8. The use of modality ‘must’
9. The use of numeral words
10. The use of reduplication
11. The use of metaphor
12. The use of ideological struggle: the Chinese ideology; the ideology of independence, unify, and freedom; the concept of peace; the concept of hero; and the concept of unity
13. The use of Vietnamese history
14. The use of Ho Chi Minh’s mottoes:

The selection of words is one of the crucial factors in this analysis. All the different aspects of language in the vocabulary component coalesce to create a strong psychological influence on the Vietnamese. For example, the use of kinship terms reduces the gap between the different status of president and citizens, and the use of Vietnamese history and the concept of the hero cause the Vietnamese to feel valiant and proud.

In the sentence structure, there are many kinds of sentences that he employed in his letters. There are the declarative sentences, imperative sentences, and question sentences. The specific style of Ho’s language use in the sentence structure is the reduplication. It plays a role in highlighting the content that he wants to intensify. It enables the addressees to immediately grasp the important points that he is trying to convey.

In the textual level, it is proposed that President Ho’s textual structure focuses on the principle of rationality. His letters draw the link between causes and results and also tie in to his suggestions on what to do. He also uses the question – answer structure to highlight what he wants to explain. Again, his use of this form of textual structure enables the addressees to easily understand the points that he puts across.

The analysis of interpretation shows the opinion and interpretation of Vietnamese fellows who were present during the time of the war. They played a role as interpreters who were a part of the Vietnamese movement. They also could speak with the knowledge of people who have themselves taken part in the war. Interviews with them were most informative as this researcher is not a native Vietnamese speaker. The interviewees describe the important role of President Ho's rhetoric as a media or an instrument that activates their resistance. They also point out how his language style is clear and understandable for all Vietnamese. Additionally, his speech gave much reason to participate in the war that is the patriotic feelings to liberate their homeland.

In the stage of explanation, it proposes other factors that are apart from textual analysis that also play a role in contributing to the power of Ho's rhetoric. In spite of Ho's rhetoric and his language use that induced Vietnamese countrymen to battle for their liberation, a crucial factor supporting the power of his rhetoric was also the admiration, sacrifice and faithfulness of the Vietnamese towards him.

Through the macro lens, it is shown that social situations can be affected by correlating factors both internal and external, where social context is an important factor in discourse because the text or rhetoric is always produced in conjunction with the social situation at a point of time. In this case, how Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric served as the fuse lit against the French oppressive rule, indicate the characteristics of Ho Chi Minh's language use that played a role in influencing the Vietnamese to take part in the war.

Ho Chi Minh is a man of history as well as a history maker through his rhetoric. He used his rhetoric as an instrument of political motivation. The Vietnamese countrymen wholly rose up and opposed the French because they thought that it was the best way to eradicate their suffering and oppression, and saw how they could possibly obtain their own independence and freedom by following the suggestions of Ho's rhetoric.

Thus, it is proposed that changing social situations affect the relations between context as an impulse to produce texts (discourses) and language as an instrument of power and media in convincing the Vietnamese to take part in the war.

In conclusion, the study answers three research questions: what are the discourse strategies found in Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric? ; How did his speeches shape the Vietnamese to participate in the war?; and what were the internal and external factors that influenced Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and the Vietnamese rebellion? As shown below:

### **1. What are the discourse strategies found in Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric?**

The significant language strategies in Ho's political discourse lead to political motivation and social change. Although the leaders had their own individual style and language strategies with dissimilative purposes, they purposefully sought to convince their addressees follow their discourse. It reveals the power of discourse that is related to language strategies (Parker: 1992). In the case of Vietnam during the first Vietnamese war of liberation, President Ho Chi Minh used his rhetoric as a crucial factor to convince the Vietnamese to powerfully oppose the French during the eight-year war (DeCaro: 2003, Mai: 2002, Pham: 2006). The special characteristics of his language strategies were the use of basic words and short sentences, making the written text easy to understand, and directing his addresses specific groups of people, i.e., countrymen, fighters, cadres, with certain purposes (Cu: 1973, Le: 1960). As such, his rhetoric is known by the Vietnamese to result in effective outcomes. The discourse strategies of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric are shown in more detail in the stage of description in the analytical part of the paper.

### **2. How did his speeches shape the Vietnamese to participate in the war?**

His speeches attempt to describe the process and outcome of political motivation leading to a social change. In addition, they illustrate the dialectical relationship of discourse which is produced by the society and has an effect on society

(Fairclough: 2000, 2003). In the case of Vietnam, the study shows the dialectical relationship using Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric in the First Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954 A.D.), especially the rhetoric which aimed to inspire and to drive the people against their aggressors by following his war strategies towards the victory over the French forces at the Dien Bien Phu battle field. Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric shaped the Vietnamese to participate in this war of resistance using various means e.g. the war strategy to increase production to support the front, delineating the different responsibilities of all the Vietnamese from young to old, men to women, all the while not separating religions and statuses.

### **3. What were the internal and external factors that influenced Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric and Vietnamese rebellion?**

Although the result was a combination of complicated factors, the development of social motivation can be broadly related to two kinds of factors: internal factors and external factors (Fairclough: 2000). Internal factors are the interior contexts in the society that influence the text production. The Vietnamese motivation during the war had a huge amount of internal factors that led Ho Chi Minh to produce his rhetoric. External factors are exterior contexts outside a society that have an influence on text production (Fairclough: 1989). The external situation after World War II and the liberation from colonialism motivation in many countries is one cause of Ho Chi Minh's text production. Furthermore, the successful revolutions in The Union of Soviet Socialist Republics – USSR, and the People's Republic of China – PRC, are examples that led President Ho to convince the Vietnamese countrymen to oppose against the French colonialists.

## **6.2 Discussion**

The relationship between language and social contexts cannot be clearly distinguished from each other, because discourse as language does not have meaning per se – it is the social context that the discourse is set in that gives it meaning. Meanwhile the society is concomitantly shaped and changed by discourse that is

produced within it. It is proposed that language is an instrument in the process of social change or social motivation; and that social contexts are also the most important factor of discourse production.

In the case of Vietnam during the first Vietnamese war of liberation (1946-1954), President Ho Chi Minh produced many rhetoric to shape and encourage Vietnamese fellows – regardless of the differences in age, gender, social status and religion. He succeeded in using his rhetoric to shape the Vietnamese people to follow his various strategies e.g. to destroy, to resist, to shape a new society by eliminating illiteracy and starvation by using the motto ‘patriotic emulation’, etc. He tried to focus his rhetoric on all the Vietnamese strata. The Vietnamese believed and followed him not only because of his rhetoric but also because they admired and had confidence in their president, him being their role model and transparent leader. Furthermore, some of the Vietnamese gave the opinion that it was not only president Ho’s personal characteristics that was the reason for their participation in the war but also the way that he evoked patriotic feelings in the populace. Therefore, in this case Ho Chi Minh’s rhetoric can be interpreted as an instrument to arouse and to guide the way to resistance.

This study uses the CDA framework to focus on an explanation of the relationship between Ho Chi Minh’s rhetoric and the social situation in Vietnam. It also attempts to propose the correlation between language and society – that language is a media of the interaction with society. The study is different from other studies in the linguistic field because it not only shows an analysis of pure linguistics - words, grammar, and text structure – but also shows the correlation between language and social motivation. The CDA framework contributes to this study as a broad explanation of political movement. It identifies the significant role of language that is related to society as Ho’s rhetoric plays a role to reflect Vietnamese society during the war.

This study also supports the Ho Chi Minh’s language style. However, there are some aspects of language analysis that CDA framework does not refer to e.g. kinship

terms, emphatic particles, intensifying adverbs and the use of ideological and historical words. These are the specific characteristics that occur in Vietnamese language and they play an important role in terms of the power of language. As the power of language is related to the characteristics of language use, these language aspects have deeply-founded origins in Vietnamese society. Therefore, the study shows more aspects that are absent in the CDA framework.

### **6.3 Recommendations for further studies**

As for further studies, this study can further develop into four main issues. The focus might still be on Ho Chi Minh and his rhetoric in various perspectives. The further studies are suggested as follows:

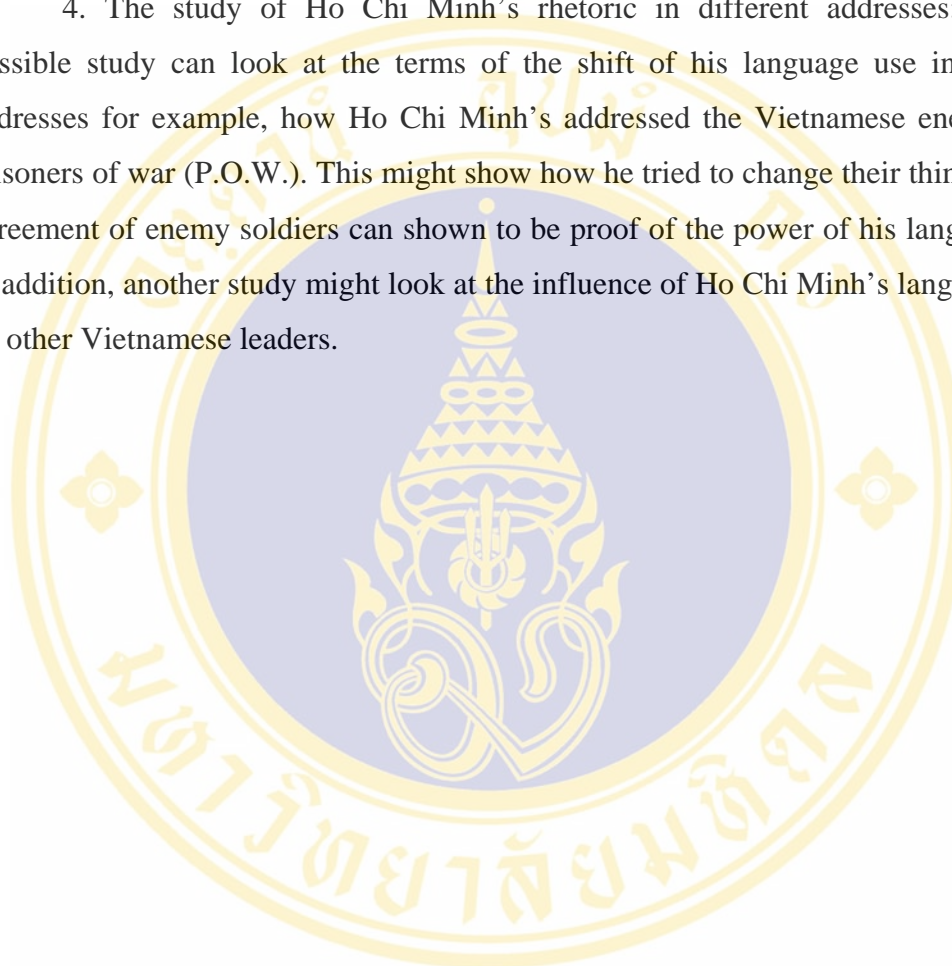
1. The study of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric in other periods of his lifetime: Ho Chi Minh wrote many rhetoric during his lifetime. The chronological study of his rhetoric might contribute to knowledge about the development of his writing and ideology in each period. The difference of his language style might depend on the social situations in each period.

2. The study of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric by using other frameworks and perspectives: There are other frameworks can be used to analyze his rhetoric in the same period. The different frameworks might contribute to different perspectives e.g. literary framework, historical framework, rhetorical framework, and other linguistic framework on discourse studies.

3. The comparative study of Ho Chi Minh's rhetorical style with other leaders in socialist countries and other communist organizations in the same period: This issue can be divided into two critical elements which is based on the rhetorical style of the leaders. Firstly, it may follow the rhetorical style of other leaders in socialist countries e.g. President Vladimir Ilyich Lenin of the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic (USSR), President Mao Tse Tung of the People's Republic of China, etc. This might show the impact of socialist influences on political rhetoric. Secondly, it may follow

the political movement in the same time, 1945-1954, in other countries that commit to similar communistic ideologies. This might reveal the similarities and differences in language use across dissimilar social contexts.

4. The study of Ho Chi Minh's rhetoric in different addresses: Another possible study can look at the terms of the shift of his language use in different addresses for example, how Ho Chi Minh's addressed the Vietnamese enemies and prisoners of war (P.O.W.). This might show how he tried to change their thinking. The agreement of enemy soldiers can shown to be proof of the power of his language use. In addition, another study might look at the influence of Ho Chi Minh's language style on other Vietnamese leaders.



## BIBLIOGRAPHY

### English sources

- Anderson, L.D. (2005). The Vietnam war. New York: Palgrave Macmillan.
- Archer, J. (1971). Ho Chi Minh: legend of Hanoi. Whistable: Bailey Brothers and Swinfen Ltd.
- Atkins, A. (2002). Critical Discourse Analysis: A letter to expatriates the Rt.Hon.Sir Norman Flower MP- Retrieved February 24, 2006, from <http://www.cels.bham.ac.uk/resources/essays/Andrew%20Atkins%20Assignment%205.pdf>.
- Bell, A. & Garrett, P (Eds.). (1997). Approaches to media discourse. Oxford: Blackwell Publisher Ltd.
- Burman, E. & Parker, I. (1995). Discourse analytic research: Repertoires and readings of texts in action. London: Routledge.
- Chouliaraki, L. & Fairclough, N. (1999). Discourse in late modernity: Rethinking Critical Discourse Analysis. Edinburgh: Edinburgh University Press.
- Colvin, J. (1996). Giap: Volcano under snow. New York: Soho Press Inc.
- Coulthard, C.R. & Coulthard, M. (1996). Texts and Practices Readings in a Critical Discourse Analysis. New York: Routledge.
- DeCaro, A.P. (2003). Rhetoric of revolt: Ho Chi Minh's discourse for revolution. Westport, Conn.: Praeger.
- Derichs, C. & Heberer, T. (Eds.). (2006). The power of ideas: intellectual input and political change in East and Southeast Asia. Copenhagen : NIAS Press.
- Duiker, J.W. (2000). Ho Chi Minh. New York: Hyperion.
- Fairclough, N. (1992). Discourse and social change. Cambridge: Polity Press.
- Fairclough, N. (1989). Language and Power. New York: Longman.
- Fairclough, N. (1995). Critical discourse analysis: papers in the critical study of language. New York: Longman.

- Fairclough, N. (2000). New Labour, New Language?. London: Routledge.
- Fairclough, N. (2003). Analysing discourse : textual analysis for social research. London : Routledge.
- Fairclough, N., Cortese, G. & Ardizzone, P. (Eds.). (2007). Discourse and contemporary social change. Bern, Switzerland: Peter Lang.
- Fenn, C. (1973). Ho Chi Minh: a bibliographical introduction. London: Studio Vista.
- Foucault, M. (1972). The Archaeology of knowledge translated from L'Archéologie du savior by Sheridan Smith, A.M. London: Travistock Publications Limited.
- Foucault, M. (1973). The order of things translated from Les mots et les choses by Gallimard, E. New York: Random house, Inc.
- Gadavani, S. (2002). Discursive Strategies for Political Survival: A Critical Discourse Analysis of Thai No-confidence Debates. Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy: The University of Leeds Department of Linguistics and Phonetics/ POLIS.
- Gardner, H. (2006). Changing minds: the art and science of changing our own and other people's minds. Boston, Massachusetts: Harvard business school press.
- Ghazali, K. (2004). The rhetoric of Dr. Mahathir Mohamad : a critical discourse perspective. Kuala Lumpur: Penerbit Universiti Malaya.
- Goldzweig, R.S. & Patricia, A.S. (Eds.). (2004). New approaches to rhetoric. California: Sage Publication.
- Irving, R.E.M. (1975). The first Indochina war: French and American policy 1945-1954. London: Croom Helm Ltd.
- Jaworski, A., & Coupland N. (2001). The Discourse Reader. New York: Routledge.
- Jordan, E., John. (1965). Using Rhetoric. New York: Harper & Row Publisher, Inc.
- Karnow, S. (1997). Vietnam: A history. New York: Viking.
- Katsiaficas, G. (Ed.). (1992). American and Vietnamese views of the war. New York: M.E. Sharpe, Inc.
- Kovecs, Z. (2002). Metaphor: a practical introduction. New York: Oxford University Press, Inc.
- Le Kinh Lich (Ed.). (2000). The 30-year war 1945-1975 (Volume I: 1945-1975). Hanoi: The Gioi Publisher.

- Levett, A., Kottler, A., Burman, E., & Parker I. (Eds.). (1997). Culture, power, and difference: discourse analysis in South Africa. Southern Africa: University of Cape Town Press (Pty) Ltd.
- Lockhart, G. (1989). Nation in arms: the origins of the People's Army of Vietnam. North Sydney: Allen & Unwin Australia Pty Ltd.
- Macdonald, P. (1993). Giap: The victor in Vietnam. New York: W.W.Norton & Company.
- Mai, L.Q. (2002). The 30-year war (volume I: 1945-1954). Hanoi: The gioi Publishers.
- Ministry of National Defense, Institute of Military History (2006). Hồ Chí Minh Thought on the Military. Hà Nội: Thế giới Publishers.
- Moon, R. (2006). Introducing Metaphor. New York: Routledge.
- Ninh, K.N.B. (2002). A world transformed: the politics of culture in revolutionary Vietnam, 1945-1965. Michigan: The University of Michigan Press.
- Nguyen, K.V. (1971). Vision accomplished? : The enigma of Ho Chi Minh. Toronto: The Macmillan Company.
- Nguyen, K.V. (1975a). The long resistance war. Hanoi: Foreign Languages Publishing house.
- Nguyen, K.V. (1975b). Tradition and revolution in Vietnam. Washington: The Indochina Resource Center.
- Osborne, M. (1982). Ho Chi Minh. Queensland: University of Queensland Press.
- Parker, I. (1992). Discourse dynamics: Critical analysis for social and individual Psychology. London: Routledge.
- Penny, A. (2001). Critical applied linguistics: A critical introduction. Mahwah, N.J.: L. Erlbaum.
- Pham, V.D. (2006). Hồ Chí Minh : a man, a nation, an age, and a cause. Hanoi: The gioi publishers.
- Phillips, L. & Jorgensen, W.M. (2002). Discourse Analysis as Theory and Method. England: London.
- Phillips, N. & Hardy, C. (2002). Discourse analysis: investigating processes of social construction. California: Sage Publications, Inc.

- Sarangi, S. & Coulthard, M. (Eds.). (2000). Discourse and social life. Harlow, Eng.: Pearson Education Limited.
- Short, A. (1989). The origins of the Vietnam war. New York: Longman Inc.
- Srichampa, S. (2006). Vietnamese Propaganda Reflections from 1945-2000. Paper Presented at 1<sup>st</sup> World Congress on “The Power of Language”. Bangkok, Thailand.
- Taylor K.W., & Whitmore K.J. (Eds.). (1995). Essays into Vietnamese pasts. New York: Cornell Southeast Asia Program.
- The Commission for Research on Party History (CRPH) (1995). Ho Chi Minh: The men who made a nation. Hanoi: The gioi Publishers.
- Toolan, M. (Ed.). (2002). Critical Discourse Analysis (Critical Concepts in Linguistics) Vol. I Precursors and Inspirations. New York: Routledge.
- Toolan, M. (Ed.). (2002). Critical Discourse Analysis (Critical Concepts in Linguistics) Vol.II Leading advocates. New York: Routledge.
- Toolan, M. (Ed.). (2002). Critical Discourse Analysis (Critical Concepts in Linguistics) Vol.III Concurrent analyses and critiques. New York: Routledge.
- Toolan, M. (Ed.). (2002). Critical Discourse Analysis (Critical Concepts in Linguistics) Vol.IV Current debates and new directions. New York: Routledge.
- Van Dijk, A.T. (1998). Discourse as structure and process. London: Sage Publications Ltd.
- Waller, L. (2006). Introducing Fairclough’s Critical Discourse Analysis methodology for analyzing Caribbean social problems: Going beyond social practices. Journal of diplomatic language- Retrieved March 5, 2007, from <http://www.jdlonline.org/IIIWaller.html>
- Willmott, W. E. (1971). Thoughts on Ho Chi Minh [Electronic version]. Pacific Affairs, 44(4), 585-590.
- Wodak, R. & Chilton, P. (Eds.). (2005). A new agenda in (Critical) Discourse Analysis : Theory, methodology and interdisciplinarity. Amsterdam: John Benjamins Publishing.
- Wodak, R. & Meyer, M. (Eds.). (2001). Methods of Critical Discourse Analysis. London: SAGE Publications Ltd.

Woodside, B.A. (1976). Community and revolution in modern Vietnam. Boston:

Houghton Mifflin Company.

Young, L. & Fitzgerald, B. (2006). The power of language: How discourse influences society. London: Equinox Publishing Ltd.

### Thai sources

เขียน ธีระวิทย์. (2542). เวียดนาม สังคม เศรษฐกิจ ความมั่นคง การเมือง และการต่างประเทศ.

กรุงเทพฯ: สถาบันเอเชียศึกษา จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย.

เชิดเกียรติ อัครถาวร. (2540). ขบวนการคอมมิวนิสต์เวียดนาม. กรุงเทพฯ: โรงพิมพ์มหาวิทยาลัย  
ธรรมศาสตร์.

ัญญาทิพย์ ศรีพนา. (2548). เหวียด เกี่ยว ในประเทศไทยกับความสัมพันธ์ไทย-เวียดนาม.

กรุงเทพฯ: ศรีบูรณะคอมพิวเตอร์-การพิมพ์.

บัดดินเจอร์, โจเซฟ. (2522). ประวัติศาสตร์การเมืองเวียดนาม. แปลจาก *Vietnam: A Political History*. โดย เพ็ชรี สุมิตร. กรุงเทพฯ: มูลนิธิโครงการตำราสังคมศาสตร์และมนุษยศาสตร์.

แบสตัน, จอห์น และแฮร์รี เจ เบนดา. (2529). ประวัติศาสตร์เอเชียตะวันออกเฉียงใต้สมัยใหม่:

ลัทธิอาณานิคม ลัทธิชาตินิยม และการสลายตัวของอาณานิคม. แปลจาก *A History of*

*Modern Southeast Asia: Colonialism, Nationalism, and Decolonization*. โดย

ชื่นจิตต์ อ่ำไพพรรณ และภรณี กาญจนันธุ์จิตติ. กรุงเทพฯ: มูลนิธิโครงการตำราสังคมศาสตร์  
และมนุษยศาสตร์.

วารินทร์ สิ้นสูงสุด และ ปารวตี วรุณจิต(แปล). (2535). บันทึกโฮจิมินห์ในคุกจีน. กรุงเทพฯ: มิตร  
สยาม.

วินัย คุณอุดม. (2534). โฮจิมินห์. นนทบุรี: สถาบันวิทยาศาสตร์สังคม.

วิลาส มณีวัต. (2544). ลุงโฮ. กรุงเทพฯ: ดอกหญ้า.

ศุขปรีดา พนมยงค์. (2549). โฮจิมินห์ เทพเจ้าผู้ยังมีลมหายใจ. กรุงเทพฯ: สำนักพิมพ์มิ่งมิตร.

สุด จอนเจดสิน. (2544). ประวัติศาสตร์เวียดนามตั้งแต่สมัยอาณานิคมฝรั่งเศสถึงปัจจุบัน.

กรุงเทพฯ: โครงการเผยแพร่ผลงานวิชาการ คณะอักษรศาสตร์ จุฬาลงกรณ์มหาวิทยาลัย.

โสภณา ศรีจำปา. (2545). ไวยากรณ์ภาษาเวียดนาม. กรุงเทพฯ : โครงการอาณานิคมศึกษา 5

ภูมิภาค ศูนย์มานุษยวิทยาสิรินธร.

เหิงยีน, ดักเวียณ. (2545). เวียณนาม: ประวัติศาสตร์ฉบับพิสดาร. แปลจาก *Vietnam: A Long History*. โดย เพ็ชรี สุมิตร. กรุงเทพฯ: มุลนิธิโครงการตำราสังคมศาสตร์และมนุษยศาสตร์.

### Vietnamese sources

Cù Đình Tú. (1973). Tìm hiểu cách Hồ chủ tịch giảng giải các khái niệm cho quần chúng. Tap chí ngôn ngữ, 2(1973), 32-36 .

Đào Thản & Hoàng Văn Hành. (1970). Những nét đặc sắc trong ngôn ngữ của Hồ Chủ tịch. Tap chí ngôn ngữ, 3(1970), 4-10.

Đào Thị Diễm (Chủ biên). (2004). Chiến tranh Đông Dương qua tiếng nói của binh lính Pháp. Hà Nội: Nhà xuất bản quân đội nhân dân.

Lê Anh Trà. (1960). Cách viết của Hồ Chủ tịch. Tap chí Nghiên cứu văn học, 5(1960), 28-38.

Lê Mậu Hãn, Trần Bả Đệ & Nguyễn Văn Thư (Chủ biên). (2006). Đại cương lịch sử Việt Nam (Tập III). Hà Nội: Nhà xuất bản giáo dục.

Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn, tập 4(1945-1946). Hà Nội: Nhà Xuất Bản Chính trị Quốc gia.

Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn, tập 5(1947-1949). Hà Nội: Nhà Xuất Bản Chính trị Quốc gia.

Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn, tập 6(1950-1952). Hà Nội: Nhà Xuất Bản Chính trị Quốc gia.

Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn, tập 7(1953-1954). Hà Nội: Nhà Xuất Bản Chính trị Quốc gia.

Lê Xuân Thai. (1970). Câu văn của bác Hồ. Tap chí ngôn ngữ, 4(1970), 27-35.

Nguyễn Phan Cảnh. (1965). Ngôn ngữ của Hồ Chủ tịch qua những lời kêu gọi. Tap chí văn học, 6(1965), 13-23.

Nguyễn Tố Uyên. (2004). Việt Nam Những sự kiện lịch sử. Hà Nội: Nhà xuất bản giáo dục.

Phạm Văn Phú. (1970). Lý thuyết thông tin và ngôn ngữ của bác Hồ. Tap chí ngôn ngữ, 3(1970), 11-15.

Trần Dân Tiên. (1970). Những mẩu chuyện về đời hoạt động của Hồ Chủ tịch. Hà

Nội: Nhà xuất bản văn học.

Viện Ngôn ngữ học. (1970). Một số ý kiến của Hồ Chủ tịch về chữ quốc ngữ và tiếng

Việt. Tap chí ngôn ngữ, 3(1970), 1-3.

Viện Ngôn ngữ học. (1980). Học tập phong cách ngôn ngữ Chủ tịch Hồ Chí Minh. Hà

Nội: Nhà xuất bản khoa học xã hội.





## APPENDIX A

### HO CHI MINH'S RHETORIC

#### TEXT 1

<b>LỜI</b> word	<b>KÊU GỌI</b> appeal	<b>TOÀN QUỐC</b> the whole country	<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN<sup>1</sup></b> resist(against foreign aggression)
--------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------------------	--

#### APPEAL FOR NATIONAL RESISTANCE

(1)	<b>Hỡi</b> exhortative particle <i>Fellow-countrymen throughout the country!</i>	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman/compatriot	<b>toàn quốc!</b> the whole country
(2)	<b>Chúng ta</b> we <b>phải</b> must <b>càng</b> the more... <b>càng</b> the more... <b>quyết tâm</b> be resolved <b>lần</b> time	<b>muốn</b> want <b>nhân nhượng.</b> make concessions <b>nhân nhượng,</b> make concessions <b>lấn tới,</b> encroach <b>cướp</b> plunder <b>nữa!</b> more	<b>hoà bình,</b> peace <b>Nhưng</b> But <b>thực dân</b> colinialist <b>vì</b> because <b>nước</b> country <b>chúng ta</b> we <b>chúng ta</b> we <b>Pháp</b> French <b>chúng</b> they <b>ta</b> our

*If we desire peace, we have to make concessions. But the more concessions we make, the more encroachments the French colonialists resort to because they are resolved to plunder our country one more time!*

(3)	<b>Không!</b> NEG. <b>tất cả,</b> whole <b>chịu</b> concede <b>không</b> NEG.	<b>Chúng ta</b> we <b>chứ</b> and/but (with negative) <b>mất</b> lose <b>chịu</b> concede	<b>thà</b> rather <b>nhất định</b> absolutely certain <b>nước,</b> country <b>làm</b> be	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice <b>không</b> NEG. <b>nhất định</b> absolutely certain <b>nô lệ.</b> slave
-----	--	--	---	---

<sup>1</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 4 (1945-1946) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 4 (1945-1946)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.480-481.

## Text 1 Appeal for National Resistance (Cont.)

*No! We would rather sacrifice everything than lose our country and be enslaved.*

- |     |  |   |  |   |
|-----|--|---|--|---|
| (4) | <b>Hỡi</b><br>exhortative particle<br><i>Fellow-countrymen!</i>  | <b>đồng bào!</b><br>fellow-countryman/compatriot  |  |   |
| (5) | <b>Chúng ta</b><br>we<br><i>We have to rise up !</i>   | <b>phải</b><br>must   | <b>đứng lên!</b><br>rise up  |   |
| (6) | <b>Bất kỳ</b><br>regardless<br><b>người già,</b><br>old people<br><b>tôn giáo,</b><br>religious<br><b>là</b><br>be<br><b>phải</b><br>must<br><b>Pháp</b><br>French<br><b>Ai</b><br>who<br><b>súng.</b><br>gun<br><b>dùng</b><br>use<br><b>gươm</b><br>sword<br><b>thuông,</b><br>hoe<br><b>phải</b><br>must<br><b>Pháp</b><br>French | <b>đàn ông,</b><br>man<br><b>người trẻ,</b><br>young people<br><b>đảng phái,</b><br>parties(in general)<br><b>người</b><br>people<br><b>đứng lên</b><br>rise up<br><b>để</b><br>for<br><b>có</b><br>have<br><b>Ai</b><br>who<br><b>gươm,</b><br>sword<br><b>thì</b><br>then<br><b>gậy gộc.</b><br>stick and cane<br><b>ra sức</b><br>strive<br><b>cứu</b><br>save | <b>đàn bà,</b><br>woman<br><b>không</b><br>NEG.<br><b>dân tộc.</b><br>race<br><b>Việt Nam</b><br>Vietnamese<br><b>đánh</b><br>strike/hit<br><b>cứu</b><br>save<br><b>súng</b><br>gun<br><b>có</b><br>have<br><b>không</b><br>NEG.<br><b>dùng</b><br>use<br><b>Ai</b><br>who<br><b>chống</b><br>resist<br><b>nước.</b><br>country | <b>bất kỳ</b><br>regardless<br><b>chia</b><br>distinguish<br><b>Hễ</b><br>whoever<br><b>thì</b><br>then<br><b>thực dân</b><br>colonialist<br><b>Tổ quốc.</b><br>fatherland<br><b>dùng</b><br>use<br><b>gươm</b><br>sword<br><b>có</b><br>have<br><b>cuốc,</b><br>mattock<br><b>cũng</b><br>also<br><b>thực dân</b><br>colonialist |

*Regardless of whether you are men, women, old or young people, is without distinction of divide into religious groups, parties or races. Anyone who is Vietnamese has to rise up and fight against the oppressive rules of the French to save our nation. People who have guns use guns, people who have swords use swords. If you don't have swords use mattocks, hoes, sticks and canes. Everyone must strive to resist the oppressive rules of the French to save our country.*

## Text 1 Appeal for National Resistance (Cont.)

- (7) **Hỡi anh em binh sĩ, tự vệ, dân quân!**  
Exhortative particle brothers soldiers self-defence force  
militiaman  
*Soldiers, self-defence forces, militiamen!*
- (8) **Giờ cứu nước đã đến. Ta phải hy sinh giọt máu cuối cùng, để giữ gìn đất nước.**  
time save country ASP.: past action: already  
arrive we must sacrifice  
arrive drop blood last  
for preserve homeland  
*The time to save our country has arrived. We have to sacrifice to the last drop of blood to preserve our homeland.*
- (9) **Dù phải gian lao kháng chiến, nhưng với một lòng nhất định kiên quyết hy sinh, thắng lợi nhất định về dân tộc ta!**  
even if must gruelling resist  
but with one heart  
determine sacrifice win a victory positively  
about nation our  
*Even if our resistance is gruelling, with one heart we are determined to sacrifice. Determination will bring victory for our nation!*
- (10) **Việt Nam độc lập và thống nhất muôn năm!**  
Vietnam independent and unify  
long live  
*Long live independent and unified Vietnam!*
- (11) **Kháng chiến thắng lợi muôn năm!**  
resist victory long live  
*Long live victory through resistance!*
- (12) **Hà Nội, ngày 19 tháng 12 năm 1946**  
Hanoi day 19 month 12 year 1946  
*Hanoi, on 19 December 1946*
- (13) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**

## Text 1 Appeal for National Resistance (Cont.)

- |      |  |                             |                  |                           |
|------|--|-----------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|
| (14) | <b>Bút tích</b><br>autograph           | <b>lưu</b><br>detain        | <b>tại</b><br>at | <b>Bảo tàng</b><br>museum |
|      | <b>Cách mạng</b><br>revolution         | <b>Việt Nam.</b><br>Vietnam |                  |                           |
|      | <i>Autograph at Revolution museum.</i> |                             |                  |                           |





## Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist (Cont.)

<b>cướp</b> rob	<b>hết</b> all	<b>ruộng nương</b> fields and gardens	<b>của cải</b> wealth
<b>ta.</b> our	<b>Chúng</b> they	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future action: will	<b>khủng bố</b> impose a reign of terror
<b>chém giết</b> massacre	<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>bà con</b> relatives	<b>ta.</b> our
<b>Chúng</b> they	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future action: will	<b>đốt phá</b> burn and destroy	<b>nhà cửa</b> house
<b>đền</b> temple	<b>chùa</b> pagoda	<b>ta.</b> our	<b>Đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman
<b>thử</b> try	<b>xem</b> look at	<b>Hà Nội,</b> Hanoi	<b>Hải Phòng</b> Hai Phong
<b>thì</b> then	<b>rõ.</b> clear		

*They will take our citizens for their coolies and armies, to pay taxes and poll taxes. They will take away all our rights of freedom and independence. They will rob us of all our fields, gardens and wealth. They will impose a reign of terror and massacre our brothers. They will burn and destroy all from our houses to pagodas. Fellow-countrymen, take a look at Hanoi and Hai Phong and then you will see clearly.*

(5) <b>Vì</b> because	<b>ta</b> we	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>chịu</b> accept/bear
<b>làm</b> be	<b>trâu</b> buffalo	<b>ngựa</b> horse	<b>cho</b> for
<b>Pháp,</b> French	<b>vì</b> because	<b>ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must
<b>giữ gìn</b> preserve	<b>non sông</b> homeland	<b>đất nước</b> homeland	<b>ta,</b> our
<b>cho nên</b> therefore	<b>ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>đánh</b> fight
<b>bọn</b> gang (pejorative)	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist	<b>Pháp.</b> French	

*Because we can not concede to be buffaloes and horses for the French. And because we must preserve our homeland, we have to fight the French colonialists.*

(6) <b>Đánh</b> fight	<b>thì</b> then	<b>phải</b> must	<b>phá hoại.</b> subotage
<b>Ta</b> we	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>thì</b> then
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>phá.</b> destroy	<b>Nếu</b> if

## Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist (Cont.)

<b>ta</b> we	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>đường</b> road
<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>cống,</b> sewer	<b>lấp</b> stop(up)	<b>sông</b> river
<b>lấp</b> stop(up)	<b>ngòi,</b> canal	<b>nếu</b> if	<b>ta</b> we
<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nhà cửa</b> house
<b>kiên cố</b> solid	<b>mà</b> that	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>có thể</b> be able to
<b>dùng</b> use	<b>làm</b> use as	<b>nơi</b> place	<b>căn cứ,</b> basis
<b>thì</b> then	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future action: will	<b>đem</b> put to use
<b>tàu thủy</b> ship	<b>xe tăng</b> tank	<b>đến</b> arrive	<b>đánh</b> fight
<b>ta,</b> us	<b>và</b> and	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future action: will
<b>đốt phá</b> burn and destroy	<b>cướp bóc</b> rob(in general)	<b>sạch trơn.</b> clean finished	<b>Vì vậy,</b> therefore
<b>ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>trước,</b> before
<b>cho</b> for	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>dùng</b> use
<b>được.</b> ASP.: Pfv: complete actions: be able to	<b>Dù</b> even though	<b>ta</b> we	<b>muốn</b> want
<b>để</b> leave	<b>cống</b> sewer	<b>để</b> for	<b>đường,</b> road
<b>để</b> for	<b>nhà</b> house	<b>mà</b> in order to	<b>dùng,</b> use
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>được,</b> ASP.: Pfv: complete actions: be able to
<b>vì</b> because	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future action: will	<b>chiếm</b> occupy
<b>hết,</b> all	<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>hết.</b> all	

*Fight! We have to destroy. If we do not destroy, the French will destroy our properties. If we do not destroy roads and sewers, block up rivers, canals, and if we do not destroy the solid strong houses then the French will use them and the French will put to use ships and tanks to fight us. And they will undoubtedly burn, destroy and rob us of everything. Therefore we have to destroy everything*

## Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist (Cont.)

*before them, so that the French can not use them. However, even if we want to use sewers, roads and houses we can't because the French will use them and destroy everything.*

- |     |                       |                      |                       |                                      |
|-----|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (7) | <b>Bây giờ</b><br>now | <b>ta</b><br>we      | <b>phải</b><br>must   | <b>đi,</b><br>go                     |
|     | <b>để</b><br>for      | <b>chặn</b><br>block | <b>Pháp</b><br>French | <b>lại,</b><br>again                 |
|     | <b>không</b><br>NEG.  | <b>cho</b><br>for    | <b>chúng</b><br>they  | <b>tiến lên,</b><br>march forward    |
|     | <b>không</b><br>NEG.  | <b>cho</b><br>for    | <b>chúng</b><br>they  | <b>lợi dụng.</b><br>make full use of |
- Now, we have to intercept the French again, to stop them advancing so they can not use us.*

- |     |                                |  |  |                                      |
|-----|--------------------------------|--|--|--------------------------------------|
| (8) | <b>Ta</b><br>we                | <b>vì</b><br>because                   | <b>nước</b><br>country                                   | <b>hy sinh,</b><br>sacrifice         |
|     | <b>chịu</b><br>accept/bear     | <b>khổ</b><br>miserable                | <b>một</b><br>one  | <b>lúc.</b><br>time                  |
|     | <b>Đến</b><br>arrive           | <b>ngày</b><br>day                     | <b>kháng chiến</b><br>resist(against foreign aggression) | <b>thắng lợi</b><br>win a victory    |
|     | <b>ta</b><br>we                | <b>sẽ</b><br>ASP.: future action: will | <b>cùng</b><br>together with                             | <b>nhau</b><br>each other            |
|     | <b>kiến thiết</b><br>construct | <b>sửa sang</b><br>repair and tidy up  | <b>lại,</b><br>again                                     | <b>nào</b><br>interrogative particle |
|     | <b>có</b><br>have              | <b>khó</b><br>hard                     | <b>gì.</b><br>wh- word "what"                            |                                      |
- For our country, we have to sacrifice and accept misery for awhile again. When our resistance leads to victory, we will construct and repair everything together again. This is not too hard.*

- |     |                               |                             |                                    |                                      |
|-----|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (9) | <b>Các</b><br>(pluralizer)    | <b>chiến sĩ</b><br>soldier  | <b>ở</b><br>at                     | <b>trước</b><br>before               |
|     | <b>mặt trận</b><br>front      | <b>hy sinh</b><br>sacrifice | <b>xương máu</b><br>bone and blood | <b>cho</b><br>for                    |
|     | <b>Tổ quốc,</b><br>fatherland | <b>họ</b><br>they           | <b>còn</b><br>still                | <b>không</b><br>NEG.                 |
|     | <b>tiếc.</b><br>regret        | <b>Không</b><br>NEG.        | <b>lẽ</b><br>reason                | <b>đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman |
|     | <b>ta</b><br>our              | <b>lại</b><br>again         | <b>tiếc</b><br>be sorry            | <b>một</b><br>one                    |
|     | <b>đoạn</b><br>section        | <b>đường,</b><br>road       | <b>một</b><br>one                  | <b>cái</b><br>(classifier of công)   |

Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist (Cont.)

<b>cống,</b> sewer	<b>hoặc</b> or	<b>một</b> one	<b>ngôi</b> (classifier of nhà)
<b>nhà,</b> house	<b>mà</b> which	<b>để</b> for	<b>bọn</b> group
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>lợi dụng,</b> make full use of	<b>đặng</b> in order to	<b>đánh</b> fight
<b>Tổ quốc</b> fatherland	<b>ta.</b> our		

*Soldiers at the front sacrifice their bones and blood for our fatherland. They don't regret. There is no reason for our fellow-countrymen to regret the loss of roads, sewers or houses which the French can make full use of to fight our fatherland.*

(10) <b>Đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>đều</b> all	<b>là</b> be	<b>người</b> people
<b>ái quốc,</b> patriot	<b>chắc</b> sure	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>ai</b> anybody
<b>nỡ</b> have the heart to	<b>lòng</b> feeling	<b>như thế.</b> like that	

*Fellow-countrymen, everyone is a patriot. Surely no one would dare to (do that).*

(11) <b>Vậy</b> so	<b>tôi</b> I	<b>thiết tha</b> show eagerness	<b>kêu gọi</b> appeal to
<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ở</b> at	<b>đây,</b> here
<b>mọi</b> every	<b>người</b> people	<b>đều</b> all	<b>ra sức</b> strive
<b>giúp</b> help	<b>phá.</b> destroy	<b>Phá</b> destroy	<b>cho</b> for
<b>rộng,</b> wide	<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>cho</b> for	<b>sâu,</b> deep
<b>phá</b> destroy	<b>sao cho</b> in any way so that	<b>bọn</b> gang (pejorative)	<b>Pháp</b> French
<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>lợi dụng</b> make full use of	<b>được.</b> ASP.: Pfv. complete actions:be able to	<b>Một</b> one
<b>nhát</b> stab	<b>cuốc</b> hoe	<b>của</b> of	<b>đồng bào,</b> fellow-countryman
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>như</b> as same as	<b>một</b> one	<b>viên</b> pellet
<b>đạn</b> bullet	<b>của</b> of	<b>chiến sĩ</b> soldier	<b>bắn</b> shoot
<b>vào</b> into	<b>quân dịch</b> military service	<b>vậy.</b> thus/like that	

*So, I eagerly appeal to all fellow-countrymen here. Everyone must strive to destroy. Destroy wide. Destroy deep. Destroy however you need so that the*

## Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist (Cont.)

*French can not make use of anything. To stab with a fellow-countrymen's hoe is as good as a bullet from a soldier.*

(12) <b>Tôi</b> I <b>với</b> with	<b>lại</b> again <b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>trân trọng</b> respectful <b>rằng:</b> that	<b>hứa</b> promise <b>kháng chiến</b> resist(against foreign aggression)
<b>thắng lợi</b> win a victory	<b>rồi,</b> ASP.: Pfv. complete actions: already	<b>tôi</b> I	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: futureaction: will
<b>ra sức</b> strive	<b>cùng</b> together	<b>đồng bào</b> compatriot	<b>sửa sang</b> repair and tidy up
<b>tu bổ</b> repair	<b>lại</b> again	<b>hết.</b> finish	<b>Chúng ta</b> we
<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>làm</b> make	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>đường sá,</b> road(in general)
<b>cầu</b> bridge	<b>công</b> sewer	<b>khéo</b> skill	<b>hơn,</b> more
<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nhà cửa</b> house	<b>tốt</b> good	<b>hơn,</b> more
<b>và</b> and	<b>xứng đáng</b> worthy	<b>một</b> one	<b>dân tộc</b> nation
<b>tự do</b> freedom	<b>độc lập</b> independent	<b>hơn.</b> more	

*I respectfully promise you again that: after our resistance wins a victory, I will exert myself together with all of you to repair and rebuild again till we are finished. We will construct roads, bridges and sewers more skillful than before and have better than before, more worthy of a freedom and independence of the nation.*

(13) **Kháng chiến**      **thắng lợi**      **muôn năm!**  
resistance      victory      long live  
*Long live victory resistance!*

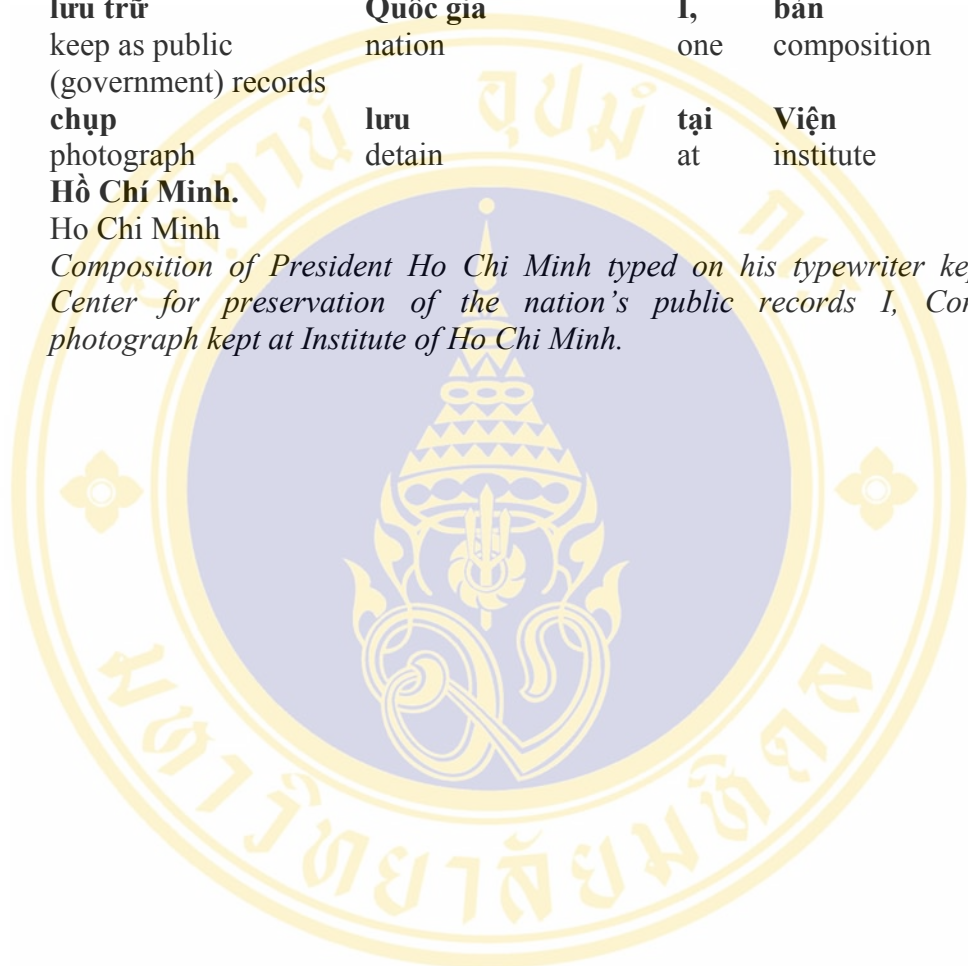
(14) **Việt Nam**      **độc lập**      **muôn năm!**  
Vietnam      independent      long live  
*Long live independent Vietnam!*

(15) **Viết**      **ngày**      **16-1-1947.**  
write      day      16-7-1947  
*Written on 16-7-1947*

Text 2 Appeal to fellow-countrymen to destroy to resist (Cont.)

(16)	<b>Bản</b> composition	<b>đánh máy</b> type(on a typewriter)	<b>của</b> of	<b>Chủ tịch</b> president(of a country)
	<b>Hồ Chí Minh</b> Ho Chi Minh	<b>lưu</b> detain	<b>tại</b> at	<b>Trung tâm</b> centre
	<b>lưu trữ</b> keep as public (government) records	<b>Quốc gia</b> nation	<b>I,</b> one	<b>bản</b> composition
	<b>chụp</b> photograph	<b>lưu</b> detain	<b>tại</b> at	<b>Viện</b> institute
	<b>Hồ Chí Minh.</b> Ho Chi Minh			

*Composition of President Ho Chi Minh typed on his typewriter kept at the Center for preservation of the nation's public records I, Composition photograph kept at Institute of Ho Chi Minh.*



## TEXT 3

<b>GỬI</b> send	<b>CÁC</b> (pluralizer)	<b>CHIẾN SĨ</b> soldier	<b>VỆ QUỐC ĐOÀN</b> Vietnamese National Army
<b>TỰ VỆ</b> Self-defence force	<b>VÀ</b> and	<b>DÂN QUÂN</b> militia	<b>TOÀN QUỐC</b> <sup>3</sup> the whole country

*ADDRESS, SENT TO SOLDIERS OF THE VIETNAMESE NATIONAL ARMY,  
SELF-DEFENCE FORCES AND MILITIA IN THE WHOLE COUNTRY*

- (1) **Cùng**  
to
- Vệ quốc đoàn,**  
Vietnamese  
National Army
- tự vệ,**  
Self-defence force
- dân quân**  
militia
- toàn quốc,**  
the whole country  
*To the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defence force and militia of the whole country*
- (2) **Các**  
(pluralizer)  
*My dear soldiers!*
- chiến sĩ**  
soldier
- yêu quý!**  
dear
- (3) **Từ**  
from
- 19**  
nineteenth
- tháng Chạp,**  
Twelfth lunar month
- thực dân**  
coloninailist
- Pháp**  
French
- đánh úp**  
spring a surprise attack
- ta,**  
us
- các**  
(pluralizer)
- anh em**  
brothers
- là**  
be
- những**  
(pluralizer)
- người**  
people
- đầu tiên,**  
first
- lập tức**  
immediately
- đứng lên**  
rise up
- chiến đấu.**  
fight
- From the nineteenth of the 12<sup>th</sup> lunar month, the French colonialists sprang a surprise attack against us. You were the first to rise up to fight them.*
- (4) **Sau**  
after
- 85**  
85
- năm**  
year
- nước**  
country
- ta**  
our
- bị**  
(passive/-ed)
- chiếm,**  
occupy
- các**  
(pluralizer)
- anh em**  
brothers
- là**  
be
- những**  
(pluralizer)
- người**  
people
- đầu tiên**  
first
- đứng lên**  
rise up
- đánh**  
fight
- thực dân**  
colonialist
- Pháp,**  
French
- một**  
one
- cách**  
way
- nhất trí,**  
be unanimous

<sup>3</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập 5 (1947-1949) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 5 (1947-1949)). National Politics Publishing house, p. 42-43.

Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country (Cont.)

<b>khắp</b> all over	<b>Bắc,</b> north	<b>Trung,</b> middle	<b>Nam.</b> south
-------------------------	----------------------	-------------------------	----------------------

*After 85 years under the French occupation of our country, you were the first to rise up against the French colonialists. This is a united effort all over, in the North, Middle and South of our country.*

(5) - <b>Vẻ vang</b> glorious	<b>thay!</b> (final particle for emphasize)	<b>Cái</b> (classifier of nhiệm vụ)	<b>nhiệm vụ</b> duty
<b>của</b> of	<b>anh em.</b> brothers	<b>Ăn gió nằm sương,</b> to be weather-beaten	<b>xung phong</b> assault
<b>hãm</b> besiege	<b>trận,</b> battle	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>anh em</b> brothers
<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>quản</b> mind(difficulty, hardship)	<b>gian lao.</b> gruelling	<b>Máu</b> blood
<b>trôi</b> afloat	<b>lửa</b> fire	<b>cháy,</b> burn,	<b>mưa</b> rain
<b>đạn</b> bullet	<b>rừng</b> forest	<b>bom,</b> bomb	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>quản</b> mind(difficulty, hardship)	<b>nguy hiểm.</b> dangerous
<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>biết</b> know
<b>đua</b> compete	<b>nhau</b> each other	<b>giết</b> kill	<b>giặc.</b> aggressor

*- How glorious your task is! This is a struggle like no other struggle. But you do not mind the difficulties. Even if they shoot us with a rain of bullets that makes our blood flow and they bomb us with a forest of bombs that sets our houses blaze, you still do not mind the dangers. Brothers, you only know to strive to kill the aggressors.*

(6) - <b>Oanh liệt</b> glorious	<b>thay!</b> (final particle for emphasize)	<b>Cái</b> (classifier of tráng chí)	<b>tráng chí</b> will
<b>của</b> of	<b>anh em.</b> brothers	<b>Càng</b> more	<b>đánh</b> fight
<b>càng</b> more	<b>mạnh,</b> strong	<b>kinh nghiệm</b> experience	<b>càng</b> more
<b>nhieu.</b> many	<b>Khi</b> when	<b>thắng</b> win	<b>không</b> NEG.
<b>kiêu,</b> vainglorious	<b>khi</b> when	<b>lui</b> step backwards	<b>không</b> NEG.
<b>nản!</b> be discouraged	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>quyết</b> determine

Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country (Cont.)

<b>kháng chiến</b> resist(against foreign aggression)	<b>cho đến</b> as far as	<b>thắng lợi.</b> victory
--	-----------------------------	------------------------------

- *How glorious! The more we fight, be stronger, more experience we are. When we win, we will not be vainglorious. When we retreat, we will not be discouraged. Brothers, we are determined to resist until we win victory.*

(7) <b>Mặc kệ</b> ignore	<b>tàu bay,</b> aircraft	<b>thiết giáp,</b> armor/tank	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
<b>anh</b> brothers	<b>cứ</b> (emphatic particle)	<b>tiến lên,</b> advance	<b>cứ</b> (emphatic particle)
<b>xông</b> rush	<b>vào!</b> more		

*Don't bother about aircrafts and armours. Brothers advance and hurry on!*

(8) - <b>Anh dũng</b> of great fortitude	<b>thay!</b> (final particle for emphasize)	<b>Lòng</b> heart	<b>quyết thắng</b> set one's mind on victory(success)
<b>của</b> of	<b>anh em.</b> brothers	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter
<b>là</b> be	<b>đàn con</b> child-group	<b>anh hùng</b> heroic	<b>của</b> of
<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>quyết</b> determine
<b>đem</b> bring with one	<b>xương máu</b> bone and blood	<b>đề</b> for	<b>giữ vững</b> hold fast
<b>non nước</b> country	<b>Lạc Hồng!</b> (Name of the race that is the combination between the dragon and goddess/fairy)		

- *How heroic your determination to win! All fighters are heroes of our fatherland. Fighters are children of heroes of our fatherland. All fighters are determined to sacrifice bone and blood for our Lac Hong land.*

(9) <b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>cứ</b> (emphasize particle)	<b>tiến lên!</b> advance
--------------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------------	-----------------------------

*Fighters advance!*

(10) <b>20</b> 20	<b>triệu</b> million	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>đang</b> (be in the process of)
<b>hoan hô</b> acclaim	<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>và</b> and	<b>quyết</b> determine
<b>làm</b> do	<b>hậu thuẫn</b> force in support in the rear	<b>cho</b> for	<b>anh em.</b> brothers

Text 3 Address, sent to soldiers of the Vietnamese National Army, Self-defence forces and militia in the whole country (Cont.)

*Twenty million of our fellow-countrymen are cheering on you and determined to support you all, brothers.*

- (11) **Chính phủ**                      **luôn luôn**                      **nhớ**                      **đến**  
 government                      always                      keep in mind                      to  
**anh em.**  
 brothers  
*Your Government always keeps you in mind.*
- (12) **Chiến sĩ**                      **anh hùng**                      **Việt Nam,**                      **tiến lên!**  
 fighter                      heroic                      Vietnam                      advance  
*Heroic fighters of Vietnam advance!*
- (13) **Thống nhất**                      **độc lập**                      **nhất định**                      **thành công.**  
 unite                      dependent                      absolutely certain                      succeed  
*Our unity and independence are certain to be won.*
- (14) **Chính phủ**                      **nước**                      **Việt Nam**                      **Dân chủ**  
 government                      nation                      Vietnam                      democratic  
**Cộng hoà**  
 republic  
*The Government of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam*
- (15) **Viết**                      **khoảng**                      **tháng**                      **1-1947.**  
 write                      about                      month                      1-1947  
*Written around January, 1947.*
- (16) **Bản gốc**                      **lưu**                      **tại**                      **Trung tâm**  
 original                      keep                      at                      centre  
**lưu trữ**                      **Quốc gia**                      **I,**                      **bản**  
 keep as public(government) records                      nation                      one                      composition  
**chụp**                      **lưu**                      **tại**                      **Viện**  
 photograph                      keep                      at                      institute  
**Hồ Chí Minh.**  
 Ho Chi Minh  
*Original work kept at the Center for the Nation's public records I, Composition photograph kept at Institute of Ho Chi Minh.*

## TEXT 4

<b>LỜI</b> word	<b>KÊU GỌI</b> appeal	<b>NHÂN</b> occasion	<b>KỶ NIỆM</b> anniversary
<b>6</b> six	<b>THÁNG</b> month	<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN<sup>4</sup></b> resistance	

*APPEAL ISSUED AFTER SIX MONTHS OF RESISTANCE*

(1)	<b>Cùng</b> to <i>To fellow citizens,</i>	<b>quốc dân</b> people(of a country)	<b>đồng bào,</b> fellow-countryman/ compatriot	
(2)	<b>Cùng</b> to <b>dân quân,</b> militia <i>To fighters</i>	<b>toàn thể</b> whole <b>tự vệ,</b> Self-defence force	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>Vệ quốc quân,</b> Vietnamese National Army <i>in the Vietnamese National Army, Militia and Self-defence forces,</i>
(3)	<b>Thực dân</b> colinialist <b>hải lục không quân</b> navy, ground and airforce <b>người.</b> people <b>quân phí</b> army expenditures	<b>phản động</b> reactionary <b>hàng</b> (used in front of round figures to denote severalty) <b>Chúng</b> they(pej.) <b>mỗi</b> each	<b>Pháp</b> French <b>chục</b> ten <b>chi tiêu</b> spend <b>ngày</b> day	<b>động viên</b> mobilize <b>vạn</b> ten thousand <b>vào</b> into <b>hàng</b> (used in front of round figures to denote severalty) <b>Chúng</b> they <b>ào ạt,</b> impetuous <b>trong</b> in <b>cướp</b> plunder <b>Chúng</b> they <b>lũ</b> group
	<b>chục</b> ten <b>mong</b> wish <b>chiến lược</b> strategy <b>vài</b> a few <b>lấy</b> take <b>lại</b> again	<b>triệu</b> million <b>dùng</b> use <b>chớp</b> like <b>ba</b> three <b>nước</b> country <b>thuê</b> hire	<b>bạc.</b> money <b>lực lượng</b> power <b>nhoáng,</b> lightning <b>tháng,</b> month <b>ta.</b> our <b>một</b> one	

<sup>4</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). *Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 5 (1947-1949)* (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 5 (1947-1949)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p. 150-152.

Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

<b>bù nhìn,</b> puppet	<b>mong</b> wish	<b>phá hoại</b> sabotage	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance
<b>chia rẽ</b> divide	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow- countryman	<b>ta.</b> our	<b>Song</b> however
<b>âm mưu</b> scheme	<b>quân sự</b> military	<b>và</b> and	<b>chính trị</b> politics
<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> them	<b>đều</b> all	<b>hoàn toàn</b> complete
<b>thất bại.</b> be defeated	<b>Kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Nam Bộ</b> southern part (of area)
<b>đến</b> to	<b>ngày nay</b> nowadays	<b>đã</b> ASP.: Past actions: already	<b>gần</b> nearly
<b>2</b> two	<b>năm.</b> year	<b>Kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>ở</b> at
<b>tòan quốc</b> the whole country	<b>đến</b> to	<b>hôm nay</b> today	<b>vừa</b> just
<b>đúng</b> precisely	<b>6</b> six	<b>tháng.</b> month	<b>Mà</b> but
<b>sức</b> strength	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us
<b>càng</b> more	<b>mạnh.</b> strong	<b>Sự</b> (use before verb to create noun)	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory
<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us	<b>càng</b> more	<b>rõ ràng.</b> evident
<b>Đó</b> that	<b>là</b> be	<b>vì sao?</b> why	

*The reactionary French colonialists have mobilized tens thousands of sea, ground and air forces. They spend tens of million dollars everyday. They hope to use overwhelming force, lightning strategy in two or three months to plunder our country. They have hired a puppet regime group again and wish to subotage the resistance by deviding our fellow-countrymen. However, their military and political plans will be soundly. Nowadays, the war of resistance has been going at Nam Bo (Southern part nearly for two years and in the whole country for six months). But the force of our war of resistance is stronger. Our victory is more clear-cut. Why?*

- (4) A- Vì **kháng chiến** **của** **ta**  
because resistance of us  
**là** **chính nghĩa.**  
be righteous  
A- Because our resistance is righteous.

## Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

- (5) **Ta** **chỉ** **giữ gìn** **non sông,**  
we only take care of homeland  
**đất nước** **của** **ta.** **Chỉ**  
homeland of us only  
**chiến đấu** **cho** **quyền** **thống nhất**  
fight for right unite  
**và** **độc lập** **của** **tổ quốc.**  
and independent of fatherland  
*We only fight to preserve our homeland. We only struggle for our rights, unity and independence of our fatherland.*

- (6) **Còn** **thực dân** **phản động** **Pháp**  
but colonialist reactionary French  
**thì** **mong** **ăn cướp** **nước**  
then wish rob country  
**ta,** **mong** **bắt** **dân**  
our wish catch people  
**ta** **làm** **nô lệ.** **Vậy**  
our make slave so  
**ta** **là** **chính nghĩa,** **địch**  
we be righteous enemy  
**là** **tà.** **Chính** **nhất định**  
be unrighteous righteous absolutely certain  
**thắng** **tà.**  
win unrighteous  
*But the reactionary French colonialists wish to plunder our country and enslave our citizens. Thus we are righteous but the enemy is unrighteous. Righteousness is certain to win over unrighteousness.*

- (7) **B- Vì** **đồng bào** **ta** **đại đoàn kết.**  
because fellow-countryman our great unity  
*B- Because our fellow-countrymen have great unity*

- (8) **Toàn dân** **Việt Nam** **chỉ** **có**  
the whole people Vietnam only have  
**một lòng:** **Quyết** **không** **làm**  
one heart be determined NEG. make  
**nô lệ,** **Chỉ** **có** **một**  
slave only have one  
**chí:** **Quyết** **không** **chịu**  
will be determined NEG. concede  
**mất nước,**  
have one's country ruled by foreign aggressors/ lose one's country  
*The whole of the Vietnamese people are whole-heartedly determined not to be enslaved. We have just one will, that is to be determined not to concede our country to the foreign aggressors.*

Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

(9)	<b>Chỉ</b> only <b>Quyết</b> be determined	<b>có</b> have <b>kháng chiến</b> resist(against foreign aggression)	<b>một</b> one <b>để</b> for <b>độc lập</b> independent	<b>mục đích:</b> aim <b>tranh thủ</b> win over/achieve <b>cho</b> for
	<b>thống nhất</b> unite <b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland	<b>và</b> and		
	<i>Only one aim, be determined to resist, to achieve reunification and independence.</i>			

(10)	<b>Sự</b> (classifier of đồng tâm) <b>ta</b> our <b>bức</b> (use before noun) <b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland <b>xảo quyết</b> machiavellian <b>đụng đầu</b> run into <b>đó,</b> that <b>thất bại.</b> defeatism	<b>đồng tâm</b> be of the same mind <b>đúc</b> cast <b>tường</b> wall <b>Dù</b> though <b>đến</b> to <b>nhằm</b> aim at <b>chúng</b> they	<b>của</b> of <b>thành</b> to be something <b>đồng</b> bronze <b>địch</b> enemy <b>mức</b> level <b>bức</b> (use before noun) <b>cũng</b> also	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman <b>một</b> one <b>xung quanh</b> surrounding <b>hung tàn,</b> cruel <b>nào,</b> which <b>tường</b> wall <b>phải</b> must
	<i>The single mind of our fellow-countrymen will cast a bronze wall to surround our fatherland. No matter how cruel and cunning at the enemy are, they will run into that wall and be defeated.</i>			

(11)	<b>C- Vì</b> because <i>C- Because our officers are valiant.</i>	<b>tướng sĩ</b> officers	<b>ta</b> our	<b>dũng cảm.</b> valiant
------	--	-----------------------------	------------------	-----------------------------

(12)	<b>Tuy</b> although <b>kém,</b> weak <b>ít,</b> little <b>chí</b> will	<b>khi giới</b> weapons <b>kinh nghiệm</b> experience <b>nhưng</b> but <b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice	<b>ta</b> our <b>ta</b> our <b>lòng</b> heart <b>của</b> of	<b>còn</b> still <b>còn</b> still <b>kiên quyết,</b> [be]firm in(of)purpose <b>tướng sĩ</b> officers
------	---	--	--	---

## Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

	<b>ta</b> our	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past action:already	<b>lập</b> establish /achieve	<b>những</b> some
	<b>chiến công</b> feat of arms	<b>oanh liệt,</b> glorious	<b>vẻ vang</b> honourable	<b>có thể</b> be able to
	<b>nói</b> say	<b>là</b> be	<b>động đất.</b> earthquake	
	<b>kinh</b> frighten	<b>trời</b> sky		
	<i>(proverb) the great thing that can make the sky frightened and the land shake Although, our weapons are weak and our experience is little the strong heart and the will of our officers who have made sacrifice will prove to be a glorious and honourable feat of arms that compares with "earthshaking" feat.</i>			
(13)	<b>D- Vì</b> because	<b>chiến lược</b> strategy	<b>ta</b> our	<b>đúng.</b> correct
	<i>D- Because our strategy is correct.</i>			
(14)	<b>Địch</b> enemy	<b>muốn</b> want	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>cách</b> way
	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>mau,</b> quick	<b>thắng</b> win	<b>mau.</b> quick
	<b>Nếu</b> if	<b>chiến tranh</b> war	<b>kéo dài,</b> lengthen	<b>hao</b> waste
	<b>binh</b> soldier	<b>tổn</b> suffer to lose	<b>tướng,</b> general of army	<b>chúng</b> they
	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>thất bại.</b> defeatism		
	<i>The enemies want to have a quick fight for quick victory. If the war stretches on their soldiers will suffer and lose their strength, they will be defeated.</i>			
(15)	<b>Vậy</b> so	<b>ta</b> we	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>chiến lược</b> strategy
	<b>trường kỳ</b> protracted	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance	<b>để</b> for	<b>phát triển</b> develop
	<b>lực lượng,</b> power	<b>tăng</b> increase	<b>thêm</b> increase	<b>kinh nghiệm.</b> experience
	<b>Ta</b> we	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>chiến thuật</b> tactics	<b>du kích,</b> carry out guerilla warfare
	<b>để</b> for	<b>làm</b> make	<b>chí</b> will	<b>địch</b> enemy
	<b>hao mòn,</b> wear down	<b>cho đến</b> until	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>ta</b> we

## Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>tổng phản công,</b> general counter- offensive	<b>để</b> for	<b>quét</b> sweep
<b>sạch</b> clean	<b>lũ</b> group	<b>chúng.</b> they	

*So we will use a long war of resistance to develop our force, to increase our experience. We will use this method in order to crush the enemy's will until the day we have the upper hand in order to wipe them out.*

(16) <b>Thế</b> situation	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>như</b> like	<b>lửa.</b> fire
<b>Thế</b> situation	<b>ta</b> we	<b>như</b> like	<b>nước.</b> water
<b>Nước</b> water	<b>nhất định</b> absolutely certain	<b>thắng</b> win	<b>lửa.</b> fire

*So the enemy is like fire and we are like water. Water is sure to put out fire.*

(17) <b>Hơn nữa</b> moreover	<b>trong</b> in	<b>cuộc</b> (a classifier of trường kỳ kháng chiến)	<b>trường kỳ</b> protracted
<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance	<b>mỗi</b> each	<b>công dân</b> citizen	<b>là</b> be
<b>một</b> one	<b>chiến sĩ.</b> soldier	<b>Mỗi</b> each	<b>làng</b> village
<b>là</b> be	<b>một</b> one	<b>chiến hào.</b> combat trench	<b>Hai mươi</b> twenty
<b>triệu</b> million	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam	<b>quyết</b> be determined
<b>đánh tan</b> defeat(an army)	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>vạn</b> ten thousand	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist

*Moreover, in the long war of resistance, each citizen is a soldier. Each village is a combat trench. Twenty million Vietnamese compatriots are determined to defeat ten thousand reactionary colonialists.*

(18) <b>E- Vì</b> because	<b>ta</b> we	<b>nhiều</b> many	<b>bầu bạn.</b> friends
------------------------------	-----------------	----------------------	----------------------------

*E- Because we have many friends.*

(19) <b>Chiến tranh</b> war	<b>xâm lược</b> commit aggression	<b>của</b> of	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist
<b>phản động</b> reactionary	<b>là</b> be	<b>phi nghĩa.</b> unrighteous	<b>Ai</b> who
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>chán ghét.</b> dislike	<b>Kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>cứu quốc</b> save the country

## Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

- |      |   |   |   |  |
|------|---|---|---|--|
|      | <b>của</b><br>of  | <b>ta</b><br>us                             | <b>là</b><br>be   | <b>chính nghĩa,</b><br>righteous           |
|      | <b>cho nên</b><br>therefore   | <b>được</b><br>have got                     | <b>nhều người</b><br>many people  | <b>bên vực.</b><br>support                 |
|      | <i>The reactionary colonialists' aggressive war is unrighteous. Everyone is against them. The resistance to save our country is righteous. Therefore, many people support us.</i> |   |   |  |
| (20) | <b>Số đông</b><br>most people   | <b>nhân dân</b><br>people                   | <b>Pháp</b><br>French   | <b>muốn</b><br>want                        |
|      | <b>hòa bình</b><br>peace  | <b>thân thiện</b><br>friendly               | <b>với</b><br>with  | <b>ta.</b><br>us                           |
|      | <i>Most French citizens want peace and friendly relations with us.</i>  |   |   |  |
| (21) | <b>Nhân dân</b><br>people   | <b>thuộc địa</b><br>colony                  | <b>đồng tình</b><br>unanimous   | <b>với</b><br>with                         |
|      | <b>ta.</b><br>us  | <i>All colonized peoples agree with us.</i> |   |  |
| (22) | <b>Các</b><br>(pluralizer)  | <b>dân tộc</b><br>nation                    | <b>châu Á</b><br>Asia   | <b>ủng hộ</b><br>support                   |
|      | <b>ta.</b><br>us  | <b>Dư luận</b><br>public opinion            | <b>trong</b><br>in  | <b>thế giới</b><br>world                   |
|      | <b>tán thành</b><br>agree to  | <b>ta.</b><br>us                            | <i>All Asian peoples support us. World public opinion agrees with us.</i>                     |  |
| (23) | <b>Về mặt</b><br>as side of   | <b>tinh thần</b><br>mind/ morale            | <b>địch</b><br>enemy  | <b>đã</b><br>ASP.: future actions: already |
|      | <b>hoàn toàn</b><br>complete  | <b>thất bại,</b><br>lose                    | <b>ta</b><br>we   | <b>đã</b><br>ASP.: future actions: already |
|      | <b>hoàn toàn</b><br>complete  | <b>thắng lợi.</b><br>win a victory          | <i>Morally on the enemy's side, they know they have lost and we have already won victory.</i> |  |
| (24) | <b>Hỡi</b><br>dear  | <b>quốc dân</b><br>people(of a country)     | <b>đồng bào!</b><br>fellow-countryman   |  |
|      | <i>Dear fellow-citizens,</i>  |   |   |  |
| (25) | <b>Hỡi</b><br>dear  | <b>toàn thể</b><br>the whole country        | <b>các</b><br>(pluralizer)  | <b>chiến sĩ !</b><br>fighter               |
|      | <i>Dear fighters throughout the country,</i>  |   |   |  |
| (26) | <b>Cuộc</b><br>(a classifier of noun)   | <b>trường kỳ</b><br>protracted              | <b>kháng chiến</b><br>resistance  | <b>còn</b><br>still                        |

Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

<b>kinh qua</b> pass through	<b>nhiều</b> many	<b>bước</b> step	<b>gian nan.</b> miserably hard
---------------------------------	----------------------	---------------------	------------------------------------

*The long war of resistance has still to pass through many steps of great difficulty.*

(27) <b>Chúng ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>hy sinh,</b> sacrifice	<b>chịu</b> concede
<b>khổ</b> miserable	<b>và</b> and	<b>phải</b> must	<b>gắng sức.</b> endeavour
<b>Nhưng</b> but	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>quyết</b> be determined	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice
<b>chịu</b> accept	<b>khổ</b> miserable	<b>và</b> and	<b>gắng sức</b> endeavour
<b>5</b> five	<b>năm,</b> year	<b>10</b> ten	<b>năm</b> year
<b>để</b> for	<b>phá tan</b> break(silence,peace)	<b>cái</b> (classifier of xiềng xích)	<b>xiềng xích</b> fetters
<b>nô lệ</b> slave	<b>hơn</b> more	<b>80</b> eighty	<b>năm</b> year
<b>vừa qua,</b> last	<b>để</b> for	<b>tranh</b> fight for	<b>lấy</b> get
<b>quyền</b> right	<b>thống nhất</b> unite	<b>và</b> and	<b>độc lập</b> independent
<b>cho</b> for	<b>muôn đời</b> forever	<b>sắp</b> be forthcoming	<b>đến.</b> arrive
<b>Tôi</b> I	<b>thay mặt</b> on behalf of	<b>Chính phủ:</b> government	

*We have to sacrifice, accept misery, and strive. But we are determined to sacrifice, accept misery, and strive for 5 years, 10 years to break the fetters of more than 80 years of slavery and fight to win our rights, unity and independence that is forthcoming forever. On behalf of the Government,*

(28) <b>Ra lệnh</b> order	<b>cho</b> to	<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>tướng sĩ,</b> officers
<b>trước</b> previously	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>hăng,</b> very enthusiastic
<b>từ nay</b> from now on	<b>phải</b> must	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>hăng</b> very enthusiastic
<b>hơn,</b> more	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thi đua</b> emulate	<b>nhau</b> each other
<b>xung phong</b> assault/ change	<b>sát</b> kill	<b>địch.</b> enemy	

*I order all officers to who have already fought enthusiastically, from now on, to fight even more determinedly and follow each other to change and kill the enemy.*

## Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

- (29) **Kêu gọi** appeal  
**tăng gia sản xuất,** increase production  
**giữ** preserve  
**bộ đội.** army  
*I appeal to all fellow-countrymen, endeavour to increase production and harvest more paddies, preserve dykes, and support our army.*
- toàn thể** the whole country  
**ra sức** endeavour  
**đê,** dyke
- đồng bào** fellow-countryman  
**cất** harvest  
**ra sức** endeavour
- ra sức** endeavour  
**lúa,** paddy  
**ủng hộ** support
- (30) **Khuyên** recommend  
**hành chính** administration  
**cố gắng** strive  
**khó khăn,** difficult  
**khuyết điểm,** shortcoming  
**người** people  
*I recommend that all political cadres, administrators and specialists try hard to overcome every bad feeling, strive to remedy all shortcomings and strive to be model cadres.*
- các** (pluralizer)  
**và** and  
**khắc phục** overcome  
**ra sức** strive  
**gắng** strive to  
**cán bộ** cadre
- cán bộ** cadre  
**chuyên môn** speciality  
**mọi** every  
**sửa chữa** repair/ rectify  
**làm** do  
**kiểu mẫu.** model
- chính trị,** political  
**phải** must  
**nỗi** feeling  
**các** (pluralizer)  
**những** some
- (31) **Chúng ta** we  
**Chúng ta** we  
*We are of one heart and of one mind. We are absolutely certain to win a victory.*
- đã** ASP.: past actions: already  
**nhất định** absolutely certain
- đồng tâm** the same heart  
**sẽ** ASP.: future actions: will
- nhất trí.** be of one mind  
**thắng lợi.** win a victory
- (32) **Chúng ta** we  
*We must advance strongly!*
- phải** must  
 **mạnh mẽ** strong  
**tiến lên !** advance
- (33) **Đánh tan** defeat(an army)  
*Defeat the French reactionary colonialists!*
- thực dân** colonize  
**phản động** reactionary  
**Pháp !** French

## Text 4 Appeal issued after six months of the resistance (Cont.)

- (34) **Hai**                      **dân tộc**                      **Việt –**                      **Pháp**  
two                      nation                      Vietnamese                      French  
**thân thiện !**  
friendly  
*The Vietnamese – French peoples are friends!*
- (35) **Trường kỳ**                      **kháng chiến**                      **nhất định**                      **thắng lợi !**  
protracted                      resistance                      absolutely certain                      win a victory  
*A long war of resistance is certain to win a victory!*
- (36) **Việt Nam**                      **thống nhất**                      **độc lập**                      **muôn năm !**  
Vietnam                      unify                      independent                      long live  
*Long live a unified and independent Vietnam!*
- (37) **Ngày**                      **19**                      **tháng**                      **6**  
date                      19                      month                      6  
**năm**                      **1947**  
year                      1947  
*on June, 19, 1947*
- (38) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**
- (39) **Sách**                      **Lời**                      **Hồ**                      **Chủ tịch,**  
book                      speech                      Ho Chi Minh                      president(of country)  
**Nhà**                      **thông tin**                      **Việt Nam,**                      **1948,**  
house                      information                      Vietnam                      1948  
**t.**                      **1,**                      **tr.**                      **91-93.**  
(abbr.tập) tome                      1                      (abbr.trang) page                      91-93  
*Book of President Ho's speeches, Agency of Vietnamese Information, 1948, tome 1, p.91-93.*

## TEXT 5

<b>LỜI</b>	<b>KÊU GỌI</b>	<b>NHÂN</b>	<b>KỶ NIỆM</b>	<b>MỘT</b>	<b>NĂM</b>
word	appeal	occasion	anniversary	one	year
	<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN</b>		<b>TOÀN QUỐC</b> <sup>5</sup>		
	resistance		the whole country		

*APPEAL ON THE OCCASION OF THE FIRST ANNIVERSARY OF  
THE APPEAL FOR NATIONAL RESISTANCE*

- (1) **Hỡi** **đồng bào** **toàn quốc,**  
exhortative particle fellow-countryman/compatriot the whole country  
*Fellow countrymen around the country!*
- (2) **Hỡi** **toàn thể** **tướng sĩ** **Vệ quốc quân,**  
exhortative particle whole officers Vietnamese National Army  
**dân quân** **du kích,**  
Militia Guerilla  
*All officers, the Vietnamese National Army, the Guerilla Militia,*
- (3) **Thấm thoát** **toàn quốc** **kháng chiến** **đã**  
soon the whole country resistance ASP.: past actions:  
already  
**chẵn** **một** **năm** **và**  
even one year and  
**kháng chiến** **ở** **miền** **Nam**  
resistance at area south  
**đã** **27** **tháng.**  
ASP.: past actions: already 27 month  
*The National resistance has gone on for one year and the resistance in the south has gone on for 27 months.*
- (4) **Từ** **ngày** **đầu,** **bọn**  
from day beginning group, gang (pej.)  
**quân phiệt** **thực dân** **khoe miệng** **rằng:**  
militarist colonialist boast that  
**chóng** **thì** **dăm** **tuần,**  
quick then a few week  
**chậm** **thì** **3** **tháng,**  
slow then three month

<sup>5</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). *Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 5 (1947-1949)* (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 5 (1947-1949)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.313-316.

Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

<b>chúng</b> they (pej.)	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>chinh phục</b> win	<b>ta,</b> us
<b>nhưng</b> but	<b>nay</b> at this moment	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>trải qua</b> pass through
<b>mấy</b> some	<b>lần</b> time	<b>3</b> three	<b>tháng,</b> month
<b>chúng</b> they (pej.)	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>được</b> get	<b>kết quả</b> result
<b>gì?</b> what			

*From the beginning, the colonial militarists boasted that they would conquer us in a few weeks or at most within three months, but now several times three months have passed, and what results have they achieved?*

(5)

<b>Chúng</b> they (pej.)	<b>mất</b> lose	<b>hơn</b> more	<b>20.000</b> 20,000
<b>lính</b> soldier	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>chết</b> die	<b>và</b> and
<b>bị thương.</b> wounded	<b>Chúng</b> they	<b>tốn</b> cost/spend	<b>hơn</b> more
<b>3,000</b> 3,000	<b>triệu</b> million	<b>bạc.</b> money	<b>Chúng</b> they
<b>chiếm</b> occupy	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>thành thị</b> town	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already
<b>hóa ra</b> result in	<b>đống</b> heap	<b>tro tàn.</b> ashes	<b>Chúng</b> they
<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>mua chuộc</b> bribe	<b>được</b> get	<b>một</b> one
<b>lũ</b> group/gang (pej.)	<b>bất trung,</b> disloyal	<b>bất hiếu</b> unfilial	<b>bù nhìn</b> puppet
<b>nhưng</b> but	<b>lũ</b> group/gang (pej.)	<b>đó</b> that	<b>đều</b> all
<b>bị</b> be/-ed (passive)	<b>tan hoang.</b> broken up	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>ở</b> at
<b>Pháp</b> France	<b>và</b> and	<b>bộ</b> set	<b>chỉ huy</b> commander
<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> they (pej.)	<b>ở</b> at	<b>đây</b> here

## Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thay đổi</b> change	<b>mấy</b> some
<b>lần.</b> time, <b>người</b> people <b>mà</b> that	<b>Vì</b> because <b>tốn</b> cost/spend <b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>chết</b> die <b>nhều</b> many <b>Pháp</b> French	<b>nhều</b> many <b>của</b> of <b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already
<b>lên tiếng</b> speak up(after keeping silent for some time) <b>phi nghĩa.</b> unrighteous	<b>phản đối</b> oppose	<b>cuộc</b> (a classifier of noun)	<b>chiến tranh</b> war

*They have lost more than 20,000 French soldiers, dead and wounded. They have spent more than 3,000 million dollars. They occupied some towns which they reduced to ashes. They bribed a bunch of disloyal, unfilial puppets, but that bunch has now been broken up. The government in France and commanders here had to change many times. Because of the many deaths and the great costs, the French people have spoken up in opposition to this unrighteous war.*

(6) <b>Đó</b> that <b>mà</b> that <b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already <b>thứ</b> (classifier of kết quả) <b>hy vọng</b> hope	<b>là</b> be <b>bọn</b> group/gang (pej.) <b>lượm</b> gather <b>kết quả</b> result <b>của</b> of	<b>cái</b> (classifier of kết quả) <b>thực dân</b> colonialist <b>được,</b> be able to <b>trái hẳn</b> quite the contrary <b>chúng.</b> them (pej.)	<b>kết quả</b> result <b>phản động</b> reactionary <b>một</b> one <b>với</b> with
---	---	--	--

*Such is the result which the reactionary colonialists have achieved—just the opposite from what they had hoped.*

(7) <b>Còn</b> And <b>thì</b> be <i>And how about our side?</i>	<b>về</b> about <b>thế nào?</b> how	<b>phía</b> side	<b>ta</b> our
---	--	---------------------	------------------

Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

- (8) **Chúng ta** **biết** **rằng** **kháng chiến**  
 We know that resistance  
**ắt** **phải** **gay go,** **phải**  
 surely must hard must  
**trường kỳ,** **nhưng** **chắc chắn** **sẽ**  
 protracted but definitely ASP.: future actions: will  
**thắng lợi.**  
 succeed  
*We know that our resistance must be hard and long but it will be certain to succeed.*
- (9) **Vì vậy,** **mặc dầu** **gian nan** **cực khổ,**  
 therefore although miserably hard hard and miserable  
**nhân dân** **ta** **ngày càng** **đoàn kết**  
 people our more with everyday unite, solidarity  
 passing day  
**càng** **hăng hái,** **càng** **kiên quyết**  
 more enthusiastic more (be)determined  
**kháng chiến** **cho** **đến** **thắng lợi**  
 to resist (against) to reach win a victory  
 foreign aggression)  
**cuối cùng.**  
 final  
*For that reason, even though there are many difficulties, our people are more and more united, more and more enthusiastic, and more and more determined to resist until the final victory.*
- (10) **Chiến sĩ** **ta** **càng** **nhieu**  
 fighters our more many  
**kinh nghiệm,** **càng** **thêm** **rèn luyện,**  
 experience more add Train  
**càng** **thêm** **dũng cảm,** **Những**  
 more add valiant (pluralizer)  
**trận** **oanh liệt** **ở** **Mỹ Tho,**  
 battle glorious at My Tho  
**ở** **đèo** **Hải Vân,** **Ở**  
 at mountain pass Hai Van At  
**sông** **Lô,** **ở** **Thất Khê,**  
 river Lo at That Khe  
**v.v.,** **đã** **làm** **Địch**  
 (abbr. vân vân) ASP.: past make enemy  
 and so on actions: already  
**kinh hồn** **mất vía.**  
 be frightened out out of one's wits  
 of one's wits

## Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

*Our fighters have more experience, training, and valour. The glorious battles at My Tho, Hai Van mountain pass, Lo river, That Khe, and so on frightened the enemy out of their wits.*

(11)	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>ta</b> our	<b>ngày càng</b> more... and more...	<b>thêm</b> add
	<b>oai tín,</b> prestige	<b>càng</b> more	<b>được</b> have got	<b>ủng hộ</b> support
	<b>và</b> and	<b>là</b> to be	<b>một</b> one	<b>Chính phủ</b> government
	<b>kiên quyết</b> (be)determined	<b>kháng chiến,</b> to resist(against foreign aggression)	<b>một</b> one	<b>Chính phủ</b> government
	<b>đại</b> great	<b>đoàn kết,</b> unite	<b>một</b> one	<b>Chính phủ</b> government
	<b>đồng cam cộng khổ</b> share the happiness and difficulty together( <i>proverb</i> )			<b>với</b> with
	<b>dân,</b> people	<b>một</b> one	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>của</b> of
	<b>dân.</b> people			

*Our government has more and more prestige and support. Our government is the government which is determined to resist, a government of great solidarity and a government which shares both happiness and suffering with the people, a government of the people.*

(12)	<b>Ngoài</b> except	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>thành thị</b> town	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already
	<b>hoang tàn</b> desolate	<b>thì</b> but	<b>thôn quê</b> countryside	<b>khắp</b> every
	<b>cả</b> all	<b>nước</b> country	<b>đều</b> all	<b>vẫn</b> still
	<b>ở</b> at	<b>trong</b> in	<b>tay</b> hand	<b>ta.</b> our

*Except for a few towns which were desolated, the rural areas around the country are still in our hands.*

(13)	<b>Đó</b> that	<b>là</b> to be	<b>kết quả</b> result	<b>tiến bộ</b> make progress
	<b>mà</b> that	<b>ta</b> our	<b>lượm</b> gather	<b>được</b> be able to
	<b>sau</b> after	<b>một</b> one	<b>năm</b> year	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance
	<b>một</b> one	<b>thứ</b> a kind of	<b>kết quả</b> result	<b>như</b> same

Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

<b>ta</b> us	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>đoán</b> guess	<b>trước,</b> before
<b>mà</b> that	<b>kết quả</b> result	<b>đó</b> that	<b>ngày càng</b> more...and more...
<b>mở rộng,</b> expand	<b>tuy vậy</b> however	<b>bọn</b> group/ gang (pej.)	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist
<b>phản động</b> reactionary	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>cướp</b> rob	<b>được,</b> be able to
<b>thì</b> then	<b>chúng</b> they (pej.)	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>phá,</b> destroy
<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>thắng</b> victory	<b>được,</b> be able to	<b>thì</b> then
<b>chúng</b> they (pej.)	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>cắn</b> bite	<b>mấy</b> a few
<b>miếng</b> piece	<b>cho</b> for	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>nu.</b> vent someone anger
<b>Chúng</b> they (pej.)	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>tấn công</b> attack	<b>vùng</b> region
<b>này</b> this	<b>rồi</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>đến</b> to	<b>vùng</b> region
<b>khác.</b> other	<b>Lực lượng</b> power	<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> them (pej.)
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>như</b> such as	<b>mặt trời</b> the Sun	<b>vào</b> into
<b>lúc</b> very	<b>hoàng hôn,</b> sunset	<b>hống hách</b> authoritative	<b>lắm</b> very
<b>nhưng</b> but	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>gần</b> near	<b>tắt nghỉ.</b> breathe one's last

*Such is the progress that we have achieved after a year of resistance—the results we had anticipated and which are expanding day by day. However, if the reactionaries are unable to rob, then they will destroy; if they cannot win, then they will devour a few mouthfuls to vent their anger. They will attack this region and that region. Their strength is like the sun at twilight—very strong but nearly extinguished.*

- (14) **Cho nên**                      **dân**                      **và**                      **quân**  
therefore                      citizen                      and                      army forces



Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

<b>anh hồn</b> soul	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>và</b> and
<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice	<b>vì</b> because
<b>nước,</b> country	<b>và</b> and	<b>gửi</b> send	<b>lời</b> word
<b>thân ái</b> dearly	<b>hỏi thăm</b> inquire after	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter
<b>và</b> and	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>bị thương</b> wounded	<b>cùng</b> together
<b>gia quyến</b> family	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>tướng sĩ.</b> officers	<b>Tôi</b> I
<b>khen ngợi</b> praise	<b>và</b> and	<b>khuyến</b> advice	<b>gắng:</b> endeavour

*On the occasion of the first anniversary of the national resistance, on behalf of the Government, I show respect to the souls of all fighters and fellow-countrymen who sacrificed for our country and send greetings to fighters and fellow-countrymen who were wounded and officers' families. I praise and encourage you to strive:*

(18) - <b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>tướng sĩ</b> officers	<b>từ</b> from	<b>Bắc</b> north
<b>đến</b> to	<b>Nam,</b> south	<b>đang</b> (be in process of)	<b>dũng cảm</b> brave
<b>xung phong</b> assault	<b>giết</b> kill	<b>địch,</b> enemy	<b>quyết</b> determine
<b>đem</b> bring	<b>xương máu</b> blood and bone	<b>giữ vững</b> hold firm	<b>nền</b> base
<b>thống nhất</b> unity	<b>và</b> and	<b>độc lập</b> independent	<b>cho</b> for
<b>nước nhà.</b> home country			

*- Officers from the north to the south are bravely attacking to kill the enemy. They are determined to sacrifice their lives for the unity and independence of our country.*

(19) - <b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>bộ</b> set	<b>chuyên môn</b> specialist	<b>và</b> and
<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>công nhân,</b> worker	<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour
<b>cung cấp</b> supply	<b>vũ khí</b> weapon	<b>tinh xảo</b> skillful	<b>và</b> and
<b>đầy đủ</b> enough	<b>cho</b> for	<b>bộ đội.</b> army	

## Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

- *Specialists and workers are enthusiastically striving to supply skillfully made weapons enough for our army.*

- |      |  |  |   |  |
|------|--|--|---|--|
| (20) | - Anh em<br>brothers<br><b>không hề</b><br>never<br><b>làm trọn</b><br>fulfill | <b>công chức,</b><br>civil servant<br><b>phàn nàn,</b><br>complain<br><b>nhiệm vụ.</b><br>responsibility | <b>cực khổ</b><br>miserable<br><b>luôn luôn</b><br>always | <b>khó nhọc,</b><br>strenuous<br><b>tận tụy</b><br>devoted |
|------|--|--|---|--|
- *Civil servants, [even though] they are very miserable, never complain and are always devoted to fulfilling their responsibilities.*

- |      |  |  |   |   |
|------|--|--|---|---|
| (21) | <b>Toàn thể</b><br>whole<br><b>giúp đỡ</b><br>help<br><b>tham gia</b><br>take part in<br><b>này</b><br>this<br><b>khác.</b><br>other | <b>đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman<br><b>bộ đội</b><br>army<br><b>kháng chiến</b><br>resistance<br><b>hoặc</b><br>or | <b>hậu phương</b><br>rear<br><b>công tác</b><br>mission<br><b>bằng</b><br>by<br><b>bằng</b><br>by | <b>tăng gia sản xuất,</b><br>increase production<br><b>phá hoại,</b><br>destroy<br><b>cách</b><br>way<br><b>cách</b><br>way |
|------|--|--|---|---|
- *All fellow-countrymen in the rear are increasing production, helping the army in its mission to destroy, and taking part in the resistance one way or another.*

- |      |  |   |  |   |
|------|--|---|--|---|
| (22) | - <b>Những</b><br>(pluralizer)   | <b>đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman  | <b>đã</b><br>ASP.: past<br>actions: already  | <b>hy sinh</b><br>sacrifice   |
|      | <b>hết</b><br>finish<br><b>chịu</b><br>accept<br><b>tản cư,</b><br>relocate<br><b>phần</b><br>part<br><b>đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman<br><b>địch</b><br>enemy<br><b>địch</b><br>enemy<br><b>luôn luôn</b><br>always | <b>cả</b><br>all<br><b>khổ</b><br>miserable<br><b>gián tiếp</b><br>indirect<br><b>kháng chiến,</b><br>resistance<br><b>trong</b><br>in<br><b>chiếm,</b><br>seize<br><b>đe dọa</b><br>threaten<br><b>giữ vững</b><br>hold firm | <b>đã</b><br>ASP.: past<br>actions: already<br><b>cơ đồ</b><br>work<br><b>mà</b><br>that<br><b>gánh</b><br>shoulder<br><b>cùng</b><br>together<br><b>vùng</b><br>region<br><b>dù</b><br>however<br><b>lừa gạt,</b><br>deceive<br><b>tinh thần,</b><br>spirit | <b>sản nghiệp,</b><br>wealth<br><b>di cư,</b><br>evacuate<br><b>một</b><br>one<br><b>những</b><br>(pluralizer)<br><b>bị</b><br>be/-ed (passive)<br><b>bị</b><br>be/-ed (passive)<br><b>nhưng</b><br>but<br><b>luôn luôn</b><br>always |

Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

<b>tin tưởng</b> believe	<b>về</b> about	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>và</b> and
<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland			

*- Our fellow-countrymen sacrificed all their wealth, accepted the suffering of evacuation and relocation, indirectly shouldering part of [the burden of] resistance along with fellow-countrymen in the areas under enemy occupation. Even though they were threatened and deceived by the enemy, they always preserve their morale and their trust in the Government and Fatherland.*

(23) - <b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cháu</b> grandchild	<b>nhi đồng,</b> small child	<b>có</b> have
<b>cháu</b> grandchild	<b>thì</b> then	<b>giúp</b> help	<b>bộ đội</b> army
<b>lập</b> establish	<b>chiến công,</b> feat of arms	<b>có</b> have	<b>cháu</b> grandchild
<b>thì</b> then	<b>giúp</b> help	<b>tăng gia sản xuất,</b> increase production	<b>hoặc</b> or
<b>tuyên truyền</b> propaganda	<b>cố động.</b> propagandize	<b>Thật</b> real	<b>xứng đáng</b> worthy
<b>là</b> be	<b>con cháu</b> offspring	<b>Phù Đổng Vương</b> Phu Dong Vuong	<b>và</b> and
<b>Trần Quốc Toàn.</b> Tran Quoc Toan			

*- [As for] children , some are helping the soldiers in their fight, and others are helping to increase production or engage in propaganda. They are truly worthy offspring/descendants of Phù Đổng Vương [a legendary child warrior hero] and Trần Quốc Toàn [a thirteenth-century warrior].*

(24) <b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>kiều bào</b> [overseas] national	<b>ta</b> our	<b>ở</b> at
<b>hải ngoại,</b> foreign countries	<b>mình</b> body	<b>tuy</b> though	<b>sống</b> live
<b>ở</b> at	<b>nước ngoài,</b> foreign country	<b>nhưng</b> but	<b>luôn luôn</b> always
<b>hết lòng</b> heart and soul	<b>giúp</b> help	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland	

*- As for the Vietnamese overseas, even though they live in foreign countries, they always help the Fatherland with all their hearts.*

(25) <b>Tôi</b> I	<b>lại</b> as	<b>xin</b> ask for	<b>thay mặt</b> on behalf of
<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>Việt Nam,</b> Vietnam	<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>anh em</b> brothers

## Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

- |   |                            |  |   |
|---|----------------------------|--|---|
| <b>dân tộc</b><br>nation                    | <b>châu Á</b><br>Asia      | <b>và</b><br>and                       | <b>những</b><br>(pluralizer)            |
| <b>bạn</b><br>friend                        | <b>ở</b><br>at             | <b>các</b><br>(pluralizer)             | <b>hữubang,</b><br>neighbouring country |
| <b>đã</b><br>ASP.: past actions:<br>already | <b>giữ gìn</b><br>preserve | <b>chính nghĩa,</b><br>righteous cause | <b>mà</b><br>that                       |
| <b>ủng hộ</b><br>support                    | <b>nước</b><br>country     | <b>ta.</b><br>our                      |   |
- On behalf of the Vietnamese, I thank the fraternal Asian countries and friends in neighboring countries who have preserved the righteous cause by supporting our country.*
- (26) **Tôi**  
I
- |                                    |                           |                        |  |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------|------------------------|--|
| <b>tầng lớp</b><br>section/stratum | <b>cũng</b><br>also       | <b>cảm ơn</b><br>thank | <b>những</b><br>(pluralizer)             |
| <b>bằng</b><br>equal               | <b>nhân dân</b><br>people | <b>Pháp,</b><br>French | <b>đã</b><br>ASP.: past actions: already |
| <b>việc làm,</b><br>action         | <b>lời nói</b><br>saying  | <b>hoặc</b><br>or      | <b>bằng</b><br>equal                     |
| <b>phản động.</b><br>reactionary   | <b>phản đối</b><br>oppose | <b>bọn</b><br>group    | <b>thực dân</b><br>colonize              |
- I also thank the various groups of French people who have opposed the reactionary colonialists through their words or their actions.*
- (27) **Hỡi**  
exhortative particle
- |                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <b>đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman | <b>toàn quốc,</b><br>the whole country |
|--------------------------------------|--|
- Fellow-countrymen all over country,*
- (28) **Hỡi**  
exhortative particle
- |                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>toàn thể</b><br>whole | <b>tướng sĩ,</b><br>officers |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
- All officers,*
- (30) **Nhân dịp**  
on the occasion of
- |                           |                      |                 |  |
|---------------------------|----------------------|-----------------|--|
| <b>nhắc lại</b><br>repeat | <b>này,</b><br>this  | <b>tôi</b><br>I | <b>trịnh trọng</b><br>solemn statement |
|                           | <b>rằng:</b><br>that |                 |  |
- On this occasion, I repeat the solemn statement that:*
- (31) **Nhân dân**  
people
- |                               |                               |                           |                                       |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>thân thiện</b><br>friendly | <b>Việt Nam</b><br>Vietnamese | <b>sẵn sàng</b><br>ready  | <b>cộng tác</b><br>[official]business |
|                               | <b>với</b><br>with            | <b>nhân dân</b><br>people | <b>Pháp,</b><br>French                |

Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

<b>song</b> however	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnamese	<b>quyết</b> be determined
<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>đầu hàng,</b> surrender	<b>quyết</b> be determined	<b>không</b> NEG.
<b>chịu</b> bear	<b>mất nước,</b> lose one's country	<b>quyết</b> be determined	<b>không</b> NEG.
<b>chịu</b> bear	<b>làm</b> be, serve as	<b>nô lệ</b> slave	<b>một</b> one
<b>lần</b> time	<b>nữa.</b> more		

*The Vietnamese people are ready to make friends with the French people, but the Vietnamese people are determined not to surrender, not to lose their country, and not to be enslaved again.*

(32) <b>Và</b> and	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>Hồ Chí Minh</b> Ho Chi Minh	<b>thề</b> swear
<b>quyết</b> be determined	<b>lãnh đạo</b> lead	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>và</b> and
<b>quân đội</b> armed forces	<b>chiến đấu</b> fight	<b>đến</b> reach	<b>cùng,</b> end
<b>để</b> for	<b>phá tan</b> break (silence,peace)	<b>xiềng xích</b> fetters	<b>của</b> of
<b>bọn</b> group	<b>thực dân,</b> colonize	<b>để</b> for	<b>tranh</b> fight for
<b>lại</b> again	<b>quyền</b> right	<b>thống nhất</b> unite	<b>và</b> and
<b>độc lập.</b> independent	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>Hồ Chí Minh</b> Ho Chi Minh	<b>quyết</b> (be)determined
<b>làm</b> make	<b>trọn</b> complete	<b>cái</b> (classifier of nhiệm vụ)	<b>nhiệm vụ</b> task
<b>vẻ vang</b> glorious	<b>mà</b> that	<b>quốc dân</b> people(of a country)	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already
<b>giao</b> entrust	<b>cho,</b> to	<b>và</b> and	<b>quyết</b> (be)determined
<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>phụ</b> be disloyal to	<b>lòng</b> heart	<b>tin cậy</b> trust
<b>mà</b> that	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow- countryman	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>đặt</b> place
<b>vào</b> into	<b>Chính phủ.</b> Government		

*And the Ho Chi Minh government swears to lead our people and armed forces to fight to the end to destroy the fetters of the colonialists and recapture our*

## Text 5 Appeal on the Occasion of the first Anniversary of the appeal for national resistance (Cont.)

*right to unity and independence. The Ho Chi Minh government is determined to fulfill the glorious task entrusted to it by the people and is determined not to betray the trust which our compatriots have placed in it.*

- (33) **Hỡi** **đồng bào** **toàn quốc** **và**  
 Exhortative particle fellow-countryman the whole country and  
**toàn thể** **tướng sĩ !**  
 whole officers  
*Fellow-countrymen all over country and all officers,*
- (34) **Chúng ta** **cứ** **mạnh dạn** **tiến lên !**  
 we (emphatic, exhortative bold advance  
 particle)  
*Let us boldly advance!*
- (35) **Trường kỳ** **kháng chiến** **nhất định** **thắng lợi !**  
 protracted resistance absolutely certain win a victory  
*A long war of resistance is certain to win a victory!*
- (36) **Thống nhất** **độc lập** **nhất định** **thành công !**  
 unite independent absolutely certain succeed  
*Our unity and independence are certain to be won.*
- (37) **Bắc Bộ,** **ngày** **19** **tháng**  
 the North day 19 month  
**12** **năm** **1947**  
 12 year 1947  
*The North, on December, 19, 1947*

## HỒ CHÍ MINH

- (36) **Sách** **Lời** **Hồ** **Chủ tịch,**  
 book speech Ho Chi Minh president(of the country)  
*Book of President Ho's speech,*
- (37) **Nha** **Thông tin** **Việt Nam,** **1949,**  
 agency information Vietnam 1949  
**t.** **2,** **tr.** **46-48.**  
 (abbr. tập) tome two (abbr. trang) page 46-48  
*The agency of Vietnamese information, 1949, tome 2, page 46-48.*

## TEXT 6

<b>LỜI</b>	<b>KÊU GỌI</b>	<b>THI ĐUA</b>	<b>YÊU NƯỚC<sup>6</sup></b>
word	appeal	compete	patriotic

## APPEAL FOR PATRIOTIC EMULATION

- (1) **Cùng** **toàn thể** **đồng bào** **yêu quý,**  
to whole fellow-countryman dear  
*To all my dear fellow-countrymen,*
- (2) **Nước** **ta** **kinh tế** **lạc hậu,**  
country our economy badward  
**nhưng** **lòng yêu nước** **và** **chí**  
but patriotism and will  
**quật cường** **chẳng** **kém** **ai.**  
indomitable not at all less anybody  
*The economy of our country is lagging behind. But our patriotism and indomitable will are not less than anybody's.*
- (3) **Nay** **muốn** **tự cấp, tự túc,** **đi**  
at present want self-sufficient go  
**kịp** **người ta,** **thì** **chúng ta**  
be in time the others then we  
**phải** **đi** **mau.**  
have to go quick  
*Now if we want to be self-sufficient and catch up with other countries then we have to go quickly.*
- (4) **Vì vậy,** **sĩ,** **nông,** **công,**  
therefore scholars farmers, industrials  
**thương,** **binh,** **gái** **trai**  
traders soldiers female male  
**già** **trẻ,** **toàn thể** **quốc dân**  
old young whole people(of a country)  
**ta,** **vô luận** **ở** **địa vị**  
our regardless of at social position  
**nào,** **làm** **công việc** **gì,**  
which do work what  
**phải** **ra sức** **tham gia** **cuộc**  
must strive take part in (a classifier of noun)  
**Thi đua** **yêu nước,** **tức là** **tăng gia sản xuất.**  
emulation patriotic mean increase production(of)

<sup>6</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 5 (1947-1949) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 5 (1947-1949)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p. 419.

## Text 6 Appeal for patriotic emulation (Cont.)

*Therefore, scholars, farmers, industrialists, soldiers, female and male, old and young, all people of our country regardless of position, whatever the work must join in patriotic emulation. That means increasing production.*

- (5) **Như thế**                      **thì:**  
like that                      then  
*In this way,*
- (6) **Kháng chiến**            **nhất định**                      **thắng lợi,**  
resistance                      absolutely certain                      win a victory  
*the resistance is certain to win victory,*
- (7) **Kiến quốc**                      **nhất định**                      **thành công.**  
establish a state                      absolutely certain                      succeed  
*We will definitely be successful in establishing our nation.*
- (8) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**
- (9) **Viết**                                      **khoảng**                                      **ngày**                                      **1-5-1948.**  
write                                      about                                      day                                      1-5-1948  
*Written around May 1, 1948*
- (10) **Bản gốc**                                      **lưu**                                      **tại**                                      **Trung tâm**  
original                                      detain                                      at                                      centre  
**Lưu trữ**                                      **Quốc gia**                                      **I,**                                      **bản**  
keep as public(government) records                      nation                                      one                                      composition  
**chụp**                                      **lưu**                                      **tại**                                      **Viện**  
photograph                                      detain                                      at                                      institute  
**Hồ Chí Minh.**  
Ho Chi Minh  
*The original version is archived at the National Center of Archives, the photocopied version is archived at the Institute of Ho Chi Minh.*

## TEXT 7

<b>LỜI</b>	<b>KÊU GỌI</b>	<b>TRONG</b>	<b>DỊP</b>	<b>1.000</b>	<b>NGÀY</b>	<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN</b> <sup>7</sup>
word	appeal	in	occasion	1,000	day	resistance

*APPEAL ON THE OCCASION OF 1,000 DAYS OF RESISTANCE*

- (1) **Hỡi đồng bào toàn quốc !**  
 dear fellow-countryman the whole country  
*Fellow-countrymen all over the country!*
- (2) **Hỡi toàn thể tướng sĩ !**  
 dear whole officers  
*All officers*
- (3) **Nhân dịp kỷ niệm 1.000 ngày**  
 occasion anniversary 1,000 day  
**kháng chiến, tôi thay mặt Chính phủ**  
 resistance I on behalf of government  
**kính cẩn nghiêng mình trước linh hồn**  
 profoundly to bow one's head before soul  
 respectful  
**các tử sĩ và đồng bào**  
 (pluralizer) war dead and fellow-countryman  
**đã hy sinh vì nước,**  
 ASP: past action: sacrifice because country  
 already  
**và gửi lời thân ái**  
 and send word beloved  
**hỏi thăm anh em thương và**  
 inquire after brothers war and  
 wounded  
**gia đình các liệt sĩ.**  
 family (pluralizer) militant having laid down his life for  
 the revolution (for the country)

*On the occasion of the 1,000 day anniversary of the resistance, on behalf of the Government, I bow my head to pay respects to the souls of war dead and fellow-countrymen who sacrificed for our country and send warm greetings inquire to our brothers who have been wounded and the family of people who sacrificed for our country.*

<sup>7</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). *Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 5 (1947-1949)* (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 5 (1947-1949)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p. 439-442.

## Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

- (4) **Tôi**                      **gửi**                      **lời**                      **khen ngợi:**  
I                              send                      word                      praise  
*I praise,*
- (5) - **Tướng sĩ**              **đang**                      **oanh liệt**              **giết**  
officers                      be in the process of      glorious                      kill  
**giặc**                      **trước**                      **mặt trận;**  
aggressor                      before                      front  
*- Officers, who are glorious, are killing aggressors at the battlefield;*
- (6) - **Đồng bào**              **đang**                      **hăng hái**              **thực hiện**  
fellow-countryman      be in the process of      enthusiastic              realize  
**thi đua**                      **ái quốc**                      **ở**                      **hậu phương;**  
emulate                      patriotic                      at                      rear  
*- Fellow-countrymen, who are enthusiastic, are proving their patriotism at the battlefield.*
- (7) - **Đồng bào**              **tại**                      **vùng**                      **địch**  
fellow-countryman      at                      area                      enemy  
**tạm chiếm,**              **luôn luôn**              **giữ vững**              **tinh thần**  
temporarily occupied      always                      hold fast                      mind  
**yêu nước**                      **của**                      **người**                      **dân**  
patriotic                      of                      fellow                      people  
**Việt Nam;**  
Vietnam  
*- Fellow-countrymen in the areas occupied by the enemy, always hold fast to your patriotism as Vietnamese people.*
- (8) **Kiều bào**              **ở**                      **hải ngoại**              **luôn luôn**  
[overseas] national      at                      foreign countries      always  
**giúp đỡ**                      **Tổ quốc.**  
help                      fatherland  
*- The Vietnamese overseas, always help our fatherland.*
- (9) **Tôi**                      **lại**                      **khẩn khoản**              **kêu gọi**  
I                              again                      entreat persistently      appeal  
**những**                      **người**                      **đang**                      **lầm đường**  
(pluralizer)              person                      be in the process of      take the wrong way  
**theo**                      **địch,**                      **mau**                      **mau**  
follow                      enemy                      quick                      quick  
**trở về**                      **với**                      **Tổ quốc.**  
return                      with/to                      fatherland  
*I entreat and appeal people who is taking the wrong way by following the enemy, return quickly to your fatherland.*

Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

(10)	<b>Trong</b> in	<b>dịp</b> occasion	<b>này,</b> this	<b>lòng</b> heart
	<b>tôi</b> my	<b>và</b> and	<b>lòng</b> heart	<b>Chính phủ</b> government
	<b>đặc biệt</b> especially	<b>đi</b> go	<b>đến</b> to	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter
	<b>và</b> and	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>Nam Bộ</b> southern part	<b>và</b> and
	<b>miền</b> area	<b>Nam</b> south	<b>Trung Bộ,</b> central	<b>vì</b> because
	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>và</b> and	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow- countryman	<b>ở</b> at
	<b>đó</b> that	<b>đã</b> already	<b>tranh đấu</b> struggle	<b>trước nhất</b> earliest
	<b>và</b> and	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice	<b>nhiều</b> many	<b>nhất.</b> most

*On this occasion, from my heart and the heart of the Government, in particular go with fighters and fellow-countrymen in the South and Southern Central region because they were the first who struggled and sacrificed the most.*

(11)	<b>Sau</b> after	<b>1.000</b> 1,000	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance
	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>hãy</b> let's	<b>kiểm điểm</b> review(for experience drawing)	<b>lại</b> again
	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>bước đường</b> past stage	<b>đã</b> ASP: past actions: already	<b>qua,</b> pass
	<b>và</b> and	<b>chuẩn bị</b> prepare	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>công việc</b> work
	<b>sắp</b> be forthcoming	<b>đến.</b> arrive		

*After 1,000 days of the resistance, let's review we prepare for what will happen soon.*

(12)	<b>1. Sau</b> after	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>vua</b> king	<b>Gia Long</b> Gia Long
	<b>rước</b> welcome	<b>Tây</b> western	<b>vào</b> into	<b>nước,</b> country
	<b>và</b> and	<b>vua</b> king	<b>Tự Đức</b> Tu Duc	<b>nhượng</b> cede
	<b>nước</b> country	<b>cho</b> for	<b>Tây,</b> western	<b>biết bao</b> how many

## Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

<b>liệt sĩ</b> militant having laid down his life for the revolution (for the country)	<b>anh hùng</b> hero	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>phấn đấu</b> strive
<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice	<b>vì</b> because	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland	

*1. After the day of King Gia Long welcomed the Western powers into our country and King Tu Duc ceded our country to the West, so many heroes must strive for our fatherland.*

(13) <b>Trong</b> in	<b>thời kỳ</b> period	<b>đó,</b> that	<b>thế lực</b> strength
<b>thực dân</b> colonize	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>phát triển,</b> development
<b>lại</b> also	<b>thêm</b> increase	<b>thế lực</b> influence	<b>vua chúa</b> crowned heads
<b>trào đĩnh</b> court	<b>làm</b> make	<b>tay sai</b> henceman	<b>cho</b> for
<b>Pháp.</b> French	<b>Nhân dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our	<b>thì</b> then
<b>thiếu</b> lack	<b>tổ chức</b> organize	<b>và</b> and	<b>kinh nghiệm.</b> experience
<b>Vì vậy,</b> therefore	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of tranh đấu)	<b>tranh đấu</b> struggle
<b>oanh liệt</b> glorious	<b>kế tiếp</b> follow	<b>nhau</b> together	<b>trong</b> in
<b>80</b> eighty	<b>năm,</b> year	<b>mà</b> but	<b>kết quả</b> result
<b>đều</b> all	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>thất bại.</b> lose	

*In that period, the influence of the French colonialists was developing and they also increased the influence of the imperial court who acted as their henchman. Our people were unorganized and inexperienced, therefore the glorious struggles we have fought for 80 years but we lost.*

(14) <b>Cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us
<b>ngày nay,</b> nowadays	<b>tuy</b> though	<b>là</b> be	<b>tiếp tục</b> continue
<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of tranh đấu)	<b>tranh đấu</b> struggle	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already
<b>qua,</b> pass	<b>nhưng</b> but	<b>nó</b> it	<b>có</b> have
<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>điều kiện</b> condition	<b>và</b> and	<b>hoàn cảnh</b> context

Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

**khác**                      **hẳn:**  
 different                      definitely  
*Although our present resistance is a continuation of the past struggle, it is under completely differentiation.*

- (15) - **Cuộc**                      **kháng chiến**                      **của**                      **ta**  
 (classifier of resist                      of                      us  
 kháng chiến)  
**đã**                      **tập trung**                      **tất cả**                      **cái**  
 ASP: past concentrate                      all                      (classifier of tinh thần)  
 action: already  
**tinh thần**                      **quật cường**                      **yêu nước**                      **của**  
 mind/spirit indomitable patriotic                      of  
**giống nòi**                      **Hồng Lạc**                      **lưu truyền**                      **từ**  
 race Hong Lac hand down                      from  
**mấy**                      **ngàn**                      **năm.**                      **Nó**  
 a few thousand year                      it  
**tập trung**                      **những**                      **kinh nghiệm**                      **chiến đấu**  
 concentrate (pluralizer) experience                      fight  
**của**                      **các**                      **vị**                      **dân tộc**  
 of (pluralizer) (only one person)                      nation  
**anh hùng**                      **Trần Hưng Đạo,**                      **Lê Thái Tổ,**                      **Nguyễn Quang Trung**  
 heroic Tran Hung Dao                      Le Thai To                      Nguyen Quang Trung  
**để**                      **lại.**  
 for in return  
*- Our resistance was focussed using the indomitable and patriotic spirit of Hong Lac race which has been handed down for thousands of year. It concentrated the experiece fought like heroes such as Tran Hung Dao, Le Thai To, Nguyen Quang Trung for their fight.*

- (16) **Cuộc**                      **kháng chiến**                      **của**                      **ta**  
 (classifier of resist                      of                      us  
 kháng chiến)  
**nổi lên**                      **trong**                      **lúc**                      **lực lượng**  
 rise in time                      power  
**thực dân**                      **đã**                      **suy đồi**                      **ở**  
 colonize ASP: past action: deteriorate                      at  
 already  
**nước**                      **Pháp**                      **cũng**                      **như**  
 country France also                      same  
**ở**                      **thế giới.**                      **Chế độ**                      **vua chúa**  
 at world regime                      crowned heads  
**hủ bại**                      **đã**                      **bị**                      **cách mệnh**  
 corrupt already (passive/-ed)                      revolution

## Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>giải phóng</b> liberate	<b>đánh tan,</b> defeat(an army)	<b>không thể</b> cannot
<b>làm</b> make	<b>tay sai</b> henceman	<b>cho</b> for	<b>địch</b> enemy
<b>nữa.</b> more			

- Our resistance rose powerfully the time of the colony and weatened France and the other countries like France. The corrupt rulers have been defeated by the national liberate revolution and can no longer be henchman for the enemy.

(17) - <b>Cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us
<b>có</b> have	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>điều kiện</b> condition	<b>thuận tiện,</b> favourable
<b>xưa nay</b> always	<b>chưa</b> not yet	<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>nào</b> which
<b>có.</b> have	<b>Từ</b> from	<b>Nam</b> south	<b>đến</b> to
<b>Bắc,</b> north	<b>cả</b> all	<b>nước</b> country	<b>một</b> one
<b>lòng,</b> mind	<b>quyết</b> determine	<b>chống</b> anti	<b>ngoại xâm,</b> foreign aggression
<b>quyết</b> determine	<b>tranh</b> fight for	<b>độc lập.</b> independent	<b>Từ</b> from
<b>Nam</b> south	<b>đến</b> to	<b>Bắc,</b> north	<b>bộ đội</b> army
<b>và</b> and	<b>dân quân,</b> militia	<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic	<b>dũng cảm,</b> valiant
<b>chỉ huy</b> direct	<b>thống nhất.</b> unite	<b>Từ</b> from	<b>Nam</b> south
<b>đến</b> to	<b>Bắc,</b> north	<b>toàn dân</b> all the people	<b>nghe</b> listen
<b>theo</b> follow	<b>mệnh lệnh</b> order	<b>của</b> of	<b>Chính phủ</b> government
<b>trung ương,</b> central	<b>một</b> one	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>do</b> by
<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>cử</b> designate	<b>ra,</b> out	<b>và</b> and
<b>kiên quyết</b> resolute	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>đến cùng</b> to a finish	<b>để</b> for
<b>tranh</b> fight for	<b>thống nhất</b> unite	<b>và</b> and	<b>độc lập</b> independent
<b>cho</b> for	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland		

Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

*- Our resistance has favourable conditions which no other nation has. From the South to the North, all over the country we have only one mind, to fight against foreign aggression and to fight for our independence. From the North to the South, all the people are following the orders of the Central Government. The Government, chosen by the people, and determined its resistance, to fight for the unity and independence of our fatherland.*

- (18) - **Cuộc** (classifier of **kháng chiến**) resist **của** ta, us  
**ngoài** in addition **những** (pluralizer) **điều kiện** có have  
**lợi** advantage **đó,** that **lại** also **được** have got  
**dân chủ** democratic **thế giới** world **ủng hộ.** support **Vì vậy,** therefore  
**mà** that **thắng lợi** victory **nhất định** certainly **về** about  
**tay** hand **ta.** our

*- Our resistance, in addition to those favourable conditions, advantages, also we are supported by democratic countries. Therefore victory is certain in our hands.*

- (19) **2. Chúng ta** **lại** also **xét** consider **cho** for  
we **rõ** clear **tình hình** situation **địch** enemy **và** and  
**tình hình** situation **ta.** our

*2. Let us consider the situation clearly, both the enemies side and our side.*

- (20) **Tình hình** situation **địch:** enemy **Về** in terms of **quân sự –** army  
**Chiến lược** strategy **chớp nhoáng** with lightning attacks **của** of **chúng** they  
**đã** ASP: past action: already **thất bại** lose **rồi.** already **Sau** after  
**1.000** 1,000 **ngày** day **chiến tranh,** war **chúng** they  
**đã** ASP: past action: already **chết** die **và** and **bị thương** wounded  
**mấy** a few **vạn** ten thousand **người,** person **hao phí** waste

## Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>ngàn</b> thousand	<b>triệu</b> million	<b>bạc.</b> money
<b>Mà</b> but	<b>kết quả</b> result	<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>tạm chiếm</b> occupied (by the enemy for some time)
<b>được</b> be able to	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>chỗ</b> place	<b>thành thị</b> town

**đã**  
ASP: past action:  
already

**tan hoang.**  
be devastated

*The situation of the enemy side: about military army and lighting attacks strategy were defeated. After 1,000 days of war, ten thousand died or were wounded and billions spent. But they were only able to occupy a few towns that were devastated.*

(21) <b>Về</b> about	<b>kinh tế:</b> economics	<b>Ở</b> at	<b>đây</b> here
<b>cũng như</b> as well as	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Pháp,</b> France	<b>kinh tế</b> economics
<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> them	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>kiệt quệ,</b> crippled
<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>sống</b> live	<b>ngắc ngoải</b> be at death's door	<b>vào</b> into
<b>sự</b> (classifier of vay nợ)	<b>vay</b> borrow	<b>nợ</b> debt	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
<b>nước</b> country	<b>khác.</b> other		

*The economy: Here as in France, their economy is crippled lowest ebb and they only survive by the borrowing from other countries.*

(22) <b>Về</b> about	<b>chính trị;</b> politics	<b>Những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>âm mưu</b> scheme
<b>chính trị</b> politics	<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>để</b> for
<b>chia rẽ</b> divide	<b>sức</b> power	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>của</b> of
<b>ta,</b> us	<b>đều</b> all	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>thất bại.</b> lose
<b>Kết quả</b> result	<b>cùng</b> together	<b>đường,</b> way	<b>chúng</b> they
<b>phải</b> must	<b>đưa ra</b> bring in	<b>một</b> one	<b>chính phủ</b> government
<b>bù nhìn</b> puppet	<b>ọp ọp</b> tottering	<b>Nguyễn Văn Xuân,</b> Nguyen Van Xuan	<b>một</b> one

Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

<b>tên</b> name	<b>nô lệ</b> slave	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>mà</b> that
<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>đều</b> all	<b>phỉ nhổ.</b> spit upon

*The politics: their political schemes to divide our power of resistance were defeated. The result is the same that they must set up the tottering puppet government of Nguyen Van Xuan, a person enslaved by the French, that fellow-countrymen all over country spit upon.*

(23) <b>Tình hình</b> situation	<b>ta:</b> our	<b>Sau</b> after	<b>80</b> eighty
<b>năm</b> year	<b>nô lệ,</b> slave	<b>sau</b> after	<b>cước</b> (classifier of Thế giới đại chiến)
<b>Thế giới</b> world	<b>đại chiến</b> world war	<b>thứ hai,</b> second	<b>sau</b> after
<b>1.000</b> 1,000	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>thực dân</b> colonize
<b>tàn phá,</b> devastate	<b>dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our	<b>không sao</b> cannot
<b>khỏi</b> avoid	<b>cực khổ</b> hard and miserable	<b>gian nan.</b> miserably hard	<b>Tuy vậy,</b> however
<b>quân sự</b> army	<b>cũng như</b> as well as	<b>chính trị,</b> politics	<b>kinh tế</b> economics
<b>cũng như</b> as well as	<b>văn hóa,</b> culture	<b>vật chất</b> matter	<b>cũng như</b> as well as
<b>tinh thần,</b> mind	<b>càng</b> more	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist	<b>dân</b> people
<b>ta</b> our	<b>càng</b> more	<b>tiến bộ</b> progress	<b>và</b> and
<b>tiến bộ</b> progress	<b>rất</b> very	<b>mau.</b> quick	

*The situation of our side: after 80 years as their slaves, after the world war II, after the 1,000 days of devastation by the French colonialists devastated, our people cannot avoid hardship. However militarily and politically, economically and culturally, materially and morally, the more we resist, the more we advance.*

(24) <b>9</b> nine	<b>phần</b> part	<b>10</b> ten	<b>đất nước</b> homeland
<b>vẫn</b> still	<b>tự do.</b> free	<b>Quân đội</b> army	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more
<b>mạnh mẽ.</b> strong	<b>Nhân dân</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ta</b> our	<b>càng</b> more
<b>đoàn kết.</b> unite	<b>Oai tín</b> prestige	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>ta</b> our

## Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

**càng ngày càng      vững vàng.**

more... and more...      solid

*Nine-tenths of our homeland is still has freedom. Our army is stronger more and more. Fellow-countrymen are united more and more. The prestige of Government is more and more solid.*

(25) Từ	<b>cuộc</b>	<b>vận động</b>	<b>Tăng gia sản xuất</b>
from	(classifier of vận động)	take part in a campaign for	increase production
<b>và</b>	<b>Luyện</b>	<b>quân</b>	<b>lập công,</b>
and	train	army	achieve a feat
<b>chúng ta</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>tiến</b>	<b>đến</b>
we	ASP: past action: already	advance	to
<b>phong trào</b>	<b>thi đua</b>	<b>ái quốc</b>	<b>khắp</b>
movement	emulation	patriotic	all over
<b>mọi</b>	<b>mặt,</b>	<b>khắp</b>	<b>mọi</b>
every	side	all over	every
<b>nơi.</b>	<b>Với</b>	<b>lòng</b>	<b>nồng nàn</b>
place	with	heart	ardent
<b>yêu nước</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>lực lượng</b>	<b>Vô cùng</b>
patriotic	and	power	endless
<b>tận</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>nhân dân</b>	<b>ta,</b>
finish	of	fellow-countryman	our
<b>cuộc</b>	<b>Thi đua</b>	<b>ái quốc</b>	<b>nhất định</b>
(classifier of Thi đua ái quốc)	emulation	patriotic	certainly
<b>sẽ</b>	<b>thành công</b>	<b>to.</b>	<b>Vì vậy,</b>
ASP:future action: will	succeed	great	therefore
<b>mà</b>	<b>thắng lợi</b>	<b>càng</b>	<b>nhất định</b>
that	victory	more	certainly
<b>về</b>	<b>tay</b>	<b>ta.</b>	
return	hand	our	

*With our take part in this campaign to increase production and train our army for success, we have advanced our patriotic movement on all sides and in all places with the patriotic heart and unlimited power of our fellow-countrymen. We are certain to have the great success return to our hands.*

(26) <b>3. Chúng ta</b>	<b>đủ</b>	<b>điều kiện</b>	<b>thắng lợi.</b>
we	enough	condition	victory
<b>Chúng ta</b>	<b>chắc</b>	<b>thắng lợi.</b>	<b>Song</b>
we	surely	victory	however
<b>chúng ta</b>	<b>phải</b>	<b>biết</b>	<b>rằng,</b>
we	must	know	that

Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

<b>càng</b> more	<b>gần</b> near	<b>đến</b> to	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory
<b>thì</b> then	<b>càng</b> more	<b>gay go.</b> hard	<b>Mà</b> but
<b>gay go</b> hard	<b>càng</b> more	<b>nhiều,</b> many	<b>thì</b> then
<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>càng</b> more	<b>to.</b> great	<b>Vì vậy,</b> therefore
<b>mỗi</b> each	<b>một</b> one	<b>người</b> person	<b>quốc dân</b> people(of a country)
<b>phải</b> must	<b>tẩy</b> wipe out	<b>sạch</b> cleanly	<b>cái</b> (classifier of thoi)
<b>thói:</b> habit	<b>khi</b> when	<b>thì</b> then	<b>quá</b> very
<b>lạc quan,</b> optimistic	<b>khi</b> when	<b>thì</b> then	<b>quá</b> very
<b>bi quan.</b> pessimistic	<b>Phải</b> must	<b>tẩy</b> wipe out	<b>sạch</b> cleanly
<b>cái</b> (classifier of chúng)	<b>chứng</b> bad habit	<b>cầu</b> be eager for	<b>yên,</b> peace/quiet
<b>gặp</b> meet	<b>sao</b> whatever	<b>hay</b> know	<b>vậy,</b> that
<b>muốn</b> want	<b>ăn</b> eat	<b>quả</b> fruit	<b>mà</b> but
<b>biếng</b> disinclined/lazy	<b>trồng</b> plant	<b>cây.</b> tree	

3. *We have enough to win the victory. We are certain to win victory. However, we must know that nearer the victory the harder. It is the harder, the greater the victory. Must get rid of the bad habit of sometimes being too optimistic and other times too pessimistic, of just wanting peace or taking things or they come or wanting to get something without working for it.*

(27) <b>Mỗi</b> each	<b>một</b> one	<b>người</b> person/individual	<b>dân</b> people
<b>phải</b> must	<b>hiểu:</b> understand	<b>có</b> have	<b>tự lập</b> be independent
<b>mới</b> can	<b>độc lập,</b> independent	<b>có</b> have	<b>tự cường</b> become strong by one's own efforts
<b>mới</b> can	<b>tự do.</b> independent	<b>Đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>đoàn kết,</b> unite
<b>ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>chặt chẽ</b> close
<b>rộng rãi</b> generous	<b>thêm.</b> increase	<b>Đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>cố gắng,</b> strive

## Text 7 Appeal on the occasion of 1,000 days of resistance (Cont.)

<b>ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic	<b>mà</b> that
<b>cố gắng</b> strive	<b>mãi.</b> forever	<b>Mỗi</b> each	<b>một</b> one
<b>người</b> person	<b>phải</b> must	<b>lấy</b> take	<b>việc</b> work
<b>xung phong</b> come forward as a volunteer	<b>trong</b> in	<b>phong trào</b> movement	<b>Thi đua</b> emulation
<b>ái quốc</b> patriotic	<b>là</b> be	<b>nhiệm vụ</b> responsibility	<b>thiêng liêng</b> sacred
<b>của</b> of	<b>mình,</b> oneself	<b>phải</b> must	<b>cố</b> try
<b>làm cho</b> make	<b>được.</b> be able to		

*Everyone must understand, only if we are self sufficient, we can be independent. Even if we are already united, we must unite more. Even if we strive, now we must enthusiastically strive forever. Everyone must volunteer in the movement for patriotic action which is our sacred responsibility and must try to reach the end.*

- (28) **Như vậy,** **thì** **kháng chiến** **nhất định**  
so then resistance certainly  
**thắng lợi,** **kiến quốc** **nhất định** **thành công.**  
victory found a state certainly succeed  
*So, the resistance is certain to win victory and the founding of our state is certain to succeed.*

- (29) **Chào** **thân ái** **và** **quyết thắng**  
greet dearly and be resolved to win  
*Warm greetings and resolve to win the victory*

(30) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**

- (31) **Viết** **khoảng** **ngày** **10-6-1948.**  
write about date 10-6-1948  
*Written around June 10, 1948*

- (32) **Báo** **Cứu quốc,** **chi nhánh,** **số**  
newspaper Cuu quoc branch number  
**6,** **số** **966,** **ngày**  
six number 966 date  
**22-6-1948.**  
22-6-1948  
*Cuu quoc(Save the country) newspaper, branch, no.6, no. 966, on June, 22, 1948.*

## TEXT 8

<b>LỜI</b>	<b>KÊU GỌI</b>	<b>THI ĐUA</b>	<b>AÍ QUỐC<sup>8</sup></b>
word	appeal	emulation	patriotic

## APPEAL TO EXERT PATRIOTISM

- (1) **Mục đích**      **thi đua**      **ái quốc**      **là,**  
 purpose      emulation      patriotic      be  
*Purpose if patriotic emulation is*
- (2) **Diệt**      **giặc**      **đói,**  
 destroy      enemy      be starve  
*to eliminate starvation,*
- (3) **Diệt**      **giặc**      **dốt,**  
 destroy      enemy      uneducated  
*to eliminate illiteracy,*
- (4) **Diệt**      **giặc**      **ngoại xâm.**  
 destroy      enemy      foreign aggression  
*to destroy the aggressors who invade us.*
- (5) **Cách**      **làm**      **là:**      **dựa**  
 way      do      be      rely depend  
**vào:**  
 on  
*The way to do this is to stand up against them with*
- (6) **Lực lượng**      **của**      **dân,**  
 power      of      people  
*the power of the people,*
- (7) **Tinh thần**      **của**      **dân,**      **để**  
 spirit/mind      of      people,      for  
**gây:**  
 provoke/produce  
*make war with people power:*
- (8) **Hạnh phúc**      **cho**      **dân.**  
 happiness      to      people  
*Happiness to our people.*

<sup>8</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 5 (1947-1949) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 5 (1947-1949)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.444-446.

## Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism (Cont.)

- (9) **Vì vậy** **bổn phận** **của** **người**  
therefore obligation of person/individual  
**dân** **Việt Nam,** **bất kỳ** **sĩ,**  
people Vietnamese no matter scholars  
**nông,** **công,** **thương,** **binh;**  
farmers industrials traders soldiers  
**bất kỳ** **làm việc** **gì,** **đều**  
whether work what all  
**cần** **phải** **thi đua** **nhau:**  
must must emulate(in work) each other  
*Therefore, this is the obligation of Vietnamese people whether you are scholars, farmers, industrials, traders or soldiers, you also must challenge in every thing you do.*
- (10) **Làm** **cho** **mau,**  
do for quick  
*Do quickly,*
- (11) **Làm** **cho** **tốt,**  
do for good  
*Do well,*
- (12) **Làm** **cho** **nhiều.**  
do for many  
*Do a lot.*
- (13) **Mỗi** **người** **dân** **Việt Nam,**  
every (classifier of dân) people Vietnamese  
**bất kỳ** **già,** **trẻ,** **traí,**  
regardless old young man  
**gái;** **bất kỳ** **giàu,** **nghèo,**  
woman regardless rich poor  
**lớn,** **nhỏ,** **đều** **cần**  
adult youth all must  
**phải** **trở nên** **một** **chiến sĩ**  
must become one fighter  
**tranh đấu** **trên** **mặt trận:** **Quân sự,**  
fight on front military  
**Kinh tế,** **Chính trị,** **Văn hóa.** **Thực hiện**  
economy politics culture realize  
**khẩu hiệu:**  
slogan  
*All Vietnamese people, even old and young, men and women, rich and poor, adults and youths have to become fighters to fight at the front: military, economy, politics, and culture. Realize our slogans as:*

Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism (Cont.)

- (14) **Toàn dân**                      **kháng chiến,**  
 all the people                      resist(against foreign aggression)  
*All people resist foreign aggression,*
- (15) **Toàn diện**                      **kháng chiến.**  
 all-sided                              resist(against foreign aggression)  
*Complete resistance,*
- (16) **Trong**                      **cuộc**                      **thi đua**                      **ái quốc,**  
 in                                      (use before verb to create noun)                      emulation                      patriotic  
**chúng ta:**  
 we
- (17) **Vừa**                                      **kháng chiến,**  
 at the same time/ both...and                      resist(against foreign aggression)
- (18) **Vừa**                                      **kiến quốc.**  
 at the same time/ both...and                      found a state  
*To be patriotic, we have to simultaneously resist and establish our state.*
- (19) **Kết quả**                                      **đầu tiên**                      **của**                      **Thi đua**  
 result                                      first                                      of                                      emulation  
**ái quốc**                                      **sẽ**                                      **là:**  
 patriotic                                      ASP: future action: will                      be  
*The first result of our patriotic challenge will be*
- (20) **Toàn dân**                                      **đủ**                                      **ăn**                                      **đủ**  
 all the people                                      enough                                      eat                                      enough  
**mặc,**  
 wear  
*All people to have adequate food and clothing,*
- (21) **Toàn dân**                                      **biết**                                      **đọc,**                                      **biết**  
 all the people                                      know                                      read                                      know  
**viết,**  
 write  
*All people to know how to read and write,*
- (22) **Toàn**                      **bộ đội**                      **đầy đủ**                      **lương thực,**  
 all                                      soldier                                      adequate                                      cereals  
**khí giới,**                      **để**                                      **diệt**                                      **ngoại xâm,**  
 weapon                                      for                                      wipe                                      foreign aggression/invasion from outside  
*All soldiers to have adequate provisions and weapons to eliminate foreign aggression,*

## Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism (Cont.)

- (23) **Toàn quốc** sẽ **thống nhất** **độc lập**  
 the whole country ASP: future action: will unite independent  
**hoàn toàn.**  
 perfect/complete  
*The whole country will have completely unity and independence.*
- (24) **Thế là** **chúng ta** **thực hiện:**  
 so we realize/achieve  
*To bring about*
- (25) **Dân tộc** **độc lập,**  
 nation independent  
*an independent nation*
- (26) **Dân quyền** **tự do,**  
 civil rights liberty  
*with civil rights and liberty*
- (27) **Dân sinh** **hạnh phúc,**  
 People's material and moral welfare happiness  
*for the material and moral, benefit of a happy people*
- (28) **Ba** **chủ nghĩa** **mà** **nhà**  
 three doctrine which (classifier of cách mạng)  
**đại** **cách mạng** **Tôn Văn** **đã**  
 great revolutionary Sun Yat Sen ASP: past actions: already  
**nêu ra.**  
 bring up  
*Three doctrines which the great revolutionary that Sun Yat Sen developed.*
- (29) **Để** **đi** **đến** **kết quả**  
 for go reach result  
**tốt đẹp** **đó,** **tôi** **xin**  
 wonderful that I ask for  
*In order to be achieve those wonderful results I ask*
- (30) **Các** **cụ** **phụ lão** **thi đua**  
 (pluralizer) great-grandparent elder emulate(in work)  
**đốc thúc** **con cháu** **hăng hái** **tham gia**  
 urge offspring enthusiastic take part in  
**mọi** **công việc,**  
 every work  
*all elders to urge your offspring to enthusiastically take part in all efforts.*
- (31) **Các** **cháu** **nhi đồng** **thi đua**  
 (pluralizer) (grand)child small child emulate(in work)

## Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism (Cont.)

- |      |   |   |                                    |                                    |
|------|---|---|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
|      | <b>học hành</b><br>study  | <b>và</b><br>and                                | <b>giúp</b><br>help                | <b>việc</b><br>work                |
|      | <b>người lớn,</b><br>adult  |   |                                    |                                    |
|      | <i>All children study and help adults work.</i>                                   |   |                                    |                                    |
| (32) | <b>Đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman  | <b>phú hào</b><br>local influential<br>rich man | <b>thi đua</b><br>emulate(in work) | <b>mở mang</b><br>expand           |
|      | <b>doanh nghiệp,</b><br>business  |   |                                    |                                    |
|      | <i>Local influential or rich fellow-countrymen, expand your businesses,</i>       |   |                                    |                                    |
| (33) | <b>Đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman  | <b>công nông</b><br>worker and peasant          | <b>thi đua</b><br>emulate(in work) | <b>sản xuất,</b><br>produce        |
|      | <i>Workers and peasant fellow-countrymen, labour to produce more,</i>             |   |                                    |                                    |
| (34) | <b>Đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman  | <b>trí thức</b><br>intellectual                 | <b>và</b><br>and                   | <b>chuyên môn</b><br>professional  |
|      | <b>thi đua</b><br>emulate(in work)  | <b>sáng tác</b><br>create                       | <b>và</b><br>and                   | <b>phát minh,</b><br>invent        |
|      | <i>Intellectual and professional fellow-countrymen, create and invent,</i>        |   |                                    |                                    |
| (35) | <b>Nhân viên</b><br>employee  | <b>Chính phủ</b><br>government                  | <b>thi đua</b><br>emulate(in work) | <b>tận tụy</b><br>be dedicated to  |
|      | <b>làm việc,</b><br>work  | <b>phụng sự</b><br>serve                        | <b>nhân dân,</b><br>people         |                                    |
|      | <i>Government employees, be dedicated in your work and serve our people.</i>      |   |                                    |                                    |
| (36) | <b>Bộ đội</b><br>army   | <b>và</b><br>and                                | <b>dân quân</b><br>militia         | <b>thi đua</b><br>emulate(in work) |
|      | <b>giết cho</b><br>kill   | <b>nhều</b><br>many                             | <b>giặc,</b><br>foreign aggressor  | <b>đoạt</b><br>dispossess someone  |
|      | <b>cho</b><br>for   | <b>nhều</b><br>many                             | <b>súng.</b><br>gun                |                                    |
|      | <i>Soldiers and militias to kill more foreign aggressors and take their arms.</i> |   |                                    |                                    |
| (37) | <b>Nói</b><br>say   | <b>tóm lại,</b><br>in brief                     | <b>ai</b><br>who                   | <b>cũng</b><br>also                |
|      | <b>thi đua,</b><br>emulate(in work)   | <b>ai</b><br>who                                | <b>cũng</b><br>also                | <b>tham gia</b><br>take part in    |
|      | <b>kháng chiến</b><br>resistance  | <b>và</b><br>and                                | <b>kiến quốc.</b><br>found a state | <b>Phong trào</b><br>movement      |
|      | <b>sôi nổi.</b><br>ebullient  |   |                                    |                                    |

## Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism (Cont.)

*In brief, everyone must take part in this resistance and found our state. Our movement is dynamic.*

(38)	<b>Thi đua</b> emulate(in work) <b>lan</b> spread <b>mặt</b> side <b>nhân dân,</b> people  <b>ta</b> us <b>khó khăn</b> difficult <b>của</b> of <b>đến</b> reach	<b>ái quốc</b> patriotic  <b>rộng</b> wide <b>và</b> and <b>và</b> and  <b>đẹp tan</b> clear <b>và</b> and <b>địch</b> enemy <b>thắng lợi</b> win a victory	<b>sẽ</b> ASP: future action: will <b>khắp</b> every <b>mọi</b> all <b>sẽ</b> ASP: future action: will <b>mọi</b> all <b>mọi</b> all <b>để</b> for <b>cuối cùng.</b> final	<b>ăn sâu,</b> deep-rooted (especially for feelings) <b>mọi</b> all <b>tầng lớp</b> stratum <b>giúp</b> help  <b>nổi</b> (classifier of khó khăn) <b>âm mưu</b> scheme <b>đi</b> go
------	---	--	---	--

*Our patriotic fervour is deep-rooted and will spread to all strata of society. It will help us to clear away all difficulties, and the schemes of the enemy, to reach to our final victory.*

(39)	<b>Với</b> with <b>lực lượng</b> power/force <b>ta,</b> our <b>chí</b> will <b>và</b> and <b>có thể</b> be able to <b>thắng lợi.</b> win a victory	<b>trinh thần</b> mind/intellect <b>vô tận</b> endless <b>với</b> with <b>kiên quyết</b> [be]determined <b>quân đội</b> army/army forces <b>thắng lợi,</b> win a victory	<b>quật cường</b> undaunting <b>của</b> of <b>lòng yêu nước</b> patriotism <b>của</b> of <b>ta,</b> our <b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>và</b> and <b>dân tộc</b> nation <b>và</b> and <b>nhân dân</b> people <b>chúng ta</b> we <b>nhất định</b> absolutely certain
------	---	---	---	--

*With undaunted minds, and the endless efforts, patriotism of our people and armed forces, we can win a victory. We are assured certain victory.*

(40)	<b>Hỡi</b> dear <i>All fellow-countrymen,</i>	<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>đồng bào,</b> fellow-countryman
------	---	--------------------------	---------------------------------------

Text 8 Appeal to exert patriotism (Cont.)

- (41) **Hỡi**                      **toàn thể**                      **chiến sĩ,**  
 dear                              whole                              soldiers  
*All fighters,*
- (42) **Tiến lên !**  
 march forward  
*March forward!*
- (43) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**
- (44) **Viết**                      **ngày**                      **11-6-1948.**  
 write                              date                              11-6-1948  
*Written on June 11, 1948.*
- (45) **Báo**                      **Cứu quốc,**                      **chi nhánh,**                      **Số**  
 newspaper                      Cuu quoc                      branch                      number  
**6,**                      **số**                      **968,**                      **ngày**  
 six                      number                      968                      date  
**24-6-1948.**  
 24-6-2948  
*Cuu quoc newspaper, branch, no.6, no. 968, on June, 24, 1948.*

## TEXT 9

<b>LỜI</b> word	<b>KÊU GỌI</b> appeal	<b>NHÂN</b> occasion	<b>NGÀY</b> day	<b>KỶ NIỆM</b> anniversary
<b>HAI</b> two	<b>NĂM</b> year	<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN</b> resistance		<b>TOÀN QUỐC</b> <sup>9</sup> the whole country

*APPEAL ON THE OCCASION OF THE SECOND ANNIVERSARY OF  
THE NATIONAL RESISTANCE*

- (1) **Cùng**  
to  
*To fellow-countrymen all over country,*
- đồng bào**  
fellow-countryman
- toàn quốc,**  
the whole country
- (2) **Cùng**  
to  
*To all fighters,*
- toàn thể**  
whole
- chiến sĩ,**  
fighter
- (3) **Hôm nay,**  
today
- cuộc**  
(classifier of trường  
kỳ kháng chiến)
- trường kỳ**  
protracted
- kháng chiến**  
resistance
- bước sang**  
enter
- năm**  
year
- thứ ba,**  
third
- riêng**  
for one's own part
- Nam Bộ**  
Southern part
- đã**  
ASP.: past actions:  
already
- đến**  
reach
- năm**  
year
- thứ tư.**  
fourth
- Chúng ta**  
we
- hãy**  
let
- xét**  
consider
- lại**  
again
- tình hình**  
situation
- hai**  
two
- năm**  
year
- vừa**  
just
- qua,**  
pass
- để**  
for
- tiến hành**  
implement
- công việc**  
work
- trong**  
in
- năm**  
year
- sắp**  
be forthcoming
- đến.**  
arrive
- Tình hình**  
situation
- trong**  
in
- hai**  
two
- năm**  
year
- đó**  
that
- thế nào ?**  
how

*Today, the protracted war of resistance is entering its third year and in the south, it is in its fourth year. Let us review the situation over the past two years in order to carry out our work in the coming year. How was the situation in those first two years?*

<sup>9</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 5 (1947-1949) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 5 (1947-1949)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.530-533.



## Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance (Cont.)

<b>đến</b> to	<b>lượt</b> time turn	<b>công chức</b> civil servant	<b>Pinhông,</b> Pignon
<b>chắc</b> surely	<b>rồi</b> already	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>thất bại.</b> lose

*The representatives of the French government in Indochina have had to be changed three times. The warlord D'Argenlieu lost and had to go back to the monastery, the politician Bollaertt also lost and was thrown out of the upper chamber. Currently, it's the turn of the civil servant Pignon, who is certain to lose.*

(7) <b>Chính sách</b> policy	<b>chia rẽ,</b> divide	<b>chính sách</b> policy	<b>dùng</b> use
<b>người</b> people	<b>Việt</b> Vietnamese	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>dân</b> people
<b>Việt</b> Vietnamese	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>thất bại.</b> lose	<b>Lũ</b> group (pej.)
<b>bù nhìn</b> puppet	<b>phản quốc,</b> betray one's country	<b>chẳng những</b> not only ... but also	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)
<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ta</b> our	<b>phỉ nhổ,</b> spit out	<b>mà</b> that
<b>lại</b> also	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>chê cười.</b> speak scornfully of and sneer at

*Their policy of division, of "Using the Vietnamese to fight the Vietnamese" was also defeated. The traitorous puppets not only were spit out by our fellow-countrymen, they were mocked by all the people over the world.*

(8) <b>2. Quân sự:</b> military affairs	<b>Từ</b> from	<b>tướng</b> general	<b>Locléc,</b> Loclec
<b>tướng</b> general	<b>Valuy,</b> Value	<b>tướng</b> general	<b>Xalăng</b> Salan
<b>đến</b> to	<b>tướng</b> general	<b>Bledô,</b> Bledeaux	<b>địch</b> enemy
<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thay đổi</b> change	<b>thống soái</b> supreme commander
<b>bốn</b> four	<b>lần.</b> time		

*2. Military affairs: from General Leclerc, General Value, General Salan to General Bledeaux, the enemy has had to change commanders four times.*

(9) <b>Binh sĩ</b> soldiers	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>mỗi</b> each	<b>tháng</b> month
--------------------------------	----------------------	--------------------	-----------------------

Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>ta</b> we	<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out	<b>từ</b> from
<b>800</b> 800	<b>đến</b> to	<b>1.000</b> 1,000	<b>người,</b> person
<b>cho nên</b> therefore	<b>ngoài</b> over	<b>lính</b> soldier	<b>Pháp,</b> French
<b>chúng</b> they	<b>phải</b> must	<b>dùng</b> use	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)
<b>tội nhân</b> guilty person	<b>Pháp,</b> French	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>tù binh</b> prisoner of war(P.O.W.)
<b>Đức</b> German	<b>và</b> and	<b>Ý,</b> Italian	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)
<b>lính</b> soldier	<b>Maróc,</b> Moroccan	<b>da đen.</b> black-skinned	<b>Chúng</b> they
<b>lại</b> also	<b>bắt ép</b> compel	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thanh niên</b> youth
<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam	<b>trong</b> in	<b>vùng</b> area	<b>tạm</b> temporary
<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>chiếm</b> occupy	<b>đi làm</b> go to work
<b>bia</b> target	<b>đỡ</b> prevent	<b>đạn.</b> bullet	<b>Phần</b> part
<b>đông</b> crowded	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ấy</b> that
<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>chờ</b> wait	<b>đợi</b> chance	<b>để</b> for
<b>quay</b> turn	<b>về</b> come back	<b>với</b> with	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland

*Every month, from 800 to 1,000 enemy soldiers are eliminated. Therefore, they used not only French soldiers but also French prisoners, German and Italian Prisoners of war, and Moroccan black-skinned soldiers. They also compelled Vietnamese youths in the temporary occupied area to go to block the bullets. The majority of those compatriots are waiting for their chance to return to their fatherland's side.*

- (10) **3. Kinh tế:** **Chúng** **phải** **hao tổn**  
 economic they must waste  
**hàng** **muôn** **triệu** **về**  
 goods ten thousand million about  
**binh bị,** **mà** **nền** **kinh tế**  
 armament that (used in front of nouns to indicate a political, cultural, economic...system) economics

## Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance (Cont.)

<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> them	<b>ở</b> at	<b>đây</b> here
<b>lại</b> also	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>phá sản.</b> go bankrupt	<b>Trước</b> before
<b>kia</b> that	<b>100</b> 100	<b>phần,</b> part	<b>nay</b> at present
<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>còn</b> still	<b>ba,</b> three	<b>bốn</b> four
<b>phần.</b> part			

3. *Economics: they wasted ten thousand million Francs for their armaments. It shows their economy here also was bankrupted. They have 100 parts before but currently they have only 3-4 parts [meaning that their economy is only about 3 or 4 percent of what it once was].*

(11) <b>4. Thêm</b> increase	<b>vào</b> into	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thất bại</b> lose
<b>đó,</b> that	<b>tình hình</b> situation	<b>nội bộ</b> internal situation(of an organization)	<b>nước</b> country
<b>Pháp</b> France	<b>lại</b> also	<b>rất</b> very	<b>rối ren.</b> confused
<b>Trên</b> on	<b>trường</b> field	<b>ngoại giao,</b> foreign affairs	<b>Pháp</b> France
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>thất bại,</b> lose	<b>và</b> and	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)
<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>đế quốc</b> empire	<b>khác</b> other	<b>lấn át,</b> grope one's way
<b>đánh lừa.</b> deceive			

4. *In addition to those defeats, their internal situation is very confused. France has been defeated on the diplomatic stage. They were encroached upon and deceived by other empires.*

(12) <b>VỀ</b> about	<b>PHÍA</b> side	<b>TA:</b> our
<i>About our side,</i>		

(13) <b>1. Trong khi</b> while	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>lập</b> establish
<b>lên,</b> rise	<b>đổ</b> collapse	<b>xuống</b> down	<b>mấy</b> a few
<b>lần,</b> time	<b>oai</b> stately	<b>tín</b> faith	<b>Chính phủ</b> government

Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>ta</b> our	<b>càng ngày càng</b> more and more	<b>vững chắc,</b> firm
<b>chẳng những</b> not only...	<b>được</b> be able to	<b>Quốc hội</b> National assembly	<b>và</b> and
<b>nhân dân</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ta</b> our	<b>ủng hộ,</b> support	<b>mà</b> but also...
<b>danh vọng</b> respectability	<b>trên</b> on	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>càng ngày càng</b> more and more
<b>thêm</b> increase	<b>cao.</b> high		

1. *While French governments have been established and fallen again and again, the prestige of our government of the resistance is more and more solid. Not only do we receive the support of our National Assembly and people, our reputation around the world is getting better and better.*

(14) <b>Nhân dân</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ta</b> our	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more
<b>chặt chẽ,</b> close	<b>lực lượng</b> power	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more
<b>dồi dào.</b> strong			

*Our fellow-countrymen unite more and more. We have more and more power of the resistance.*

(15) <b>2. Năm</b> year	<b>đầu</b> beginning	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance	<b>quân đội</b> army
<b>ta</b> our	<b>còn</b> still	<b>thơ trẻ,</b> still very young in age	<b>vũ khí</b> weapon
<b>ta</b> our	<b>rất</b> very	<b>thô sơ.</b> primitive	<b>Trong</b> in
<b>Nam</b> south	<b>thì</b> then	<b>gậy</b> stick	<b>tầm vông,</b> vulgar bamboo
<b>ngoài</b> in	<b>Bắc</b> north	<b>thì</b> then	<b>súng</b> gun
<b>đạn</b> bullet	<b>cũ.</b> old	<b>Thế mà</b> however	<b>ta</b> we
<b>cũng</b> still	<b>cản</b> block	<b>được</b> be able to	<b>địch.</b> enemy

2. *During the early years of the resistance, our army had little experience. Our weapons were very primitive. In the south, we used bamboo sticks. In the north, we used old guns and bullets. However we still could obstruct/block the enemy.*

(16) <b>Ngày nay,</b> nowadays	<b>quân đội</b> army	<b>ta</b> our	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already
-----------------------------------	-------------------------	------------------	--

## Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance (Cont.)

<b>trưởng thành</b>	<b>về</b>	<b>mọi</b>	<b>mặt.</b>
grow up	in	every	side
<b>Ta</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>nhiều</b>	<b>phen</b>
we	ASP.: past actions: already	many	chance
<b>cho</b>	<b>địch</b>	<b>nếm mùi</b>	<b>vũ khí</b>
for	enemy	taste[of]	weapon
<b>mới</b>	<b>của</b>	<b>ta,</b>	<b>như</b>
new	of	us	same
<b>ở</b>	<b>Đông Tháp Mười,</b>	<b>ở</b>	<b>đèo</b>
at	Dong Thap Muoi	at	mountain path
<b>Hải Vân,</b>	<b>ở</b>	<b>Việt Bắc,</b>	<b>và</b>
Hai Van	at	Viet Bac	and
<b>ở</b>	<b>nhiều</b>	<b>trận</b>	<b>khác.</b>
at	many	battle	other

*Currently, our army has grown up in every respect. We gave the enemy many chances to taste our new weapons in Dong Thap Muoi, Hai Van mountain pass, Viet Bac and other battlefields.*

(17) <b>Ta</b>	<b>lại</b>	<b>có</b>	<b>lực lượng</b>
we	also	have	power
<b>dân quân</b>	<b>du kích</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>lớn</b>
militia	guerilla	big	big
<b> mạnh mẽ.</b>	<b>Chẳng những</b>	<b>các</b>	<b>đội</b>
strong	not only...	(pluralizer)	group
<b>du kích</b>	<b>trai tráng,</b>	<b>mà</b>	<b>những</b>
guerilla	young and strong	but also	(pluralizer)
<b>đội</b>	<b>phụ lão</b>	<b>du kích,</b>	<b>phụ nữ</b>
group	elderly people	guerilla	woman
<b>du kích</b>	<b>cũng</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>nhiều</b>
guerilla	also	ASP.: past actions: already	many

<b>lần</b>	<b>giết</b>	<b>giặc,</b>	<b>lập công.</b>
time	kill	aggressor	achieve a feat

*We also have the powerful guerilla militia because we have not only groups of young and strong guerillas, but also elderly and female guerilla units who have on many occasions killed aggressors and achieved [great] feats.*

(18) <b>3. Kinh tế,</b>	<b>tài chính,</b>	<b>văn hóa</b>	<b>của</b>
economics	finance	culture	of
<b>ta</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>vượt</b>	<b>qua</b>
us	ASP.: past actions: already	pass	pass
<b>những</b>	<b>bước</b>	<b>khó khăn,</b>	<b>và</b>
(pluralizer)	step	difficult	and

Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>vẫn</b> still	<b>theo</b> follow	<b>đà</b> impetus	<b>phát triển.</b> develop
---------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	-------------------------------

3. *Our economics, finance and culture have passed through many difficulties and are still developing.*

(19) <b>Ta</b> we	<b>có</b> have	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory
<b>vẻ vang</b> glorious	<b>ấy,</b> that	<b>là</b> be	<b>do</b> because of
<b>lòng</b> heart	<b>nồng nàn</b> ardent	<b>yêu nước</b> patriotic	<b>và</b> and
<b>sự</b> (classifier of đoàn kết)	<b>đoàn kết</b> unity	<b>nhất trí</b> be of one mind	<b>của</b> of
<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>và</b> and	<b>chiến sĩ.</b> fighter	

*We have those glorious victories because of the patriotism and unity of our fellow-countrymen and fighters.*

(20) <b>Vậy</b> so	<b>nhân dịp</b> occasion	<b>này</b> this	<b>tôi</b> I
<b>thay mặt</b> on behalf of	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>và</b> and
<b>khen ngợi:</b> commend			

*On this occasion, on behalf of the Government, I thank and praise*

(21) <b>Toàn thể</b> whole	<b>chiến sĩ,</b> fighter	<b>Vệ quốc quân</b> Vietnamese National Army	<b>và</b> and
<b>dân quân</b> militia	<b>du kích.</b> guerilla	<b>Toàn thể</b> whole	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow- countryman
<b>ở</b> at	<b>vùng</b> area	<b>tự do</b> freedom	<b>cũng</b> also
<b>như</b> like	<b>ở</b> at	<b>vùng</b> area	<b>tạm</b> temporary
<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>chiếm</b> occupy	<b>và</b> and	<b>kiều bào</b> [overseas]national
<b>ở</b> at	<b>hải ngoại.</b> foreign countries	<b>Toàn thể</b> whole	<b>cán bộ</b> cadre
<b>hành chính</b> administration	<b>và</b> and	<b>chuyên môn.</b> speciality	

*All fighters, The Vietnamese National Army, The Guerilla Militia, fellow-countrymen in the free and temporarily occupied areas and the Vietnamese overseas, cadres, administrations and specialists. (The term “vùng tạm bị*

## Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance (Cont.)

*chiếm” refers to areas under French control, even if the occupation was not really so ‘temporary’.*)

(22)	<b>Tôi</b> I	<b>lại</b> again	<b>thay mặt</b> on behalf of	<b>Chính phủ,</b> government
	<b>kính cẩn</b> profoundly respectful	<b>ngiêng mình</b> bow one’s head (in the memory of some revered dead)	<b>trước</b> before	<b>linh hồn</b> soul
	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>và</b> and	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman
	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice	<b>cho</b> for	<b>Tổ quốc</b> fatherland
	<b>và</b> and	<b>gửi</b> send	<b>lời</b> word	<b>thân ái</b> beloved
	<b>an ủi</b> console	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thương binh,</b> war wounded	<b>cựu</b> former
	<b>binh,</b> soldier	<b>cùng</b> together	<b>gia đình</b> family	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
	<b>chiến sĩ.</b> fighter			

*On behalf of the Government, I show the respect to the fighters and fellow-countrymen who sacrificed themselves for our fatherland, and send my condolences to war wounded fighters, ex-soldiers and fighters’ families.*

(23)	<b>Theo</b> according to	<b>sự</b> (classifier of so sánh)	<b>so sánh</b> compare	<b>trên</b> up
	<b>đây,</b> this	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>thấy</b> see	<b>rằng:</b> that
	<i>According to this comparison, we can see that</i>			

(24)	<b>Lực lượng</b> power	<b>của</b> of	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>trước</b> before
	<b>to</b> big	<b>sau</b> after	<b>nhỏ,</b> small	<b>trước</b> before
	<b>mạnh</b> strong	<b>sau</b> after	<b>yếu.</b> weak	<b>Tình hình</b> situation
	<b>của</b> of	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>như</b> same	<b>mặt trời</b> sun
	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>xé tà,</b> draw to a close (tell about day)	<b>gần</b> nearly	<b>tắt.</b> die out

Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

*The power of the enemy was once great but now is small, was once strong but now is weak. The situation of enemy side is like the setting sun which will soon die out.*

(25)	<b>Lực lượng</b> power	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us	<b>trước</b> before
	<b>nhỏ</b> small	<b>sau</b> after	<b>to,</b> big	<b>trước</b> before
	<b>yếu</b> weak	<b>sau</b> after	<b>mạnh.</b> strong	<b>Thanh thế</b> prestige
	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>như</b> same
	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nguồn</b> source, spring	<b>nước</b> water	<b>nhỏ</b> small
	<b>nhớn</b> grown up	<b>dần</b> gradually	<b>thành</b> change into	<b>một</b> one
	<b>đại dương.</b> ocean			

*Our power was once small and is now great, once strong and is now weak. Our prestige is like small and large springs of water which will gradually [come together to] form an ocean.*

(26)	<b>Cuộc</b> (classifier of <b>kháng chiến</b> )	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta:</b> us
	<i>Our resistance:</i>			

(27)	<b>NĂM</b> year	<b>ĐẦU</b> beginning	<b>là</b> be	<b>vất vả,</b> meeting with difficulties
	<i>The first year was the year of difficulties,</i>			

(28)	<b>NĂM</b> year	<b>THỨ HAI</b> second	<b>là</b> be	<b>tiến bộ,</b> progress
	<i>The second year was the year of progress,</i>			

(29)	<b>NĂM</b> year	<b>THỨ BA</b> third	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>là</b> be
	<b>năm</b> year	<b>bước</b> step	<b>gần</b> nearly	<b>đến</b> arrive
	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>hoàn toàn.</b> complete		
	<i>The third year will be a step closer to complete victory.</i>			

(30)	<b>Song</b> however	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>chớ</b> do not	<b>chủ quan,</b> subjective
------	------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------	--------------------------------

## Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance (Cont.)

<b>khinh</b> scorn	<b>địch.</b> enemy	<b>Để</b> for	<b>đi</b> go
<b>đến</b> to	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>cuối cùng,</b> final	<b>chúng ta</b> we
<b>còn</b> still	<b>phải</b> must	<b>kinh qua</b> undergo	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)
<b>bước</b> step	<b>gay go</b> hard	<b>hơn</b> more	<b>trước,</b> before
<b>còn</b> and	<b>phải</b> must	<b>chiến đấu</b> fight	<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic
<b>hơn</b> more	<b>trước,</b> before	<b>mạnh</b> strong	<b>hơn</b> more
<b>trước.</b> before			

*However we should not scorn the enemy. For the final victory, we must undergo more difficulties, fight with more enthusiasm, and more strength.*

(31) <b>Vì vậy</b> therefore	<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>và</b> and
<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>đều</b> all	<b>phải</b> must
<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic	<b>xung phong</b> come forward as a volunteer	<b>thi đua</b> emulation	<b>ái quốc.</b> patriotic

*Therefore all fellow-countrymen and fighters must enthusiastically be in the vanguard of patriotic emulation.*

(32) <b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thi đua</b> emulate
<b>diệt</b> wipe out	<b>nhieu</b> many	<b>giặc,</b> aggressor	<b>cướp</b> rob
<b>nhieu</b> many	<b>súng,</b> gun	<b>lập</b> establish	<b>nhieu</b> many
<b>công.</b> labour			

*Fighters must compete to wipe out aggressors, to rob many guns, and to establish many labours.*

(33) <b>Đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thi đua</b> emulation	<b>tăng gia sản xuất,</b> increase production
<b>giết</b> kill	<b>giặc</b> enemy	<b>đói,</b> starve	<b>giết</b> kill
<b>giặc</b> enemy	<b>đốt,</b> uneducated	<b>giúp</b> help	<b>sức</b> power

Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>giết</b> kill	<b>giặc</b> enemy	<b>ngoại xâm.</b> foreign aggressor	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)
<b>cán bộ</b> cadre	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thi đua</b> emulation	<b>thực hành</b> implement
<b>Cần,</b> industry	<b>Kiệm,</b> thrift	<b>Liêm,</b> honesty	<b>Chính,</b> righteousness
<b>tẩy</b> wipe out	<b>sạch</b> cleanly	<b>khuyết điểm,</b> mistake	<b>phát triển</b> develop
<b>ưu điểm.</b> good point	<b>Ta</b> we	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more	<b>đoàn kết,</b> unite
<b>ngày càng</b> more and more			

“**thực**  
eat  
(proverb) a good army with enough full food for them  
**thì**  
then  
**ta**  
we  
Fellow-countrymen must compete to increase production, eliminate starvation, eliminate illiteracy, and destroy the aggressors who invade us. Cadres must compete in industrial implement, thrift, honesty, righteousness, wiping out mistakes, and developing their good points. If we are more and more united, more and more strong army with enough foods for them, the enemy is certain to lose but we are certain to win.

- |      |  |                                  |                               |  |
|------|--|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|--|
| (34) | <b>Trường kỳ</b><br>long                                     | <b>kháng chiến</b><br>resistance | <b>nhất định</b><br>certainly | <b>thắng lợi !</b><br>victory            |
|      | <i>A long war of resistance is certain to win a victory!</i> |                                  |                               |  |
| (35) | <b>Độc lập,</b><br>independent                               | <b>thống nhất</b><br>unite       | <b>nhất định</b><br>certainly | <b>thành công !</b><br>succeed           |
|      | <i>Our unity and independence are certain to succeed.</i>    |                                  |                               |  |
| (36) | <b>Chào</b><br>greet   | <b>thân ái</b><br>dearly         | <b>và</b><br>and              | <b>quyết thắng</b><br>be resolved to win |
|      | <i>Dearly greet and resolve to win the victory</i>           |                                  |                               |  |
| (37) | <b>Chủ tịch</b><br>president                                 | <b>nước</b><br>country           | <b>Việt Nam</b><br>Vietnam    | <b>Dân Chủ</b><br>democratic             |
|      | <b>Cộng hòa</b><br>republic                                  |                                  |                               |  |
|      | <i>The President of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam</i>   |                                  |                               |  |
| (38) | <b>HỒ CHÍ MINH</b>   |                                  |                               |  |

Text 9 Appeal on the occasion of the second anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

(39)	<b>Báo</b> newspaper <b>6,</b> six <b>19-12-1948.</b> 19-12-1948 <i>Cuu Quoc(Save the country) newspaper, branch, no.6, no,1,116, on 19-12-1948.</i>	<b>Cứu quốc,</b> Cuu quoc <b>số</b> number	<b>chi nhánh,</b> branch <b>1116,</b> 1,116	<b>Số</b> number <b>ngày</b> date
------	--	---	--	--



**TEXT 10**

<b>LỜI</b>	<b>KÊU GỌI</b>	<b>ĐỒNG BÀO</b>	<b>TĂNG GIA SẢN XUẤT<sup>10</sup></b>
word	appeal	fellow-countryman	increase production(of)

*APPEAL THE FELLOW-COUNTRYMEN TO INCREASE PRODUCTION*

- (1) **Cùng** **đồng bào** **toàn quốc,**  
to fellow-countryman the whole nation  
*Fellow-countrymen all over the country,*
- (2) **Năm** **đồng bào** **nay** **là** **năm**  
year (used after năm with the meaning of present) be year  
**chuyển** **nhân dân** **sang** **tổng phản công,**  
change into general counteroffensive  
**bộ đội** **và** **nhân dân** **sẽ**  
army and people ASP: future action: will  
**cần** **nhều** **lúa** **thóc,**  
need many rice paddy  
**hoa màu,** **thịt** **cá,** **bông**  
agricultural products meat fish cotton  
**vải.**  
cloth  
*This year is the year of the strong change towards the general counteroffensive of our army and people so we need many paddies, agricultural products, fish and cotton.*
- (3) **Năm** **đồng bào** **nhân dân** **cũng** **là**  
year (used after năm with the meaning of present) also be  
**năm** **mà** **giặc** **đánh**  
year that aggressor fight  
**thua** **cố** **phá hoại** **tài sản**  
lose try destroy wealth  
**mùa màng** **của** **ta** **nhều**  
harvest of our many  
**hơn.**  
more  
*This year is also the year that our defeated aggressors will try to destroy the harvest more than before.*

<sup>10</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 6 (1950-1952) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 6 (1950-1952)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.18.

## Text 10 Appeal the fellow-countrymen to increase production (Cont.)

(4)	<b>Vậy</b> so	<b>trong lúc</b> while	<b>ở</b> at	<b>mặt trận,</b> front
	<b>bộ đội</b> army	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân quân</b> militia	<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic
	<b>đánh giặc</b> fight the aggressor	<b>để</b> for	<b>chuyển</b> change	<b> mạnh</b> strong
	<b>sang</b> into	<b>tổng phản công,</b> general counteroffensive	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ở</b> at
	<b>hậu phương</b> rear	<b>có</b> have	<b>nhiệm vụ:</b> responsibility	

*So at the front, our army and militia are enthusiastic to fight for our big change toward the general counter offensive and fellow-countrymen at the rear have your responsibilities as*

(5)	<b>1. Thi đua</b> emulate	<b>tăng gia sản xuất,</b> increase production(of)	<b>chăn nuôi</b> breed	<b>thêm</b> add
	<b>súc vật,</b> livestock	<b>giống</b> plant	<b>thêm</b> add	<b>nhieu</b> many
	<b>thóc</b> paddy	<b>lúa,</b> paddy	<b>hoa màu,</b> agricultural products	<b>bông,</b> cotton
	<b>rau.</b> vegetable	<b>Trai,</b> man	<b>gái,</b> woman	<b>già,</b> old
	<b>trẻ,</b> young	<b>mỗi</b> each	<b>người</b> people	<b>đều</b> all
	<b>phải</b> must	<b>cố gắng,</b> endeavour	<b>người</b> people	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already
	<b>tăng gia sản xuất</b> increase production(of)	<b>sẽ</b> ASP: future action: will	<b>tăng gia sản xuất</b> increase production(of)	<b>nhieu</b> many
	<b>hơn,</b> more	<b>người</b> people	<b>chưa</b> not yet	<b>tăng gia sản xuất</b> increase production(of)
	<b>sẽ</b> ASP: future action: will	<b>phải</b> must	<b>tăng gia sản xuất.</b> increase production(of)	<b>Chúng ta</b> we
	<b>quyết</b> be determined	<b>thực hiện</b> realize	<b>khẩu hiệu:</b> slogan	<b>Toàn dân</b> the whole people
	<b>canh tác,</b> cultivate	<b>bốn</b> four	<b>mùa</b> season	<b>canh tác.</b> cultivate

Text 10 Appeal the fellow-countrymen to increase production (Cont.)

*1. To strive to increase production by breeding more livestock, growing more rice, agricultured products, cotton and vegetables. Even men and women, old and young must also endeavour. If you have already increased production, you have to increase more. If you haven't increased production yet, you must begin to increase production. We are determined to realize the slogan: "The entire country will farm all year round".*

- |     |  |   |   |  |
|-----|--|---|---|--|
| (6) | <b>2. Thi đua</b><br>emulate<br><b>phí phạm,</b><br>waste<br><b>cho</b><br>for<br><b>những</b><br>(plularizer) | <b>tiết kiệm,</b><br>economize<br><b>để</b><br>for<br><b>bộ đội</b><br>army<br><b>lúc</b><br>time | <b>tránh</b><br>avoid<br><b>dành</b><br>save<br><b>hoặc</b><br>or<br><b>túng thiếu.</b><br>be in straitened<br>circumstance | <b>xa xỉ,</b><br>extravagant<br><b>lương thực</b><br>foodstuffs<br><b>cho</b><br>for |
|-----|--|---|---|--|

*2. To strive in economy by avoid extravagance and waste to save food for our army or the times of shortages.*

- |     |  |  |  |  |
|-----|--|--|--|--|
| (7) | <b>Làm</b><br>do<br><b>là</b><br>be<br><b>chuyển</b><br>change | <b>hai</b><br>two<br><b>góp sức</b><br>participate<br><b> mạnh</b><br>strong | <b>việc</b><br>work<br><b>vào</b><br>in<br><b>sang</b><br>into | <b>trên</b><br>up<br><b>công việc</b><br>work<br><b>tổng phản công.</b><br>general<br>counteroffensive |
|-----|--|--|--|--|

*Doing these two things is to participate in the strong effort towards the general counteroffensive.*

- |     |                 |                       |  |                              |
|-----|-----------------|-----------------------|--|------------------------------|
| (8) | <b>Tôi</b><br>I | <b>mong</b><br>desire | <b>đồng bào</b><br>fellow-<br>countryman | <b>cố gắng.</b><br>endeavour |
|-----|-----------------|-----------------------|--|------------------------------|

*I desire all fellow-countrymen to endeavour.*

- |     |                      |                          |                  |   |
|-----|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------|---|
| (9) | <b>Chào</b><br>greet | <b>thân ái</b><br>dearly | <b>và</b><br>and | <b>quyết thắng</b><br>be resolved to<br>win |
|-----|----------------------|--------------------------|------------------|---|

*Warm regards and resolve to win a victory*

- |      |                     |               |                       |               |                    |                     |
|------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| (10) | <b>Ngày</b><br>date | <b>1</b><br>1 | <b>tháng</b><br>month | <b>3</b><br>3 | <b>năm</b><br>year | <b>1950</b><br>1950 |
|------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------------|---------------|--------------------|---------------------|
- March 1, 1950*

- (11) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**

Text 10 Appeal the fellow-countrymen to increase production (Cont.)

- |      |  |                              |                     |                       |
|------|--|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| (12) | <b>Báo</b><br>newspaper  | <b>Cứu Quốc,</b><br>Cuu Quoc | <b>số</b><br>number | <b>1488,</b><br>1488, |
|      | <b>Ngày</b><br>date  | <b>6-3-1950.</b><br>6-3-1950 |                     |                       |
|      | <i>Cuu quoc (National Salvation) newspaper, no.1488, March 6, 1950</i> |                              |                     |                       |



**TEXT 11**

<b>LỜI</b> word	<b>KÊU GỌI</b> appeal	<b>NHÂN DỊP</b> occasion	<b>BA</b> three	<b>NĂM</b> year
	<b>TOÀN QUỐC</b> the whole country	<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN</b> <sup>11</sup> resistance		

*APPEAL ON THE OCCASION OF THE THIRD ANNIVERSARY OF THE NATIONAL RESISTANCE*

- (1) **Cùng** **đồng bào** **trong** **nước**  
to fellow-countryman in country  
**và** **ngoài** **nước,**  
and outside country  
*To fellow-countrymen inside and outside the country,*
- (2) **Cùng** **toàn thể** **chiến sĩ** **Vệ quốc quân,**  
to whole fighter Vietnamese National Army  
**bộ đội** **địa phương,** **dân quân** **du kích**  
army local militia guerilla  
**và** **công an** **xung phong,**  
and public security service volunteer

*To all fighters in the Vietnamese National Army, the Local army, the Guerilla militia, and the Public Security Volunteers,*

- (3) **Cùng** **các** **cán bộ** **chính quyền**  
to (pluralizer) cadre administration  
**và** **đoàn thể** **nhân dân,**  
and organization fellow-countryman  
*To cadres, administrations and organizations, and fellow-countrymen,*

- (4) **Hôm nay** **19-12-1949,** **toàn quốc** **kháng chiến**  
today 19-12-1949 the whole country resistance  
**bước sang** **năm** **thứ tư,** **Nam Bộ**  
start year fourth southern part  
**kháng chiến** **năm** **thứ năm.**  
resistance year fifth

*Today is December 19, 1949, the National Resistance is the fourth year and in the south is the fifth year.*

<sup>11</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 6 (1950-1952) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 6 (1950-1952)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.718-720.

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

(5)	<b>Trong</b> in <b>vừa</b> just	<b>ba,</b> three <b>qua,</b> pass	<b>bốn</b> four <b>hàng</b> (used in front of round figures to denote severalty)	<b>năm</b> year <b>ngàn,</b> thousand
	<b>hàng</b> (used in front of round figures to denote severalty)	<b>vạn</b> ten thousand	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>và</b> and
	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow- countryman	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>oanh liệt</b> glorious	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice
	<b>cho</b> for	<b>Tổ quốc,</b> fatherland	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>đưa</b> give
	<b>xương máu</b> bone and blood	<b>để</b> for	<b>giữ gìn</b> preserve	<b>non sông.</b> homeland
	<b>Tôi</b> I	<b>thay mặt</b> on behalf of	<b>Chính phủ,</b> government	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter
	<b>và</b> and	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow- countryman	<b>kính cẩn</b> profoundly respectful	<b>ngiêng mình</b> bow one's head(in memory of some revered dead)
	<b>trước</b> before	<b>linh hồn</b> soul	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>liệt sĩ</b> militant having laid down his life for the revolution(for the country)
	<b>mà</b> that	<b>hứa</b> promise	<b>rằng:</b> that	

*In a few years ago, fighters and our fellows more than ten thousand gloriously sacrificed for our homeland by sacrificed their life to save our homeland. On behalf of the Government, fighters, and fellows, I profoundly show respect to sacrificed militants and promise that:*

(6)	<b>“Toàn thể</b> whole <b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnamese	<b>quân</b> army <b>kiên quyết</b> resolute	<b>và</b> and <b>noi</b> follow	<b>dân</b> people <b>gương</b> model
-----	--	--	--	---

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>anh dũng</b> of great fortitude	<b>của</b> of	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>liệt sĩ,</b> militant having laid down his life for the revolution(for the country)
<b>kiên quyết</b> resolute	<b>đánh tan</b> defeat(an army)	<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>thực dân</b> colonize
<b>cướp</b> rob	<b>nước,</b> country	<b>đề</b> for	<b>tranh</b> fight for
<b>lại</b> again	<b>độc lập</b> independent	<b>và</b> and	<b>thống nhất</b> unite
<b>thật sự</b> real	<b>cho</b> for	<b>nước</b> country	<b>ta”.</b> our

*The whole of armies and the Vietnamese are resolute to emulate the great fortitude of the idol of sacrificed militants who were resolute to defeat the colonize aggressors who have plundered our country, and to fight for our independence and unity of our country.*

(7) <b>Nhân dịp</b> occasion	<b>này,</b> this	<b>tôi</b> I	<b>gửi</b> send
<b>lời</b> word	<b>thân ái</b> beloved	<b>an ủi</b> console	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
<b>thương binh,</b> war wounded	<b>cựu</b> former	<b>binh</b> soldier	<b>và</b> and
<b>gia đình</b> family	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>liệt sĩ.</b> militant having laid down his life for the revolution(for the country)	

*On this occasion, I would like to send my beloved words to console war-wounded, ex-soldiers and sacrifice militants' family.*

(8) <b>Hỡi</b> dear	<b>đồng bào,</b> fellow- countryman	<b>hỡi</b> dear	<b>chiến sĩ,</b> fighter
------------------------	---	--------------------	-----------------------------

*Dear fellow-countrymen and fighters,*

(9) <b>Từ</b> from	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>thực dân</b> colonize
<b>gây</b> provoke(a war)	<b>chiến tranh</b> war	<b>phi nghĩa</b> unrighteous	<b>đến</b> to
<b>nay,</b> at present	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already
<b>trúc</b> fall	<b>đổ</b> collapse	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>lần.</b> time
<b>Tướng lĩnh</b> general officers	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>phải</b> must	<b>thay đổi</b> change	<b>nhiều</b> many
<b>người.</b> person	<b>Pháp</b> France	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>tốn</b> cost
<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>trăm</b> hundred	<b>ngàn</b> thousand	<b>triệu</b> million
<b>bạc,</b> money	<b>đã</b> already	<b>mất</b> lose	<b>mười</b> ten
<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>vạn</b> ten thousand	<b>binh sĩ</b> soldiers	<b>chết</b> die
<b>và</b> and	<b>bị thương.</b> war wounded	<b>Mà</b> but	<b>kết quả</b> result
<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>quanh quẩn</b> devious
<b>trong</b> in	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>thành phố</b> city	<b>và</b> and
<b>trên</b> on	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>đường</b> way	<b>giao thông</b> communicate
<b>luôn luôn</b> always	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>ta</b> we	<b>đánh</b> fight
<b>úp.</b> unawares			

*From the day that the French colonialists have provoked an unrighteous war till now, The French government has collapsed many times. The French general officers in Vietnam must change many people. France cost hundred thousand millions Francs and lost more than ten thousand soldiers who died and were wounded. But the results of the French aggressors which are devious in a few areas and a few way to communicate are unawaresly fought by us.*

(10) <b>Còn</b> and	<b>tôi tớ</b> subordinate	<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> them
<b>là</b> be	<b>lũ</b> group (pej.)	<b>bù nhìn</b> puppet	<b>Vĩnh Thụy,</b> Vinh Thuy
<b>Văn Xuân,</b> Van Xuan	<b>thì</b> then	<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>nấp</b> hide (in a secret place or behind something)
<b>sau</b> after	<b>lưỡi lê</b> bayonet	<b>của</b> of	<b>giặc,</b> aggressor
<b>để</b> for	<b>chờ</b> wait	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)
<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out	<b>với</b> with	<b>chúng,</b> them	<b>chờ</b> wait

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>ngày</b>	<b>đi</b>	<b>theo</b>	<b>số phận</b>
day	go	follow	destiny
<b>Lê Chiêu Thống,</b>	<b>Uông Tinh Vệ,</b>	<b>Pêtanh,</b>	<b>Lavan.</b>
Le Chieu Thong	Uong Tinh Ve	Petan	Lavan

*And their subordination is the Vinh Thuy and Van Xuan puppets which hide behind the bayonet of aggressors to wait the day which they were wipe out with them and wait for the day to follow the destinies of Le Chieu Thong, Uong Tinh Ve, Petanh, and Lavan.*

(11) <b>Những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>người</b> fellow	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnamese	<b>khác,</b> other
<b>vì</b> because	<b>một</b> one	<b>cớ</b> reason	<b>gì</b> what
<b>mà</b> that	<b>đi</b> go	<b>lầm đường,</b> take the wrong way	<b>làm việc</b> work
<b>cho</b> for	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>hoặc</b> or	<b>đi lính</b> go soldiering
<b>cho</b> for	<b>Pháp,</b> France	<b>nhân dịp</b> occasion	<b>này</b> this
<b>tôi</b> I	<b>nhấn nhủ</b> give recommendations to	<b>họ:</b> them	

*For other Vietnamese fellows, what reasons they work for the French or go soldiering for France. On this occasion, I recommend to them that:*

(12) <b>“Trước mặt</b> in the presence of	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>người,</b> fellow	<b>chỉ</b> only
<b>có</b> have	<b>hai</b> two	<b>đường.</b> way	<b>Hoặc</b> or
<b>theo</b> follow	<b>giặc</b> foreign aggressor	<b>để</b> for	<b>vào</b> into
<b>con đường</b> way	<b>chết</b> die	<b>và</b> and	<b>để</b> for
<b>mang</b> bring with one	<b>tiếng xấu</b> bad reputation	<b>muôn đời!</b> forever	<b>Hay</b> whether
<b>là</b> be	<b>lập tức</b> immediately	<b>quay</b> turn	<b>về</b> return
<b>với</b> with	<b>Tổ quốc,</b> fatherland	<b>đem</b> bring with one	<b>công</b> work
<b>mới</b> new	<b>để</b> for	<b>chuộc tội</b> redeem	<b>cũ,</b> sin
<b>đó</b> that	<b>là</b> be	<b>con đường</b> way	<b>sống,</b> be alive
<b>con đường</b> way	<b>vẻ vang.</b> glorious	<b>Hai</b> two	<b>đường</b> way

## Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance (Cont.)

<b>đó,</b> that	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>người</b> fellow	<b>phải</b> must
<b>chọn</b> choose	<b>lấy</b> receive	<b>một”.</b> one	

*In the presence of them, they just have only two ways which are following aggressors into a way of dead with the bad reputation or immediately returning back to our homeland by doing new works to redeem sin that can be alive and glorious. These two ways, our fellows must choose only one-way.*

(13) <b>19</b> nineteenth	<b>tháng 12</b> December	<b>năm nay,</b> this year	<b>so</b> compare
<b>với</b> with	<b>năm</b> year	<b>trước</b> before	<b>thì</b> then
<b>thế</b> like that	<b>giặc</b> foreign aggressor	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already
<b>kém</b> weak	<b>sút</b> decline	<b>nhều,</b> many	<b>mà</b> that
<b>lực lượng</b> power	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us	<b>đã</b> already
<b>tăng</b> increase	<b>gấp</b> fold up	<b>ba,</b> three	<b>bốn</b> four
<b>lần.</b> time	<b>Sự</b> (classifier of chắc chắn)	<b>chắc chắn</b> reliable	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>tăng</b> increase	<b>gấp</b> fold up	<b>ba,</b> three
<b>gấp</b> fold up	<b>bốn.</b> four	<b>Giặc</b> foreign aggressor	<b>Pháp</b> French
<b>nguy khốn,</b> dangerous and miserable-ridden	<b>cho nên</b> therefore	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>phải</b> must
<b>chạy vạy</b> move heaven and earth	<b>mong</b> wish	<b>nhờ</b> ask for help	<b>phản động</b> reactionary
<b>quốc tế</b> international	<b>giúp đỡ</b> help	<b>chúng.</b> them	<b>Ta</b> we
<b>chắc</b> sure	<b>thắng lợi,</b> victory	<b>vì</b> because	<b>ta</b> we
<b>ngày</b> day	<b>thêm</b> increase	<b>mạnh,</b> strong	<b>và</b> and
<b>phong trào</b> movement	<b>dân chủ</b> democratic	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more
<b>mạnh,</b> strong	<b>Nước</b> country	<b>Nhân dân</b> people	<b>Cộng hoà</b> republic

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>Trung Hoa</b> China	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>hoàn toàn</b> complete	<b>là</b> be
<b>một</b> one	<b>chứng cứ.</b> evidence		

*December 19 of this year comparing with last year, it shows French aggressors were very weak but our power is increasing more. The reliable victory is likewise increasing more. The French aggressors are in dangerous and miserable-ridden time therefore they must to move heaven and earth to ask for help from the other reactionary nation. We are certain win a victory because we are stronger and the other democratic movements are also stronger as the complete victory of the People's Republic of China is evidence.*

(14) <b>Bốn</b> four	<b>phần</b> part	<b>gian nan</b> miserable hard	<b>cực khổ,</b> hard and miserable
<b>ta</b> we	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>vượt</b> pass	<b>được</b> be able to
<b>ba</b> three	<b>phần,</b> part	<b>Chỉ</b> only	<b>còn</b> still
<b>một</b> one	<b>phần</b> part	<b>nữa.</b> more	<b>Nhưng</b> but
<b>phần</b> part	<b>này</b> this	<b>là</b> be	<b>phần</b> part
<b>cuối cùng,</b> final	<b>nó</b> it	<b>sẽ</b> ASP: future action: will	<b>gay go</b> hard
<b>hơn.</b> more			

*Four parts of miserable and hard, we could passed three parts already, we just have one more part. But this part is the last part, it will be harder than other parts.*

(15) <b>Với</b> with	<b>lực lượng</b> power	<b>đại đoàn kết</b> great unity	<b>của</b> of
<b>toàn dân,</b> all the people	<b>với</b> with	<b>chí khí</b> strong will	<b>anh dũng</b> of great fortitude
<b>của</b> of	<b>toàn dân,</b> all the people	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>quyết</b> be determined
<b>khắc phục</b> overcome	<b>phần</b> part	<b>khó khăn</b> difficult	<b>cuối cùng</b> final
<b>này,</b> this	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>như</b> same	<b>chúng ta</b> we

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>khắc phục</b> overcome	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>khó khăn</b> difficult
<b>trong</b> in	<b>ba,</b> three	<b>bốn</b> four	<b>năm</b> year
<b>vừa qua.</b> last	<i>With the power of our great unity and great fortitude, we are determined to overcome the last part of difficulties. It's also the same as all difficulties which we could overcome in three-four years ago.</i>		
(16) <b>Vượt</b> pass	<b>khỏi</b> get over	<b>phần</b> part	<b>khó khăn</b> difficult
<b>này,</b> this	<b>là</b> be	<b>ta</b> we	<b>hoàn toàn</b> complete
<b>thắng lợi.</b> victory	<i>We could get over in these difficulties, we are certain to win the victory.</i>		
(17) <b>Nhân dịp</b> occasion	<b>này,</b> this	<b>tôi</b> I	<b>trân trọng</b> respectful
<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nhân sĩ</b> patriotic personality	<b>và</b> and
<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>bầu bạn</b> friends	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already
<b>ủng hộ</b> support	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>chính nghĩa</b> righteous
<b>của</b> of	<b>Việt Nam.</b> Vietnam	<b>Tôi</b> I	<b>riêng</b> personal
<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>đoàn thể</b> organization	<b>dân chủ</b> democratic
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>và</b> and	<b>đang</b> be in the process of
<b>hoạt động</b> be an activist in	<b>để</b> for	<b>đòi</b> ask for	<b>chính phủ</b> government
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>chấm dứt</b> bring to an end	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of chiến tranh)	<b>chiến tranh</b> war
<b>xâm lược</b> commit aggression	<b>Việt Nam.</b> Vietnam		

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

*On this occasion, I respectfully thank all patriots and our neighbor country that supported the righteous resistance of Vietnam. I myself thank all the French Democratic organizations which have been being activists to ask the French Government to stop the aggression war in Vietnam.*

- |      |   |  |   |   |
|------|---|--|---|---|
| (18) | <b>Tôi</b><br>I<br><b>và</b><br>and<br><b>trước</b><br>before | <b>thay mặt</b><br>on behalf of<br><b>đồng bào,</b><br>fellow-countryman<br><b>thế giới</b><br>world | <b>Chính phủ,</b><br>government<br><b>trịnh trọng</b><br>solemn statement<br><b>rằng:</b><br>that | <b>quân đội</b><br>army<br><b>tuyên bố</b><br>declare |
|------|---|--|---|---|
- On behalf of the Government, army and fellow-countrymen, I solemnly declare the statement for all over the world that*

- |      |  |  |   |  |
|------|--|--|---|--|
| (19) | <b>Vì</b><br>because<br><b>xâm lược</b><br>commit<br>aggression<br><b>cuộc</b><br>(classifier of<br>chiến tranh) | <b>quân đội</b><br>army<br><b>Việt Nam</b><br>Vietnam<br><b>chiến tranh</b><br>war<br><b>sẵn sàng</b><br>ready<br><b>nhân dân</b><br>people<br><b>thế giới,</b><br>world<br><b>quyết</b><br>determine<br><b>làm</b><br>do<br><b>chịu</b> | <b>thực dân</b><br>colonize<br><b>mà</b><br>that<br><b>này.</b><br>this<br><b>hoà bình</b><br>peace<br><b>Pháp</b><br>French<br><b>nhưng</b><br>but<br><b>không</b><br>not<br><b>quyết</b><br>determine | <b>Pháp</b><br>French<br><b>có</b><br>have<br><b>Nhân dân</b><br>people<br><b>cộng tác</b><br>cooperate<br><b>và</b><br>and<br><b>nhân dân</b><br>people<br><b>chịu</b><br>accept<br><b>không</b><br>not |
|------|--|--|---|--|
- Because the French colonial armies invade to Vietnam by using this war. The Vietnamese are ready to cooperate the peace with the French and all the people in the world but we are not determined to accept to live in slavery and to lose our country.*

- |      |   |   |  |   |
|------|---|---|--|---|
| (20) | <b>Hễ</b><br>whoever<br><b>lính</b><br>soldier<br><b>Việt Nam,</b><br>Vietnam | <b>còn</b><br>still have<br><b>thực dân</b><br>colonize<br><b>thì</b><br>then | <b>một</b><br>one<br><b>trên</b><br>on<br><b>Việt Nam</b><br>Vietnam | <b>tên</b><br>name<br><b>đất nước</b><br>homeland<br><b>cứ</b><br>(emphatic particle) |
|------|---|---|--|---|

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

<b>đánh,</b> fight	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>cho</b> for	<b>đến</b> arrive
<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>hoàn toàn,</b> complete	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>cho</b> for
<b>đến</b> arrive	<b>độc lập</b> independent	<b>và</b> and	<b>thống nhất</b> unite
<b>thật sự.</b> real			

*Whoever is still the colonial soldiers in Vietnam, the Vietnamese have to fight.  
We fight until win a victory and gain our independence and unity.*

(21) <b>Hôm nay,</b> today	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>kỷ niệm</b> anniversary	<b>ba</b> three
<b>năm</b> year	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>toàn quốc.</b> the whole country	

*Today, we have the third anniversary of the National Resistance.*

(22) <b>Ba</b> three	<b>hôm</b> day	<b>nữa,</b> more	<b>chúng ta</b> we
<b>kỷ niệm</b> anniversary	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>thành lập</b> establish	<b>đội quân</b> army
<b>giải phóng</b> liberation	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta,</b> us	<b>một</b> one
<b>quân đội</b> army	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>xung phong</b> come forward as a volunteer	<b>trong</b> in
<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of Cách mạng Tháng Tám)	<b>Cách mạng Tháng Tám</b> The August Revolution		<b>và</b> and
<b>nay</b> at present	<b>đã</b> already	<b>trở nên</b> become	<b>Vệ quốc quân</b> Vietnamese National Army
<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>anh dũng</b> of great fortitude	<b>giết</b> kill	<b>giặc</b> aggressor
<b>khắp</b> all over	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>mặt trận</b> front	<b>từ</b> from
<b>Nam</b> south	<b>đến</b> to	<b>Bắc.</b> north	

*Three days later, we will have an anniversary of the establishment of the Liberation army. An army in the August Revolution which become to be the Vietnamese National Army at present are doing the great fortitude to kill aggressors all over the fronts from the south to the north.*

Text 11 Appeal on the occasion of the third anniversary of the National resistance  
(Cont.)

(23)	<b>Quân</b> army	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our
	<b>phải</b> must	<b>noi</b> follow	<b>gương</b> model	<b>anh dũng</b> of great fortitude
	<b>của</b> of	<b>Quân</b> army	<b>giải phóng,</b> liberation	<b>phải</b> must
	<b>ra sức</b> strive	<b>thi đua</b> emulate	<b>chuẩn bị</b> prepare	<b>mau</b> quick
	<b>đầy đủ</b> enough	<b>để</b> for	<b>mau</b> quick	<b>chuyển</b> change
	<b>sang</b> into	<b>tổng phản công,</b> general counter-offensive	<b>để</b> for	<b>quét</b> sweep
	<b>sạch</b> cleanly	<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>ra</b> out	<b>khỏi</b> set free
	<b>đất nước,</b> homeland	<b>để</b> for	<b>tiến</b> advance	<b>đến</b> to
	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>cuối cùng,</b> final	<b>để</b> for	<b>tranh</b> fight for
	<b>lấy</b> receive	<b>thống nhất</b> unite	<b>và</b> and	<b>độc lập</b> independent
	<b>thật sự</b> real	<b>cho</b> for	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland	

*Our army and people must follow the idol of the great fortitude of the Liberation army and strive to compete to prepare for the quick change into the general counter-offensive to sweep aggressors out and set free our homeland, to advance until the final victory, and to fight until gain the unity and independence of our homeland.*

(24)	<b>Hỡi</b> dear	<b>đồng bào,</b> fellow- countryman	<b>hỡi</b> dear	<b>chiến sĩ !</b> fighter
	<b>Tiến</b> advance	<b>mạnh</b> strong	<b>lên!</b> raise	

*Dear fellow-countrymen, fighters! Strongly advance!*

(25) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**

(26)	<b>Báo</b> newspaper	<b>Sự thật,</b> Su that	<b>số</b> number	<b>125,</b> 125
	<b>ngày</b> date	<b>19-12-1949.</b> 19-12-1949		

*Su that (The Truth) newspaper, no. 125, December 19, 1949.*

## TEXT 12

<b>LỜI</b> word	<b>KÊU GỌI</b> appeal	<b>VỀ</b> about	<b>CHIẾN DỊCH</b> <sup>12</sup> campaign
<b>CAO</b> Cao Bang	-	<b>BẮC</b> Bac Can	- <b>LẠNG</b> Lang Son

## APPEAL FOR THE CAO BANG- BAC CAN- LANG SON CAMPAIGN

- (1) **Hỡi**  
dear  
*To my dear fighters,*
- các**  
(plularizer)
- chiến sĩ**  
fighter
- yêu quý,**  
dear
- (2) **Vệ quốc đoàn,**  
Vietnamese National Army  
*The Vietnamese National Army,*
- (3) **Bộ đội**  
army  
*The Local Army,*
- địa phương,**  
local
- (4) **Dân quân**  
militia  
*The Guerilla militia,*
- du kích.**  
guerilla
- (5) **Chiến dịch**  
campaign  
**rất**  
very  
*The Cao - Bac - Lang campaign is very important.*
- Cao** – **Bắc** – **Lạng**  
Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son
- quan trọng.**  
important
- (6) **Chúng ta**  
we  
**này.**  
this  
*We are be determined to be victorious.*
- quyết**  
be determined
- đánh**  
fight
- thắng trận**  
win a battle
- (7) **Để**  
for  
**chiến sĩ**  
fighter  
**phải**  
must
- thắng trận**  
win a battle  
**ở**  
at  
**kiên quyết,**  
resolute
- này,**  
this  
**mặt trận**  
front  
**dũng cảm**  
courageous
- các**  
(plularizer)  
**ấy**  
that  
**trăm**  
hundred

<sup>12</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 6(1950-1952) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 6 (1950-1952)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.86-87.

Text 12 Appeal for the Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son campaign (Cont.)

<b>phần trăm;</b> percent	<b>các</b> (plularizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>các</b> (plularizer)
<b>khu,</b> area	<b>các</b> (plularizer)	<b>mặt trận</b> front	<b>khác</b> other
<b>phải</b> must	<b>ra sức</b> strive	<b>thi đua</b> compete	<b>giết</b> kill
<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>lập công</b> accomplish a feat	<b>để</b> for	<b>hết sức</b> extremely
<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out	<b>địch,</b> enemy	<b>khiển</b> (abbr. điều khiển) to direct	<b>ché</b> (abbr. không chế) to control
<b>địch,</b> enemy	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>cho</b> for	<b>chúng</b> they
<b>tiếp viện</b> reinforce	<b>mặt trận</b> battlefront	<b>Cao</b> – Cao Bang	<b>Bắc</b> – Bac Can
<b>Lạng.</b> Lang Son			

*To win this battle, the rear must be entirely resolute and courageous. The others must strive to totally eliminate the aggressors, to control them, and not allow them reinforcements on the Cao-Bac-Lang battlefield.*

(8)

<b>Thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Cao</b> – Cao Bang	<b>Bắc</b> – Bac Can
<b>Lạng</b> Lang Son	<b>là</b> be	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>chung</b> general
<b>của</b> of	<b>các</b> (plularizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>toàn quốc.</b> the whole country

*A victory at Cao Bang, Bac Can, Lang Son is a victory for all our fighters across the country.*

(9)

<b>Vậy</b> so	<b>sau</b> after	<b>khi</b> time	<b>chiến dịch</b> campaign
<b>Cao</b> – Cao Bang	<b>Bắc</b> – Bac Can	<b>Lạng</b> Lang Son	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already
<b>thắng lợi,</b> victory	<b>các</b> (plularizer)	<b>địa phương</b> region(local)	<b>phải</b> must
<b>lập tức</b> instantly	<b>báo cáo</b> report	<b>kết quả</b> result	<b>trong</b> in
<b>dịp</b> occasion	<b>thi đua</b> emulate	<b>“giết</b> kill	<b>giặc</b> aggressor
<b>lập công”</b> accomplish a feat	<b>này.</b> this		

*After the Cao-Bac-Lang campaign has been won, the local areas must instantly report our success, and the people will emulate our feat and kill the aggressors. Those who have great work will be rewarded by the government.*

## Text 12 Appeal for the Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son campaign (Cont.)

- (10) **Ai**                      **có**                      **công**                      **to,**  
 who                      have                      work                      big  
**Chính phủ**              **sẽ**                      **thưởng.**  
 government              ASP: future action: will              reward  
*Who have the great work, the Government will reward.*
- (11) **Hỡi**                      **các**                      **chiến sĩ**                      **yêu quý,**  
 dear                      (pluralizer)              fighter                      dear  
*Dear my dear fighters,*
- (12) **Đơn vị**                      **này**                      **phải**                      **thi đua**  
 unit                      this                      must                      compete  
**với**                      **đơn vị**                      **khác,**  
 with                      unit                      other  
**này**                      **thi đua**                      **với**                      **địa phương**  
 this                      compete                      with                      region(local)  
**khác.**  
 other  
*This unit must compete against other units. This region must compete against other regions.*
- (13) **Cuộc**                      **thi đua**                      **“giết**                      **giặc**  
 (classifier)                      compete                      kill                      aggressor  
**lập công”**                      **và**                      **chiến dịch**                      **Cao**                      –  
 accomplish a feat                      and                      campaign                      Cao Bang  
**Bắc**                      –                      **Lạng**                      **nhất định**                      **sẽ**  
 Bac Can                      Lang Son                      be determined                      ASP: future action: will  
**thắng lợi.**  
 victory  
*The competition is "killing aggressors." This will determine the victory of the Cao-Bac-Lang campaign.*
- (16) **Toàn thể**                      **các**                      **chiến sĩ**                      **tiến lên !**  
 whole                      (pluralizer)                      fighter                      advance  
*All fighters advance!*
- (17) **Thắng lợi**                      **đang**                      **chờ**                      **các**  
 victory                      (be in the process of)                      wait                      (pluralizer)  
**chú.**  
 you  
*Victory awaits.*
- (18) **Tôi**                      **đang**                      **chờ**                      **để**  
 I                      (be in the process of)                      wait                      for  
**khen thưởng**                      **các**  
 praise and reward                      (pluralizer)                      **chú.**  
 you





Text 13 Appeal to Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son fellow-countrymen (Cont.)

v.v..

and so on

*Our fellow-countrymen in three provinces endeavoured in many works to prepare this campaign so as to prepare in the military provisions, to repair roads and transportation, and to help the army, etc.*

- |     |                  |                                 |  |                                       |
|-----|------------------|---------------------------------|--|---------------------------------------|
| (5) | <b>Tôi</b><br>I  | <b>trân trọng</b><br>respectful | <b>thay mặt</b><br>on behalf(of)         | <b>Chính phủ</b><br>government        |
|     | <b>và</b><br>and | <b>quân đội</b><br>army         | <b>cảm tạ</b><br>express one's gratitude | <b>đồng bào.</b><br>fellow-countryman |
- On behalf of the Government and army, I respectfully express our fellow-countrymen's gratitude.*

- |     |  |                             |                                      |                                      |
|-----|--|-----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (6) | <b>Tôi</b><br>I  | <b>kêu gọi</b><br>appeal    | <b>toàn thể</b><br>whole             | <b>đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman |
|     | <b>ba</b><br>three                                       | <b>tỉnh,</b><br>province    | <b>các</b><br>(pluralizer)           | <b>ủy ban</b><br>committee           |
|     | <b>kháng chiến</b><br>resist(against foreign aggression) | <b>và</b><br>and            | <b>hành chính,</b><br>administration | <b>các</b><br>(pluralizer)           |
|     | <b>đoàn thể nhân dân</b><br>A mass organization          | <b>cố gắng</b><br>endeavour | <b>thêm</b><br>add                   | <b>nữa,</b><br>more                  |
|     | <b>tiếp tục</b><br>continue                              | <b>giúp đỡ</b><br>help      | <b>cho</b><br>for                    | <b>bộ đội</b><br>army                |
|     | <b>ta</b><br>our   | <b>trước</b><br>before      | <b>mặt trận</b><br>battlefront       | <b>để</b><br>for                     |
|     | <b>quân</b><br>army forces                               | <b>ta</b><br>our            | <b>giết</b><br>kill                  | <b>nhều</b><br>many                  |
|     | <b>địch,</b><br>enemy                                    | <b>đánh</b><br>fight        | <b>thắng</b><br>win                  | <b>to.</b><br>big                    |
- I appeal to all fellow-countrymen in three provinces, the Committee of resistance and administrations, and the mass organizations endeavour more and continue to help our army behind the battlefront so our army forces can kill many enemy and fight for the great victory.*

- |     |  |                              |                            |                               |
|-----|--|------------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (7) | <b>Đồng bào</b><br>fellow-countryman   | <b>hãy</b><br>let's          | <b>tiến lên</b><br>advance | <b>làm</b><br>do              |
|     | <b>gương</b><br>model                  | <b>kiểu mẫu</b><br>model     | <b>cho</b><br>for          | <b>nhân dân</b><br>people     |
|     | <b>toàn quốc,</b><br>the whole country | <b>giúp</b><br>help          | <b>cho</b><br>for          | <b>chiến dịch</b><br>campaign |
|     | <b>được</b><br>be able to              | <b>thắng lợi.</b><br>victory |                            |                               |
- Fellow-countrymen, let's advance to be a model for all people in the country and help in this campaign to win victory.*

## Text 13 Appeal to Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son fellow-countrymen (Cont.)

- (8) **Chào**                      **thân ái**                      **và**                      **quyết thắng**  
greet                      dearly                      and                      be resolved to win  
*Warm regards and resolve to win the victory*
- (9) **Ngày**                      **9**                      **tháng**                      **9**                      **năm**                      **1950**  
date                      9                      month                      9                      year                      1950  
*September 9, 1950*
- (10) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**
- (11) **Sách**                      **Bác**                      **Hồ**                      **với**  
book                      uncle                      Ho                      with  
**Bắc Thái,**                      **Ty**                      **văn hoá**                      **và**  
Bac Thai                      agency                      culture                      and  
**thông tin**                      **Bắc Thái,**                      **1978,**                      **tr.**  
information                      Bac Thai                      1978                      (abbr.trang) page  
**21.**  
21  
*The book “Uncle Ho with Bac Thai, The agency of Bac Thai culture and information”, 1978, p. 21.*

**TEXT 14**

<b>ĐIỆN</b> telegram	<b>GỬI</b> send	<b>CÁC</b> (pluralizer)	<b>CHIẾN SĨ</b> fighter	<b>MẶT TRẬN</b> battlefront
		<b>CAO - BẮC - LẠNG</b> <sup>14</sup>		
		Cao Bac Lang Son		

*TELEGRAM, SENT TO FIGHTERS  
AT CAO BANG-BAC CAN-LANG SON BATTLEFRONT*

- (1) **Trong** chiến dịch này, **toàn thể**  
in campaign this whole  
**bộ đội** nhân dân ta đã  
army people our already  
**rất** cố gắng, đã gây  
very endeavour already achieve  
**được** thành tích khá, như  
be able to achievement fairly like  
**giải phóng** Đông Khê, bắt địch  
liberation Dong Khe force enemy  
**phải** rút khỏi Cao Bằng.  
must pull out set free Cao Bang  
*In this campaign, the whole the people's army fought hard. All of you achieved good results the liberation of Dong Khe and forcing the enemy to withdraw from Cao Bang.*
- (2) **Hiện nay** tình hình rất có  
at present situation very have  
**lợi** cho ta. **Vậy**  
benefit for us so  
**các** chiến sĩ phải **quyết tâm**  
(pluralizer) fighter must be determined  
**tiêu diệt** địch cho kỳ  
wipe out enemy for until  
**hết** để giành lấy  
finish for win get  
**toàn thắng.**  
win complete victory  
*Now the situation is very good for us. So fighters must wipe out the enemy until we have obtained complete victory.*
- (3) **Bác** theo dõi cuộc  
I(uncle) follow closely (classifier of  
chiến đấu)

<sup>14</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 6 (1950-1952) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 6 (1950-1952)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.102.

Text 14 Telegram, sent to fighters at Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son battlefield  
(Cont.)

<b>chiến đấu</b> struggle	<b>anh dũng</b> hero	<b>của</b> of	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
<b>chú</b> you(address for soldiers)	<b>từng</b> each	<b>giờ.</b> hour	<b>Bác</b> I(uncle)
<b>sẽ</b> will	<b>có</b> have	<b>giải thưởng</b> award	<b>đặc biệt</b> special
<b>cho</b> for	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>bộ đội</b> army	<b>và</b> and
<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>nào</b> which	<b>lập</b> establish	<b>chiến công</b> feat of arms
<b>nhều</b> many	<b>nhất.</b> most		

*I closely follow your great struggle hour by hour. I will give special awards for army and fighters who can establish the greatest feat of arms.*

- (4) **Nào,**  
so  
**đơn vị**  
unit  
**Bác**  
(me)uncle  
**giải thưởng**  
award  
**Lạng**  
Lang Son
- chiến sĩ**  
fighter  
**nào**  
which  
**quyết**  
determine  
**anh hùng**  
hero  
**và**  
and
- nào**  
which  
**hứa**  
promise  
**giật**  
win  
**Cao**  
Cao Bang  
**đơn vị**  
unit
- và**  
and  
**với**  
with  
**cho được**  
successfully obtain  
**Bác**  
Bac Can  
**kiểu mẫu?**  
model
- Which fighters and units promise me to win award as a the hero of Cao Bang, Bac Can, Lang Son and the heroic model unit?*

- (5) **Bác**  
I(uncle)  
**trả lời.**  
answer  
*I wait for you to answer me.*
- chờ**  
wait
- các**  
(pluralizer)
- chú**  
you

- (6) **Chào**  
greet  
*Warm regards*
- thân ái**  
dearly  
*and*
- và**  
and
- quyết thắng**  
be resolved to win  
*the victory*

- (7) **Ngày**      **6**              **tháng**      **10**              **năm**              **1950**  
date          6                  month        10                year              1950  
*October 6, 1950*

- (8) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**

Text 14 Telegram, sent to fighters at Cao Bang – Bac Can – Lang Son battlefield  
(Cont.)

(9)	<b>Sách</b> book <b>các</b> (pluralizer) <b>Nxb</b> (abbr. Nhà xuất bản) publishing house <b>1962,</b> 1962	<b>Hồ</b> Ho <b>lực lượng</b> power <b>Quân đội</b> army <b>tr.</b> (abbr. trang) page	<b>Chủ tịch</b> president <b>vũ trang</b> arms <b>Nhân dân,</b> people <b>88.</b> 88	<b>với</b> with <b>nhân dân,</b> people <b>Hà Nội,</b> Hanoi
-----	---	---	---	---

*The book “President Ho with the power in prople’s arms, People’s army publishing house, Hanoi, 1962, p. 88.*

## TEXT 15

<b>LỜI</b>	<b>KÊU GỌI</b>	<b>NHÂN</b>	<b>NGÀY</b>	<b>19-12-1950<sup>15</sup></b>
word	appeal	occasion	day	19-12-1950

*APPEAL ON THE OCCASION ON DECEMBER 19, 1950*

- (1) **Cùng** **toàn thể** **Vệ quốc quân** **và**  
 to whole Vietnamese National Army and  
**dân quân** **du kích,**  
 militia guerilla  
*To all the Vietnamese National Army and the Guerrilla militia,*
- (2) **Toàn thể** **đồng bào,**  
 whole fellow-countryman  
*All fellow-countrymen,*
- (3) **Toàn thể** **cán bộ,**  
 whole cadre  
*All cadres,*
- (4) **Hôm nay,** **cuộc** **trường kỳ** **kháng chiến**  
 today (classifier of trường kỳ long resistance  
 của ta đã bước sang  
 of us ASP: past action: already start  
**năm** **thứ 5** **(ở** **Nam Bộ**  
 year fifth at southern part  
**là** **năm** **thứ 6).**  
 be year sixth  
*Today, our protracted war of resistance starts the fifth year (at the south is the sixth year).*
- (5) **Tôi** **trân trọng** **thay mặt** **chính phủ**  
 I respectful on behalf of government  
**ngiêng mình** **trước** **linh hồn** **các**  
 bow one's head(on the before soul (pluralizer)  
 memory of some revered  
 dead)  
**chiến sĩ** **đã** **oanh liệt** **hy sinh**  
 fighter ASP: past action: already glorious sacrifice

<sup>15</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). *Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 6 (1950-1952)* (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 6 (1950-1952)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.133-136.

## Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

**cho** **Tổ quốc,**  
for fatherland  
*On behalf of government, I show the respect to the soul of fighters who gloriously sacrificed to our fatherland.*

- (6) **Gửi** **lời** **thân mến** **an ủi**  
send word dear console  
**các** **anh em** **thương binh** **và**  
(pluralizer) brothers war wounded and  
**gia đình** **các** **tử sĩ,**  
family (pluralizer) war dead  
*I send the word to console to all brothers who were war wounded and the families of war-dead.*

- (7) **Khen ngợi** **toàn thể** **bộ đội** **đang**  
commend whole army be in the process of  
**anh dũng** **giết** **giặc** **lập công,**  
of great fortitude kill foreign aggressor achieve a feat  
*I commend all armies which are doing the great fortitude to kill the foreign aggressors until achieve a feat.*

- (8) **Đồng bào** **đang** **hăng hái** **tham gia**  
fellow-countryman be in the process of enthusiastic take part in  
**kháng chiến,**  
resistance  
*Fellow-countrymen are enthusiastically taking part in the resistance.*

- (9) **Các** **cán bộ** **đang** **cố gắng**  
(pluralizer) cadre be in the process of strive  
**làm tròn** **nhiệm vụ,**  
fulfil responsibility  
*All cadres are striving to fulfill their responsibilities.*

- (10) **Đồng bào** **ở** **trong** **vùng**  
fellow-countryman at in area  
**tạm** **bị** **địch** **chiếm**  
temporary (passive/-ed) enemy occupy  
**và** **kiều bào** **ở** **nước ngoài**  
and [overseas]national at foreign country  
**đang** **đấu tranh** **cho** **Tổ quốc.**  
be in the process of struggle for fatherland

*Fellow-countrymen in temporary occupied areas and the Vietnamese overseas are struggling for our homeland.*

## Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

- (11) **Trong** 1.000 năm lịch sử  
in 1,000 year history  
**của** **nước** **ta** **gần**  
of country our nearly  
**đây** **có** **ba** **cuộc**  
now have three (classifier of kháng chiến)  
**trường kỳ** **kháng chiến:**  
protracted resistance  
*A thousand years until now, our history has had three times of the protracted resistance.*
- (12) - **Đời** **Trần** **chống** **quân**  
dynasty Tran anti army  
**Nguyễn,**  
Nguyen  
*- Tran dynasty was against the Mongolian army,*
- (13) - **Đời** **Lê** **chống** **quân**  
dynasty Le anti army  
**Minh,**  
Minh  
*- Le dynasty was against the Ming army,*
- (16) - **Và** **cuộc** **kháng chiến** **chống**  
and (classifier of kháng resistance anti  
chiến)  
**thực dân** **Pháp** **và** **bọn**  
colonize French and group  
**can thiệp** **Mỹ** **ngày nay.**  
intervene American nowadays  
*- And nowadays, the resistance is against the French colonialists and the American intervenists.*
- (17) **So sánh** **cuộc** **kháng chiến** **của**  
compare (classifier of kháng resistance of  
chiến)  
**chúng ta** **ngày nay** **với** **cuộc**  
us at present with classifier of  
chống  
oppose **quân** **Nguyễn,** **quân**  
**Minh** **của** **Mongol** **army**  
Ming dynasty of **tổ tiên** **ta**  
**ngày xưa,** **thì** **chúng ta** **thấy:**  
in former times then **we** **see**

Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

<b>Ngày xưa</b> in former times	<b>quân thù</b> enemy	<b>ở</b> at	<b>bên</b> side
<b>cạnh</b> side	<b>nước</b> country	<b>ta</b> our	<b>và</b> and
<b>rất</b> very	<b>hùng mạnh,</b> strong	<b>nước</b> country	<b>ta</b> our
<b>còn</b> still	<b>nhỏ,</b> small	<b>người</b> people	<b>ít,</b> little
<b>sức</b> power	<b>yếu,</b> weak	<b>thế mà</b> however	<b>chỉ</b> only
<b>nhờ</b> depend on	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>và</b> and	<b>hăng hái,</b> enthusiastic
<b>tổ tiên</b> ancestor	<b>ta</b> our	<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>thắng</b> win
<b>được</b> be able to	<b>quân</b> army	<b>giặc.</b> enemy	<b>Ngày nay,</b> at the present time
<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>đánh</b> strike	<b>quân thù</b> enemy	<b>ở</b> at
<b>xa lại,</b> foreign	<b>nước</b> country	<b>ta</b> our	<b>lớn</b> big
<b>hơn,</b> more	<b>người</b> people	<b>đông</b> crowded	<b>hơn,</b> more
<b>sức</b> power	<b>nhieu</b> many	<b>hơn.</b> more	<b>Chúng ta</b> we
<b>lại</b> also	<b>được</b> get	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>thế giới</b> world
<b>đồng tình,</b> unanimous	<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>rất</b> very
<b>đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>và</b> and	<b>hăng hái.</b> enthusiastic	<b>Cho nên</b> therefore
<b>chúng ta</b> we	<b>chắc chắn</b> definitely	<b>rằng</b> that	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance
<b>nhất định</b> (be) determined	<b>thắng lợi,</b> win a victory	<b>còn</b> but	<b>lũ</b> group (pej.)
<b>thực dân</b> colonize	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>và</b> and	<b>bọn</b> group
<b>can thiệp</b> intervene	<b>Mỹ</b> American	<b>sẽ</b> ASP.: future actions: will	<b>thất bại</b> lose
<b>đau đớn</b> feel deep grief	<b>như</b> same	<b>quân</b> army	<b>Nguyên,</b> Mongol
<b>quân</b> army	<b>Minh.</b> Minh		

## Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

*At present if we compare our resistance to oppose with the Mongolian army and the Ming army of our ancestors in the former times, we can see that the enemies were very strong but we were still a small-people, weak power, however it depended on our unity and enthusiastic that made our ancestor could win over the enemies' armies. At present, we strike the enemies in foreign. Our country is bigger, our people is more crowded and we have more power. We get the unanimousness from the people all over the world and we are very unite and enthusiastic. Therefore, we are certain that our resistance is determined to win a victory. But a gang of the French colonialists and the American intervenists will lose the same as Mongolian and Ming troops.*

- |      |  |   |   |  |
|------|--|---|---|--|
| (18) | <b>Lại</b><br>in addition<br><b>của</b><br>of<br><b>ta</b><br>us<br><b>thì</b><br>then | <b>xét</b><br>consider<br><b>địch</b><br>enemy<br><b>trong</b><br>in<br><b>ta</b><br>we | <b>kỹ</b><br>through<br><b>và</b><br>and<br><b>mấy</b><br>a few<br><b>thấy:</b><br>find | <b>tình thế</b><br>situation<br><b>của</b><br>of<br><b>năm nay,</b><br>this year |
|------|--|---|---|--|

*In addition, if we consider thorough the enemy's situation and our situation in a few years just passed , We find that:*

- |      |   |   |  |   |
|------|---|---|--|---|
| (19) | <b>Bên</b><br>side<br><b>chiến tranh</b><br>war<br><b>mà</b><br>that<br><b>của</b><br>of<br><b>sa sút,</b><br>be ruined<br><b>vào</b><br>into | <b>địch:</b><br>enemy<br><b>phi nghĩa</b><br>unrighteous<br><b>quân sự,</b><br>military<br><b>nước</b><br>country<br><b>càng</b><br>more<br><b>thế lực</b><br>influence | <b>Vì</b><br>because<br><b>ở</b><br>at<br><b>kinh tế,</b><br>economics<br><b>Pháp</b><br>France<br><b>phải</b><br>must<br><b>Mỹ.</b><br>American | <b>cuộc</b><br>(classifier of chiến tranh)<br><b>Việt Nam</b><br>Vietnam<br><b>chính trị</b><br>politics<br><b>ngày càng</b><br>more and more<br><b>phụ thuộc</b><br>depend |
|------|---|---|--|---|

*The enemy's side: because of the unrighteous war of Vietnam causing the military, economics, politics of France are more ruined and are more depended on the United States of America.*

- |      |   |  |   |   |
|------|---|--|---|---|
| (20) | <b>Chính</b><br>main<br><b>Pháp</b><br>France<br><b>rằng:</b><br>that<br><b>trung bình</b><br>average | <b>những</b><br>(pluralizer)<br><b>cũng</b><br>also<br><b>chiến tranh</b><br>war<br><b>mỗi</b><br>each | <b>nhà</b><br>house<br><b>phải</b><br>must<br><b>ở</b><br>at<br><b>tháng</b><br>month | <b>tư bản</b><br>capital<br><b>nhận</b><br>recognize<br><b>Việt Nam</b><br>Vietnam<br><b>Pháp</b><br>French |
|------|---|--|---|---|

Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

<b>chết</b> die	<b>1.000</b> 1,000	<b>người.</b> people	<b>mỗi</b> each
<b>ngày</b> day	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>tốn</b> cost	<b>gần</b> nearly
<b>1.000</b> 1,000	<b>triệu</b> million	<b>quan.</b> money	<b>Đó</b> that
<b>là</b> be	<b>chưa</b> not yet	<b>kẻ</b> classifier for persons, negative connotations	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)
<b>trận</b> struggle	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>bị</b> (passive/ -ed)	<b>thua</b> lose
<b>to</b> big	<b>như</b> same	<b>chiến dịch Biên giới</b> the World War	<b>vừa rồi.</b> recent

*Mainly, the French also must recognize the war in Vietnam. In average, every month the French soldiers die 1,000 people. Everyday France cost nearly 1,000 million Francs. Those are not including in the struggle which they got a big loss in the same thing in the World War which passed.*

(21)

<b>Vì vậy</b> therefore	<b>ngoài</b> besides	<b>bọn</b> gang (pej.)	<b>thực dân</b> colonize
<b>ngoan cố</b> stubborn	<b>ra,</b> besides	<b>thì</b> then	<b>nhân dân</b> fellow-countryman
<b>lao động</b> worker	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>kiên quyết</b> (be)determined	<b>phản đối</b> reactionary
<b>chiến tranh</b> war	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Việt Nam,</b> Vietnam	<b>và</b> and
<b>cả</b> all	<b>trong</b> in	<b>giai cấp</b> class	<b>tư sản</b> bourgeois
<b>Pháp,</b> French	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>người</b> people	<b>cũng</b> also
<b>tỏ ý</b> express one's intention	<b>không</b> NEG.	<b>tán thành</b> agree to	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of chiến tranh)
<b>chiến tranh</b> war	<b>xâm lược</b> commit aggression	<b>đó.</b> that	

*Therefore, besides a gang of colonialists, the French workers are determined the reactionary was in Vietnam and all the French bourgeois strata do not agree with that war of aggression.*

(22)

<b>Và</b> and	<b>hiện nay,</b> at present	<b>chính phủ</b> government	<b>Pháp</b> French
<b>rất</b> very	<b>bấp bênh,</b> unstable	<b>xã hội</b> society	<b>Pháp</b> French
<b>lại</b> again	<b>chia</b> seperate	<b>năm</b> year	<b>xẻ</b> cut

## Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

**bảy.**

seven

*At present, the French Government is very unstable and the French society was seperated.*

- (23) **Nói** speak  
**địch** enemy  
*In sum, the situation of the enemy's side has more difficulties.*
- |                                   |                                |                    |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------|
| <b>tóm lại:</b><br>in summary     | <b>tình thế</b><br>situation   | <b>bên</b><br>side |
| <b>ngày càng</b><br>more and more | <b>khó khăn.</b><br>difficulty |                    |
- (24) **Bên** side  
**chúng ta** we  
**4** four  
**mà** that  
**năm** year  
**về** about  
**mọi** every  
**như vậy.** like this  
*Our side, those were not only four years that we could pass all miserably hard. But we have to make more progress in each year in the Government, Army, and every side. As some certify as:*
- |   |                                       |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <b>ta:</b><br>our                           | <b>Chẳng</b><br>not at all            | <b>những</b><br>(pluralizer)          |
| <b>đã</b><br>ASP.: past<br>actions: already | <b>vượt</b><br>pass                   | <b>qua</b><br>pass                    |
| <b>năm</b><br>year                          | <b>gian nan</b><br>miserably hard     | <b>cực khổ,</b><br>hard and miserable |
| <b>chúng ta</b><br>we                       | <b>lại</b><br>again                   | <b>mỗi</b><br>each                    |
| <b>một</b><br>one                           | <b>tiến bộ</b><br>progress            | <b>thêm</b><br>increase               |
| <b>chính trị,</b><br>government             | <b>quân sự</b><br>army                | <b>và</b><br>and                      |
| <b>mặt</b><br>side                          | <b>khác</b><br>other                  | <b>đều</b><br>all                     |
| <b>Vài</b><br>some                          | <b>chứng thực:</b><br>certify as true |                                       |
- (25) **Đầu** the beginning  
**to** big  
**nước** country  
**triệu** million  
**Nhân dân** fellow-countryman  
**ủng hộ** support  
**thế giới** world
- |                                   |   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|---|-----------------------------------|
| <b>năm nay</b><br>this year       | <b>chúng ta</b><br>we                   | <b>thắng lợi</b><br>win a victory |
| <b>về</b><br>about                | <b>chính trị:</b><br>politics           | <b>các</b><br>(pluralizer)        |
| <b>dân chủ</b><br>democratic      | <b>gồm</b><br>consist of                | <b>800</b><br>800                 |
| <b>người</b><br>people            | <b>công nhân</b><br>worker              | <b>ta.</b><br>our                 |
| <b>lao động</b><br>worker         | <b>Pháp</b><br>French                   | <b>nhật liệt</b><br>warm          |
| <b>chúng ta.</b><br>us            | <b>Nhân sĩ</b><br>patriotic personality | <b>dân chủ</b><br>democratic      |
| <b>ngày càng</b><br>more and more | <b>đồng tình</b><br>unanimous           | <b>với</b><br>with                |

Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

**chúng ta.**

us

*In the beginning of this year, we won the great victory in politics from the Democratic countries where consist of 800 million workers. The French workers warmly support us. The patriotism in the democratic world is more unanimous with us.*

- |      |                           |                                  |  |                      |
|------|---------------------------|----------------------------------|--|----------------------|
| (26) | <b>Trong</b><br>in        | <b>chiến dịch</b><br>battlefiled | <b>mùa</b><br>season                         | <b>thu</b><br>winter |
|      | <b>vừa rồi,</b><br>recent | <b>ta</b><br>we                  | <b>đã:</b><br>ASP.: past<br>actions: already |                      |

*In the battlefields in the recent winter, we*

- |      |  |                            |                                     |                                  |
|------|--|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| (27) | <b>Giải phóng</b><br>liberation                  | <b>được</b><br>be able to  | <b>5</b><br>five                    | <b>tỉnh,</b><br>province         |
|      | <b>tiêu diệt</b><br>wipe out                     | <b>và</b><br>and           | <b>bắt sống</b><br>capture alive    | <b>ngót</b><br>amount nearly to  |
|      | <b>một</b><br>one                                | <b>vạn</b><br>ten thousand | <b>lính</b><br>soldier              | <b>Pháp</b><br>French            |
|      | <b>và</b><br>and                                 | <b>367</b><br>367          | <b>sĩ quan</b><br>officer           | <b>và</b><br>and                 |
|      | <b>hạ sĩ quan</b><br>non-commissioned<br>officer | <b>Pháp</b><br>French      | <b>(Thủ tướng</b><br>Prime minister | <b>Pháp</b><br>French            |
|      | <b>đã</b><br>ASP.: past actions:<br>already      | <b>phải</b><br>must        | <b>thừa nhận</b><br>recognize       | <b>con</b><br>(classifier of số) |
|      | <b>số</b><br>number                              | <b>này)</b><br>this        |                                     |                                  |

*liberated 5 provinces, wiped out and captured alive nearly ten thousand of French soldiers, and 367 French officers and non-commissioned officers (French Prime minister must recognize amounts to those).*

- |      |                                   |                                  |                                      |                    |
|------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------|
| (28) | <b>Quân đội</b><br>army           | <b>ta</b><br>our                 | <b>thì</b><br>then                   | <b>ngày</b><br>day |
|      | <b>thêm</b><br>increase           | <b>tiến bộ.</b><br>make progress | <b>Nhân dân</b><br>fellow-countrymen | <b>ta</b><br>our   |
|      | <b>ngày càng</b><br>more and more | <b>đoàn kết.</b><br>unite        |                                      |                    |

*Our army is increasing to make progress in everyday. Our fellows are unite more and more.*

- |      |                              |                                   |                  |                 |
|------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| (29) | <b>Những</b><br>(pluralizer) | <b>thắng lợi</b><br>win a victory | <b>của</b><br>of | <b>ta</b><br>us |
|------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|------------------|-----------------|

## Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

<b>trong</b> in	<b>năm</b> year	<b>vừa</b> just	<b>qua</b> pass
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>là</b> be	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thắng lợi</b> win a victory
<b>chung</b> general	<b>của</b> of	<b>phe</b> side	<b>dân chủ</b> democratic
<b>và</b> and	<b>hoà bình</b> peace	<b>thế giới.</b> world	

*Our victories last year were the general victories of the democratic side and the peace world.*

(30) <b>Nói</b> speak	<b>tóm lại:</b> in summary	<b>sau</b> after	<b>4</b> four
<b>năm</b> year	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>toàn quốc,</b> the whole country	<b>ta</b> we
<b>đã</b> ASP.: past actions: already	<b>từ</b> from	<b>bị</b> (passive/ -ed)	<b>động</b> touch/collide
<b>chuyển</b> change	<b>đần</b> dull/dense	<b>sang</b> into	<b>chủ động,</b> take the initiative
<b>từ</b> from	<b>thế</b> position	<b>yếu</b> weak	<b>chuyển</b> change
<b>đần</b> dull/dense	<b>sang</b> into	<b>thế công.</b> offensive	

*In sum, after four years of National resistance, we changed from collision into the initiative, and from the weak position into the offensive.*

(31) <b>Những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>đó</b> that	<b>là</b> be
<b>do</b> by/through	<b>chiến sĩ</b> soldier	<b>ta</b> our	<b>dũng cảm,</b> valiant
<b>nhân dân</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ta</b> our	<b>hăng hái,</b> enthusiastic	<b>Chính phủ</b> government
<b>ta</b> our	<b>kiên quyết,</b> (be)determined	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>ta</b> our
<b>chính nghĩa.</b> righteous			

*Those victories were by our valiant soldiers, our enthusiastically fellows, our Government which is determined our resistance is righteous.*

(32) <b>Nhưng</b> but	<b>tôi</b> I	<b>phải</b> must	<b>nhắc lại</b> recall/evoke
<b>lần</b> time	<b>nữa</b> further	<b>để</b> for	<b>bộ đội</b> army
<b>và</b> and	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>ta</b> our	<b>ghi tạc</b> engrave deeply on one's memory

Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

<b>vào</b> into	<b>lòng:</b> heart	<b>tuyệt đối</b> absolute	<b>chớ</b> do not
<b>vì</b> because	<b>thắng</b> win	<b>mà</b> but	<b>kiêu căng,</b> self-conceited
<b>chủ quan,</b> subjective	<b>khinh</b> disdain/scorn	<b>địch.</b> enemy	<b>Chúng ta</b> we
<b>phải</b> must	<b>nhớ</b> remember	<b>rằng:</b> that	<b>Càng</b> more
<b>gần</b> near	<b>thất bại,</b> lose	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>càng</b> more
<b>cố gắng,</b> endeavour	<b>càng</b> more	<b>hung dữ,</b> fierce	<b>càng</b> more
<b>liều mạng.</b> fearless of death	<b>Càng</b> more	<b>gần</b> near	<b>thắng lợi,</b> win a victory
<b>ta</b> we	<b>càng</b> more	<b>gặp</b> meet	<b>nhieu</b> many
<b>sự</b> (classifier of gay go)	<b>gay go.</b> tense	<b>Chúng ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must
<b>chuẩn bị</b> prepare	<b>sẵn sàng</b> ready	<b>tinh thần</b> mind	<b>và</b> and
<b>lực lượng</b> power	<b>để</b> for	<b>đối phó</b> cope with	<b>với</b> with
<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>khó khăn</b> difficulty	<b>mới,</b> new	

*But I have to evoke in the futher time to our army and all fellows to engrave in your heart that we do not win absolutely. We have to remember that if the enemy nearly lose, they are more endeavour. If they are more fierce, they are more fearless of death. If we nearly win a victory, we have to meet more tenseness. We must prepare our mine and power for new difficulties.*

- (33) **Phải**                      **nhớ**                      **rằng**                      **cuộc**  
must                      remember                      that                      (classifier of kháng chiến)  
**kháng chiến**                      **của**                      **ta**                      **là**  
resistance                      of                      us                      be  
**trường kỳ**                      **kháng chiến.**  
protracted                      resistance

*We have to remember that our resistance is the protracted resistance.*

- (34) **Vì vậy,**                      **nhiệm vụ**                      **của**                      **chúng ta**  
therefore                      responsibility                      of                      us  
**từ**                      **nay**                      **cũng**                      **như**  
from                      now                      also                      same  
**từ**                      **trước,**                      **là:**  
from                      before                      be

*Therefore, our responsibilities from at present are also the same as former time which are:*

## Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

- (35) - **Bộ đội** **phải** **thi đua** **tập luyện,**  
 army must compete train/drill  
**thi đua** **giết** **giặc** **lập công;**  
 compete kill enemy achieve a feat  
*- Army must compete to train and to kill enemy to achieve a feat;*
- (36) - **Nhân dân** **phải** **thi đua** **tăng gia sản xuất,**  
 fellow-countryman must compete increase production  
**thi đua** **tham gia** **và** **ủng hộ**  
 emulate take part in and support  
**kháng chiến;**  
 resistance  
*- Our fellows must compete to increase products, to take part in, and to support our resistance;*
- (37) - **Cán bộ** **quân,** **dân,** **chính**  
 cadre army citizen main  
**phải** **thi đua** **thực hành** **Cần,**  
 must compete practice industry  
**Kiệm,** **Liêm,** **Chính;** **thi đua**  
 thrift honesty righteousness compete  
**làm tròn** **nhiệm vụ;**  
 fulfill responsibility  
*- Cadres, armies and fellows must compete to practice in industry, thrift, honesty, righteousness and to fulfill your responsibilities.*
- (38) - **Quân,** **dân,** **chính** **phải**  
 army citizen main must  
**đoàn kết** **nhất trí,** **hợp tác** **chặt chẽ.**  
 unite be unanimous co-operate close  
*Armies, fellows must unite, be unanimous and co-operate.*
- (39) **Với** **tình hình** **thế giới** **lợi**  
 with situation world good  
**cho** **ta,** **với** **sự**  
 for us with (classifier of ủng hộ)  
**ủng hộ** **của** **phe** **dân chủ**  
 support of side democratic  
**thế giới,** **với** **sức mạnh** **vô địch**  
 world with power invisible  
**là** **lực lượng** **đoàn kết** **của**  
 be power unite of  
**dân tộc** **ta,** **tôi** **chắc**  
 nation our I sure  
**rằng** **kháng chiến** **năm** **tới**  
 that resistance year arrive

## Text 15 Appeal on the occasion on December 19, 1950 (Cont.)

<b>sẽ</b> will	<b>tiến bộ</b> progress	<b>nhiều</b> many	<b>hơn</b> more
<b>và</b> and	<b>thắng lợi</b> win a victory	<b>to</b> big	<b>hơn</b> more
<b>năm</b> year	<b>vừa</b> just	<b>qua.</b> pass	

*With the world situation which is good for us, support from the Democratic world and invisible power which is a power in unity of our nation, I am sure that our resistance in the coming year will have more progress and win the great victories more than the passing year.*

- (40) **Trường kỳ**  
protracted  
*The protracted resistance is certain to win the victory.*
- |                                  |                               |                              |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <b>kháng chiến</b><br>resistance | <b>nhất định</b><br>certainly | <b>thắng lợi!</b><br>victory |
|----------------------------------|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
- (41) **Thông nhất,**  
unity  
*Unity and independence are certain to succeed.*
- |                               |                               |                               |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <b>độc lập</b><br>independent | <b>nhất định</b><br>certainly | <b>thành công!</b><br>succeed |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|-------------------------------|
- (42) **Hỡi**  
dear  
*Fighters,*
- |                             |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
| <b>chiến sĩ,</b><br>fighter |  |  |
|-----------------------------|--|--|
- (43) **Hỡi**  
dear  
*Fellow-countrymen,*
- |                                       |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
| <b>đồng bào,</b><br>fellow-countryman |  |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|--|
- (44) **Tiến lên!**  
advance  
*Go forward!*
- (45) **Chào**  
greet
- |                           |                  |  |
|---------------------------|------------------|--|
| <b>thân ái</b><br>beloved | <b>và</b><br>and | <b>quyết thắng</b><br>be resolved to win |
|---------------------------|------------------|--|
- Warmly regards and resolved to win a victory*
- (46) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**
- (47) **Báo**  
newspaper  
**ngày**  
date  
*Su that (The Truth) newspaper, no.154, December 19, 1950.*
- |                                  |                     |                    |
|----------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| <b>Sự thật,</b><br>Su that       | <b>số</b><br>number | <b>154,</b><br>154 |
| <b>19-12-1950.</b><br>19-12-1950 |                     |                    |

## TEXT 16

<b>LỜI</b> word	<b>KÊU GỌI</b> appeal	<b>NHÂN DỊP</b> occasion	<b>KỶ NIỆM</b> anniversary	<b>LÀN</b> time
<b>THỨ NĂM</b> fifth	<b>NGÀY</b> day	<b>TOÀN QUỐC</b> the whole country	<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN</b> <sup>16</sup> resistance	

*APPEAL ON THE OCCASION OF THE FIFTH ANNIVERSARY OF  
THE APPEAL FOR NATIONAL RESISTANCE*

- (1) **Cùng** **đồng bào** **toàn quốc** **và**  
to fellow-countryman the whole country and  
**kiều bào** **ở** **nước ngoài,**  
emigrant fellow-countryman at foreign country  
*To fellow-countrymen all over country and the Vietnamese overseas,*
- (2) **Cùng** **các** **chiến sĩ** **anh dũng,**  
to (pluralizer) fighter of great fortitude  
**Vệ quốc quân,** **bộ đội** **địa phương,** **dân quân**  
Vietnamese army local militia  
National Army  
**du kích,**  
guerrilla  
*To our fighters of the great fortitude, the Vietnamese National Army, the Local Army, the Guerrilla militias,*
- (3) **Cùng** **các** **cán bộ** **chính quyền**  
to (pluralizer) cadre administrative  
**và** **đoàn thể,**  
and organization  
*To cadres, administrations, and organizations,*
- (4) **Cùng** **các** **cụ** **phụ lão,**  
to (pluralizer) great-grandparent elderly people  
**các** **cháu** **thanh niên** **và**  
(pluralizer) grandchild youth and  
**nhì đồng.**  
small child  
*To all great-grandparents, youths, and grandchildren,*
- (5) **Hôm nay,** **cuộc** **kháng chiến** **vĩ đại**  
today (classifier of resist great  
kháng chiến)

<sup>16</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). *Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 6 (1950-1952) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 6 (1950-1952))*. Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p. 348-352.

Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us	<b>bước sang</b> start	<b>năm</b> year
<b>thứ sáu.</b> sixth	<b>Chúng ta</b> we	<b>hãy</b> let's	<b>so sánh</b> compare
<b>tình hình</b> situation	<b>ngày nay</b> nowadays	<b>với</b> with	<b>tình hình</b> situation
<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>năm</b> year	<b>bắt đầu</b> begin	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance
<b>để</b> for	<b>thấy</b> see	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>tiến bộ</b> progress
<b>đã</b> already	<b>qua</b> pass	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us
<b>và</b> and	<b>đoán định</b> judge and decide	<b>bước tiến</b> advance	<b>sắp</b> be forthcoming
<b>tới.</b> arrive			

*Today, our great resistance starts the sixth year. Let's us compare the current situation with the situation in a few years ago from the beginning year of resistance to see our progresses which already passed to decide for the forthcoming situation.*

(6)

<b>Mấy</b> a few	<b>năm</b> year	<b>qua,</b> pass	<b>tình hình</b> situation
<b>thế giới,</b> world	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>như</b> like	<b>tình hình</b> situation
<b>trong</b> in	<b>nước,</b> country	<b>thay đổi</b> change	<b>rất</b> very
<b>nhieu,</b> many	<b>và</b> and	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thay đổi</b> change
<b>ấy</b> that	<b>rất</b> very	<b>lợi</b> benefit	<b>cho</b> for
<b>ta.</b> us			

*For a few years ago, the world's situations were also same situations in our country which had many changes and thoset changes were very beneficial for us.*

(7)

<b>Trước đây,</b> formerly	<b>phe</b> side	<b>đế quốc</b> empire	<b>do</b> by
<b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>cầm đầu</b> be the ringleader of	<b>đeo</b> wear	<b>cái</b> (classifier of mặt nạ)
<b>mặt nạ</b> mask	<b>giả</b> sham	<b>nhân,</b> benevolence	<b>giả</b> sham
<b>nghĩa</b> righteousness	<b>tôn trọng</b> respect	<b>hoà bình.</b> peace	<b>Ngày nay,</b> nowadays

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>chúng</b> they	<b>đã</b> already	<b>lộ</b> show	<b>cái</b> (classifier of mặt thật)
<b>mặt</b> face	<b>thật</b> real	<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng</b> them
<b>là</b> be	<b>bọn</b> group	<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>cướp</b> plunder
<b>nước,</b> country	<b>lũ</b> group	<b>quỷ</b> devil	<b>chiến tranh.</b> war

*Formerly, the empire's side, the United State of America is the rightleader which wears sham mask of the benevolence, righteousness, and respectful in the peace. Nowadays, they show their real face which is a gang of aggressor to plunder our country, and a gang of war devil.*

(8) <b>Trước đây,</b> formerly	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>khoe khoang</b> boast	<b>là</b> be
<b>giàu mạnh</b> wealthy and strong	<b>và</b> and	<b>nhất trí.</b> unanimously	<b>Ngày nay,</b> nowadays
<b>chúng</b> they	<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>lâm</b> land in	<b>vào</b> into
<b>kinh tế</b> economics	<b>khủng hoảng.</b> crisis	<b>Lại</b> as	<b>vì</b> because
<b>quyền lợi</b> interest	<b>xung đột,</b> conflict	<b>mà</b> that	<b>mâu thuẫn</b> contradiction
<b>giữa</b> between	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more	<b>hiều.</b> many

*Formerly, they boast that they are wealthy, strong and unanimous. Nowadays, they are landing into the economic crisis because the conflict of interests is the contradiction between them which is increasing more.*

(9) <b>Chúng</b> they	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>chuẩn bị</b> prepare	<b>chiến tranh</b> war
<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>thứ ba.</b> third	<b>Nhưng</b> but	<b>nhân dân</b> people
<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>và</b> and	<b>cả</b> all	<b>nhân dân</b> people
<b>trong</b> in	<b>nước</b> country	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>đều</b> all
<b>kịch liệt</b> vehement	<b>phản đối.</b> oppose		

*They are endeavour to prepare to do the third World War. But the people all over the world are vehement opposition.*

(10) <b>Quân đội</b> army	<b>tinh nhuệ</b> well-trained	<b>của</b> of	<b>Mỹ</b> America
------------------------------	----------------------------------	------------------	----------------------

Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>và</b> and	<b>quân đội</b> army	<b>17</b> seventeen	<b>nước</b> country
<b>phe</b> side	<b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)
<b>Quân đội</b> army	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Triều Tiên</b> North Korea	<b>và</b> and
<b>Quân chí nguyện</b> volunteer troops	<b>Trung Quốc</b> China	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>cho</b> for
<b>điều đứng,</b> afflicted	<b>và</b> and	<b>bắt buộc</b> compel	<b>phê</b> side
<b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>phải</b> must	<b>đàm phán.</b> hold diplomatic talks	

*The well-trained army of the United States of America and the armies in seventeen countries in American side are being fought by the North Korean People army and the Chinese volunteer troops. And they are being compelled.*

(11)

<b>Quân đội</b> army	<b>Anh</b> England	<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)
<b>nghĩa quân</b> insurgent army(fighting for a just cause)	<b>Mã Lai</b> Malaysia	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>cho</b> for
<b>vỡ</b> break	<b>đầu</b> head	<b>đổ máu.</b> shed one's blood	<b>Ở</b> at
<b>Iran</b> Iran	<b>và</b> and	<b>Ai Cập,</b> Egypt	<b>đế quốc</b> empire
<b>Anh</b> England	<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>nhân dân</b> people
<b>hai</b> two	<b>nước</b> country	<b>ấy</b> that	<b>đòi</b> claim
<b>đuổi</b> expel	<b>đi.</b> go		

*The English Army is being fought by the Malaysian insurgent army to stop the shedding blood. In Iran and Egypt, the empire of England is being claimed by the people from those two countries to expel to go out.*

(12)

<b>Còn</b> and	<b>đế quốc</b> empire	<b>Pháp?</b> France	<b>Vì</b> because
<b>bọn</b> group	<b>thống trị</b> rule	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>cam lòng</b> content oneself with
<b>làm</b> do	<b>đầy tớ</b> servant	<b>ngoan ngoãn</b> obedient	<b>cho</b> for
<b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>mà</b> that	<b>nước</b> country	<b>Pháp</b> French

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>lâm</b> land in	<b>vào</b> into	<b>khủng hoảng</b> crisis
<b>mọi</b> every	<b>mặt –</b> side	<b>kinh tế,</b> economics	<b>tài chính,</b> finance
<b>xã hội,</b> society	<b>chính trị.</b> politics	<b>Tình hình</b> situation	<b>Pháp</b> France
<b>đã</b> already	<b>khốn đốn,</b> miserable	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of chiến tranh)	<b>chiến tranh</b> war
<b>xâm lược</b> aggression	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam	<b>làm</b> do
<b>cho</b> for	<b>nó</b> it	<b>càng</b> more	<b>thêm</b> increase
<b>khốn đốn.</b> miserable	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thuộc địa</b> colony	<b>Pháp</b> French
<b>ở</b> at	<b>Bắc Phi</b> North Africa	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>nổi lên</b> rise
<b>chống</b> oppose	<b>Pháp.</b> France		

*What about the French empire? Because the group of the French rule which does a obedient servant for the United State of America but France are landing into the crisis in every side in economics, finance, society, and politics. The French situation was miserable in the aggression war at Vietnam that make them increasing more miserable. The French colony in North Africa is also opposed.*

(13) <b>Nói</b> speak	<b>tóm lại:</b> in sum	<b>ngày nay,</b> nowadays	<b>phe</b> side
<b>đế quốc</b> empire	<b>do</b> by	<b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>cầm đầu</b> be the ringleader of
<b>yếu</b> weak	<b>hơn</b> more	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>năm</b> year
<b>trước.</b> before	<b>Nhất</b> most	<b>là</b> be	<b>đế quốc</b> empire
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>lại</b> also	<b>hèn yếu</b> fainthearted	<b>hơn</b> more
<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>năm</b> year	<b>trước.</b> before	

*In sum, nowadays, the empire side by the United States of America is the ringleader which is weaker more than a few years ago. The most weakness is the French empire which is also fainthearted more in a few year ago.*

\*

\* \*

(14) <b>Phe</b> side	<b>đế quốc</b> empire	<b>thì</b> then	<b>yếu</b> weak
-------------------------	--------------------------	--------------------	--------------------

Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>đần</b> dull	<b>xuông,</b> go down	<b>phe</b> side	<b>dân chủ</b> democratic
<b>thì</b> then	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more	<b>mạnh</b> strong	<b>lên.</b> go up

*The empire side is weak and dull to go down meanwhile the democratic side is stronger.*

(15) **Ở**  
at

<b>Liên Xô,</b> The Union of Soviet	<b>công cuộc</b> [great]	<b>xây dựng</b> undertaking
<b>hoà bình,</b> construction	<b>xây dựng</b> peace	<b>mới</b> society
<b>phát triển</b> new	<b>vùn vụt.</b> develop swift like lightning	

*In the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic, the undertaking of construction of peace and social construction just developed to swift like the lightning.*

(16) **Liên Xô**  
The Union of Soviet

<b>lại</b> also	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>giúp</b> help
<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nước</b> country	<b>bạn</b> friend
<b>dân chủ</b> democracy	<b>mới,</b> new	<b>xây dựng</b> construct
		<b>hoà bình.</b> peace

*The Union Soviet of Socialist Republic is also endeavour to help the allied countries to construct the new democracy and peace.*

(17) **Mấy**  
a few

<b>năm</b> year	<b>trước,</b> before	<b>để quốc</b> empire
<b>Mỹ</b> American	<b>tưởng</b> think	<b>chỉ</b> only
<b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>có</b> have	<b>bom</b> bomb
<b>động</b> cave	<b>một chút</b> a little bit	<b>là</b> be
<b>đưa</b> give	<b>bom</b> bomb	<b>nguyên tử</b> atom
<b>doạ</b> threat	<b>thế giới.</b> world	<b>Nay</b> at present
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>có</b> have	<b>bom</b> bomb
<b>đủ</b> enough	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cỡ.</b> size
<b>bom</b> bomb	<b>nguyên tử</b> atom	<b>Liên Xô</b> The Union of Soviet

**ra**  
out

**Liên Xô**  
The Union of Soviet

**nguyên tử**  
atom

**Nhưng**  
but

**chỉ**  
only

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>để</b> for	<b>chống</b> oppose	<b>chiến tranh,</b> war	<b>để</b> for
<b>giữ</b> preserve	<b>hoà bình,</b> peace	<b>cho nên</b> therefore	<b>được</b> have got
<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>yêu chuộng</b> love	<b>hoà bình</b> peace	<b>khắp</b> all over
<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>hoan hô.</b> cheer		

*A few years ago, the American empire thought that they have neuclear bombs that they can use them to threat the world. At the present, the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic also has neuclear bombs enough. But the neuclear bombs of the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic are only used to oppose the war, to preserve the peace. Therefore, they have got all people who love in peace.*

(18) <b>Trước đây</b> formerly	<b>hai</b> two	<b>năm,</b> year	<b>cách mạng</b> revolution
<b>Trung Quốc</b> Chinese	<b>đã</b> already	<b>đánh tan</b> defeat(an army)	<b>phe</b> side
<b>phản động,</b> reactionary	<b>đã</b> already	<b>đuổi</b> pursue	<b>sạch</b> cleanly
<b>bọn</b> group	<b>đế quốc,</b> empire	<b>trước</b> before	<b>hết</b> finish
<b>là</b> be	<b>đế quốc</b> empire	<b>Mỹ.</b> American	<b>Và</b> and
<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>xây dựng</b> construct	<b>một</b> one	<b>nước</b> country
<b>Trung Hoa</b> China	<b>dân chủ</b> democratic	<b>mới.</b> new	

*Two years ago, the Chinese revolution defeated the reactionary side. It pursued to clean the empire which is the American empire. And they are constructing the new democratic of China.*

(19) <b>Hai</b> two	<b>nước</b> country	<b>to</b> great	<b>nhất</b> most
<b>thế giới</b> – world	<b>Liên Xô</b> The Union of Soviet	<b>và</b> and	<b>Trung Quốc</b> – China
<b>cùng</b> same	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nước</b> country	<b>dân chủ</b> democratic
<b>mới</b> new	<b>đoàn kết</b> unity	<b>thành</b> change into	<b>một</b> one
<b>khối.</b> mass	<b>Đó</b> that	<b>là</b> be	<b>một</b> one
<b>lực lượng</b> power	<b>khổng lồ,</b> colossal	<b>là</b> be	<b>thành trì</b> stronghold

Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>vô cùng</b> endless	<b>vững chắc</b> firm	<b>của</b> of	<b>cách mạng,</b> revolution
<b>của</b> of	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>đang</b> be in the process of
<b>đấu tranh</b> war	<b>để</b> for	<b>giải phóng</b> liberate	<b>tổ quốc</b> fatherland
<b>mình.</b> oneself	<b>Nay</b> at present	<b>lại</b> also	<b>có</b> have
<b>565</b> 565	<b>triệu</b> million	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>đòi</b> require
<b>5</b> five	<b>cường</b> strong	<b>quốc kỳ</b> national flag	<b>Công ước</b> convention
<b>hoà bình.</b> peace			

*The two greatest countries of the world which are the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic and the People's Republic of China are the same with other democratic countries which have unity and change to the mass. Those are a colossal power which is a stronghold of the revolution for other nations which are being in the war to liberate their own fatherland. At present, they have 565 million fighters to require five of the strong National flags of peace convention.*

(20) <b>Đó</b> that	<b>là</b> be	<b>bầu bạn</b> friends	<b>ta.</b> our
<b>Đó</b> that	<b>là</b> be	<b>đồng minh</b> ally	<b>ta</b> our
<b>ngày nay.</b> at present			

*Those are our friends. At present, those are our allies.*

\*

\* \*

(22) <b>Tình hình</b> situation	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>như vậy.</b> like this	<b>Tình hình</b> situation
<b>trong</b> in	<b>nước</b> country	<b>thế nào ?</b> how	

*Following the world situation, how about the situation in our country?*

(23) <b>Ta</b> we	<b>mới</b> just	<b>lấy</b> get	<b>được</b> be able to
<b>chính quyền,</b> government	<b>thì</b> then	<b>liền</b> next to	<b>phải</b> must
<b>kháng chiến.</b> resistance	<b>Có thể</b> can	<b>nói</b> say	<b>lúc</b> time
<b>đó,</b> that	<b>ta</b> we	<b>chỉ</b> only	<b>có</b> have

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>hai</b> two	<b>bàn tay</b> hand	<b>trắng.</b> white	<b>Chúng ta</b> we
<b>vừa</b> just	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resist	<b>vừa</b> just	<b>xây dựng.</b> construct

*We just have the Government which has to resist. It is able to say that, we have only two white hands. We have just resisted and constructed.*

(24) <b>Ta</b> we	<b>đã</b> already	<b>xây dựng</b> construct	<b>một</b> one
<b>quân đội</b> army	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b> mạnh mẽ,</b> strong	<b>gồm</b> consist of
<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>mười</b> ten	<b>vạn</b> ten thousand	<b>Vệ quốc quân,</b> Vietnamese National Army
<b>bộ đội</b> army	<b>địa phương,</b> local	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân quân</b> militia
<b>du kích.</b> guerrilla			

*We constructed a strong People's army which consists of ten thousand people, the Vietnamese National Army, the Local Army, and the Guerrilla militia.*

(25) <b>Ta</b> we	<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>xây dựng</b> construct	<b>một</b> one
<b>nền</b> basis	<b>kinh tế</b> economics	<b>tài chính</b> finance	<b>và</b> and
<b>văn hoá</b> culture	<b>xã hội</b> society	<b>tự do,</b> freedom	<b>độc lập,</b> independence
<b>tiến bộ.</b> progress			

*We are constructing a basis of economics, finance, and social culture with freedom, independence, and progress.*

(26) <b>Ta</b> we	<b>đã</b> already	<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out	<b>hơn</b> more
<b>17</b> seventeen	<b>vạn</b> ten thousand	<b>quân lính</b> soldiers	<b>địch.</b> enemy

*We wiped out more than 17 ten thousand soldiers of the enemy.*

(27) <b>Mỗi</b> each	<b>năm,</b> year	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>đào tạo</b> train
<b>được</b> be able to	<b>bao nhiêu</b> how many	<b>cán bộ</b> cadre	<b>quân sự,</b> military
<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>ta</b> we	<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out	<b>hết</b> finish
<b>bấy nhiêu.</b> so much			

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

*Each year, how many cadres' enemy in the military was wiped out by us?*

(28)	<b>Ta</b> we	<b>làm cho</b> make	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>hao tổn</b> waste
	<b>mỗi</b> each	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>1.000</b> 1,000	<b>triệu</b> million
	<b>đồng</b> money	<b>phrăng.</b> Franc		

*We made for the enemy wasted one thousand million francs in each day.*

(29)	<b>Mấy</b> a few	<b>năm</b> year	<b>trước,</b> before	<b>ta</b> we
	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>và</b> and
	<b>bọn</b> group	<b>phản động</b> reactionary	<b>Trung Quốc</b> China	<b>bao vây.</b> encircle
	<b>Cách mạng</b> revolution	<b>Trung Quốc</b> China	<b>thành công,</b> succeed	<b>tiếp</b> continue
	<b>đến</b> to	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of đánh)	<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>thắng</b> win
	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta</b> us	<b>ở</b> at	<b>biên giới,</b> frontier
	<b>đã</b> already	<b>làm cho</b> make	<b>ta</b> us	<b>ngày nay</b> nowadays
	<b>có</b> have	<b>một</b> one	<b>hậu phương</b> rear	<b>vô cùng</b> endless
	<b>rộng rãi,</b> commodious	<b>một</b> one	<b>hậu phương</b> rear	<b>bao gồm</b> include
	<b>tất cả</b> all	<b>nước</b> country	<b>bạn</b> friend	<b>ta.</b> our

*A few years ago, we were encircled by the French aggressors and the Chinese reactionary. The Chinese revolution succeeded and continued to win the victory at our frontier. Nowadays, they make us have a endless commodious rear and a rear which includes all countries which are our friends.*

(30)	<b>Được</b> have got	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>thành tích</b> achievement	<b>đó</b> that
	<b>là</b> be	<b>do</b> because of	<b>quân</b> army	<b>và</b> and
	<b>dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our	<b>chiến đấu</b> fight	<b>hy sinh.</b> sacrifice
	<b>Nhân dịp</b> occasion	<b>này,</b> this	<b>tôi</b> I	<b>thay mặt</b> on behalf of
	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>và</b> and	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>tỏ</b> make clear

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>lòng</b> heart	<b>biết ơn</b> thankful	<b>và</b> and	<b>tưởng nhớ</b> think longingly of
<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>thương binh</b> war wounded	<b>và</b> and	<b>gia đình</b> family

**liệt sĩ.**

militant having laid down his life for the revolution (for the country)

*We have got many achievements because our army and people sacrificed to fight. On this occasion, on behalf of the Government and fellows, I sincerely thank and think to all brothers who were war wounded and the families of the militants who sacrificed for our homeland.*

(31) <b>Giặc</b> aggressor	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>nguy ngập,</b> very critical	<b>chúng</b> they
<b>quỳ</b> kneel	<b>lạy</b> prostrate	<b>nhờ</b> ask	<b>Mỹ</b> America
<b>giúp.</b> help			

*The French aggressors are very critical. They kneel down to ask some help from the United States of America.*

(32) <b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>giỏi,</b> good	<b>sao</b> why	<b>mà</b> that
<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>đuổi</b> expel	<b>ra</b> go out	<b>khỏi</b> escape
<b>Trung Quốc?</b> China	<b>Sao</b> why	<b>đang</b> be in the process of	<b>thất bại</b> lose
<b>ở</b> at	<b>Triều Tiên ?</b> North Korea	<b>Vả lại,</b> moreover	<b>một</b> one
<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>đã</b> already	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>chặt chẽ,</b> close
<b>kiên quyết</b> resolute	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>để</b> for	<b>tranh</b> fight for
<b>lại</b> again	<b>tự do</b> freedom	<b>độc lập</b> independence	<b>như</b> same
<b>dân tộc</b> nation	<b>ta,</b> our	<b>thì</b> then	<b>dù</b> however
<b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>giúp</b> help	<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>Pháp</b> French
<b>nhieu</b> many	<b>đến</b> to	<b>mấy,</b> a few	<b>ta</b> we
<b>cũng</b> also	<b>đánh,</b> fight	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>thắng.</b> win

*The United States of America is excellent. But why they were expelled from China? Why they are losing at the North Korea? Moreover, the nations that have unity and be resolute their resistance to fight for their freedom and*

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

*independence which were the same with us. Though the United States of America helps the French aggressors, we still fight and win the victory.*

\*

\* \*

- (33) **Vừa rồi,** **Hội đồng** **hoà bình** **thế giới**  
 recent committee peace world  
**có** **quyết nghị** **mấy** **điều:**  
 have resolution a few thing  
*Recently, the committee of the peace world has some resolutions as follow:*
- (34) - **Các** **dân tộc** **châu Á** **có**  
 (pluralizer) nation Asia have  
**quyền** **tự quyết,** **các** **nước ngoài**  
 right exercise the right to (pluralizer) foreign country  
 self-determination  
**không** **được** **can thiệp.**  
 no be able to intervene  
*- All nations in Asia have their own rights. All countries are not capable to intervene.*
- (35) - **Hoà bình** **ở** **Việt Nam.** **Quân đội**  
 peace at Vietnam army  
**Pháp** **phải** **rút** **khỏi**  
 French must draw set free  
**Việt Nam.**  
 Vietnam  
*- About the peace at Vietnam, the French army must set free for Vietnam.*
- (36) **Lâu nay,** **nhân dân** **Pháp** **và**  
 for quite a long people French and  
 time now  
**các** **đoàn thể** **dân chủ** **Pháp**  
 (pluralizer) organization democratic French  
**cũng** **đang** **đấu tranh** **đòi**  
 also be in the process of fight ask  
**thực hiện** **những** **điều** **đó.**  
 realize (pluralizer) thing that  
*For a long time until now, the French and the organization of the French Democratic have been fighting to ask the realization from those things.*
- (37) **Chúng ta** **hoan nghênh** **chủ trương** **ấy.**  
 we welcome policy that  
*We welcome that policies.*

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

(38)	<b>Chính</b> Main	<b>vì</b> because	<b>để</b> for	<b>thực hiện</b> realize
	<b>chủ trương</b> policy	<b>ấy</b> that	<b>mà</b> that	<b>ta</b> we
	<b>càng</b> more	<b>kiên quyết</b> resolute	<b>kháng chiến.</b> resistance	<b>Kháng chiến</b> resistance
	<b>đến</b> to	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>hoàn toàn,</b> complete	<b>làm cho</b> make
	<b>quân đội</b> army	<b>thực dân</b> colonial	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>không</b> not
	<b>rút lui</b> withdraw	<b>thì</b> then	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)
	<b>tiêu diệt.</b> wipe out	<b>Lúc</b> time	<b>đó,</b> that	<b>nước</b> country
	<b>nào</b> which	<b>muốn</b> want	<b>can thiệp</b> intervene	<b>cũng</b> also
	<b>không dám</b> not to	<b>can thiệp.</b> intervene	<b>Lúc</b> time	<b>đó,</b> that
	<b>nước</b> country	<b>ta</b> we	<b>sẽ</b> will	<b>thống nhất,</b> unify
	<b>độc lập</b> independent	<b>thật sự,</b> real	<b>và</b> and	<b>hoà bình</b> peace
	<b>sẽ</b> will	<b>thực hiện</b> realize	<b>thật sự.</b> real	

*Because of the realization of those policy, we are more resolute in the resistance. The victory of the resistance made for the French colonial armies could not withdraw because they were wiped out. At that time, whatever countries wanted to intervene but could not intervene. Therefore, our country will unify, have independence and peace.*

(39)	<b>Nhưng</b> but	<b>quân</b> army	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân</b> people
	<b>ta</b> our	<b>phải</b> must	<b>luôn luôn</b> always	<b>ghi nhớ</b> always bear in mind
	<b>rằng:</b> that	<b>lũ</b> group (pej.)	<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>cướp</b> rob
	<b>nước,</b> country	<b>chết</b> die	<b>thì</b> then	<b>chết,</b> die
	<b>nét</b> the characteristic	<b>không</b> not	<b>chừa.</b> leave	<b>Càng</b> more
	<b>gần</b> nearly	<b>thất bại</b> lose	<b>thì</b> that	<b>chúng</b> they
	<b>càng</b> more	<b>hung ác.</b> cruel	<b>Do</b> because of	<b>đó,</b> that

Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>càng</b> more	<b>gần</b> nearly	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>thì</b> then
<b>ta</b> we	<b>càng</b> more	<b>gặp</b> meet	<b>nhều</b> many
<b>khó khăn.</b> difficult	<b>Quân</b> army	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân</b> people
<b>ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>luôn luôn</b> always	<b>ghi nhớ:</b> keep in mind
<b>Kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>nhất định</b> certainly	<b>thắng lợi,</b> victory	<b>nhưng</b> but
<b>phải</b> must	<b>trường kỳ</b> long	<b>và</b> and	<b>gian khổ.</b> hardship

*But our army and fellows must always bear that even a gang of aggressors who plunders our country and we have to die but our merit is still. They are more cruel when they nearly lose. Because we nearly win a victory, we have to meet more difficulties. Our army and fellows must realize that the resistance is certain to win a victory but we must to fight in protracted time and meet more hardships.*

(40) <b>Trong</b> in	<b>mấy</b> a few	<b>năm</b> year	<b>qua,</b> pass
<b>quân</b> army	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our
<b>chịu</b> endure	<b>đựng</b> hold	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>gian khổ,</b> hardship
<b>đã</b> already	<b>vượt</b> overcome	<b>qua</b> pass	<b>nhều</b> many
<b>khó khăn,</b> difficult	<b>đã</b> already	<b>thu</b> get back	<b>được</b> be able to
<b>nhều</b> many	<b>thành tích.</b> achievement	<b>Quân</b> army	<b>và</b> and
<b>dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our	<b>thật</b> true	<b>xứng đáng</b> worthy
<b>với</b> with	<b>tổ tiên</b> ancestors	<b>ta,</b> our	<b>với</b> with
<b>Trần Hưng Đạo,</b>	<b>Lê Lợi,</b>	<b>Nguyễn Quang Trung.</b>	

*Tran Hung Dao Le Loi Nguyen Quang Trung*  
*In a few years ago, our army and fellows endured in many defficulties. You overcame many difficulties and got back many achievements. Our army and fellows are worthy like our ancestors as Tran Hung Dao, Le Loi and Nguyen Quang Trung.*

(41) <b>Để</b> for	<b>đi</b> go	<b>đến</b> to	<b>hoàn toàn</b> complete
-----------------------	-----------------	------------------	------------------------------

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

<b>thắng lợi,</b> victory	<b>từ</b> from	<b>nay</b> at present	<b>chúng ta</b> we
<b>phải</b> must	<b>làm</b> do	<b>gì ?</b> what	

*To reach to the victory, what do we have to do?*

(42) <b>Chúng ta</b> we	<b>phải</b> must	<b>tiếp tục</b> continue	<b>và</b> and
<b>tăng cường</b> strengthen	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>công việc</b> work	<b>chúng ta</b> we
<b>đang</b> (be in the process of)	<b>làm.</b> do	<b>Tức là:</b> mean	

*We must continue and strengthen in our works that we are doing now. These mean:*

(43) - <b>Toàn dân</b> all the people	<b>đã</b> already	<b>đoàn kết,</b> unite	<b>phải</b> must
<b>đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>chặt chẽ</b> close	<b>hơn nữa.</b> moreover	<b>Đoàn kết</b> unite
<b>giữa</b> between	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>ta.</b> our	<b>Đoàn kết</b> unite
<b>với</b> with	<b>anh em</b> brothers	<b>Miên,</b> Cambodia	<b>Lào.</b> Laos
<b>Đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>với</b> with	<b>bầu bạn</b> friends	<b>Trung Quốc,</b> China
<b>Liên Xô</b> The Union of Soviet	<b>và</b> and	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nước</b> country
<b>dân chủ</b> democratic	<b>mới.</b> new		

*- All the fellows who had unity must to have more unity. You must to unite with our people, our brother countries as Laos and Cambodia, and our friends as the People's Republic of China, the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic and all new democratic countries.*

(44) - <b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>Vệ quốc quân,</b> Vietnamese National Army	<b>bộ đội</b> army
<b>địa phương,</b> local	<b>dân quân</b> militia	<b>du kích</b> guerilla	<b>phải</b> must
<b>thi đua</b> emulate	<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>lập công,</b> achieve a feat	<b>thi đua</b> emulate
<b>giúp đỡ</b> help	<b>đồng bào.</b> fellow-countryman		

*- All fighters in the Vietnamese National Army, the Local Army, the Guerilla militia must compete with aggressors to acheive a feat, and to help our fellows.*

Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

- (45) - **Đồng bào**                      **sĩ,**                      **nông,**                      **công,**  
fellow-countryman    scholar                      farmer                      worker  
**thương**                      **phải**                      **thi đua**                      **tăng gia sản xuất.**  
traders                      must                      emulate                      increase production  
- *Our fellows, scholars, farmers, workers, and traders must compete to increasing products.*

- (46) - **Cán bộ**                      **chính quyền**                      **và**                      **đoàn thể**  
cadre                      administration                      and                      organization  
**phải**                      **thi đua**                      **thực hành**                      **cần kiệm**  
must                      emulate                      practise                      industrious and thrifty  
**liêm chính,**                      **thi hành**                      **đúng**                      **chính sách**  
honest and                      implement                      right                      policy  
righteous  
**của**  
of  
**đi**  
go  
**Chính phủ**                      **và**                      **Đoàn thể,**  
government                      and                      organization  
**đúng**                      **đường lối**                      **quần chúng.**  
right                      way                      the masses  
- *All cadres and civil servants must compete to practice in industrious, thrift, honesty and righteousness and to implement the policies of the Government and organization to go in the right way.*

- (47) **Chúng ta**                      **phải**                      **vượt**                      **mọi**  
we                      must                      pass                      every  
**khó khăn,**                      **để**                      **phá tan**                      **mu**  
difficult                      for                      break                      trick  
**địch**                      **“dùng**                      **người**                      **Việt**  
enemy                      use                      people                      Vietnamese  
**đánh**                      **người**                      **Việt,**                      **lấy**  
fight                      people                      Vietnamese                      take  
**chiến tranh**                      **nuôi**                      **chiến tranh”.**  
war                      keep                      war  
*We must pass every difficulties to break a trick of enemy which is “Use the Vietnamese fight with the Vietnamese and take a war to keep a war”.*

- (48) **Chúng ta**                      **hoan hô**                      **phong trào**                      **đấu tranh**  
we                      cheer                      movement                      fight  
**của**                      **đồng bào**                      **vùng**                      **tạm**  
of                      fellow-countryman                      area                      temporary  
**bị**                      **chiếm**                      **chống**                      **địch**  
(passive/-ed)                      occupy                      anti                      enemy  
**bắt lính.**  
circumscribe by force  
*We cheer the movements of our fellows which fight and against the enemies in the temporary occupied area.*

## Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

- (49) **Chúng ta**                      **thiết tha**                      **kêu gọi**                      **ngụy binh**  
we                                      show eagerness                      appeal                                      puppet troops  
**lầm đường**                      **quay**                                      **về**                                      **với**  
take the wrong way                      turn                                      return                                      with  
**Tổ quốc.**  
fatherland  
*We show an eagerness to appeal the puppets troops that took the wrong way to return to our homeland.*
- (50) **Chúng ta**                      **hoan nghênh**                      **binh sĩ**                      **Pháp**  
we                                      welcome                                      soldiers                                      French  
**đấu tranh**                      **đòi**                                      **về**                                      **nước.**  
fight                                      ask for                                      return                                      country  
*We welcome the French soidiers to go back to your country.*
- (51) **Chúng ta**                      **quyết**                                      **vượt**                                      **mọi**  
we                                      determine                                      pass                                      every  
**khó khăn**                      **để**                                      **thực hiện**                      **khẩu hiệu:**  
difficulty                                      for                                      realize                                      slogan  
**“Tất cả**                      **cho**                                      **tiền tuyến,**                      **tất cả**  
**all**                                      for                                      front line                      **all**  
**chiến thắng”.**  
win victory over  
*We are determined to pass all difficulties and realize to follow the motto “Do all for the front line, win all over the victory”.*
- (52) **Chúng ta**                      **nhất định**                      **thắng.**                      **Vì**  
we                                      certainly                                      win                                      because  
**thực dân**                      **Pháp**                                      **và**                                      **bọn**  
colonize                                      French                                      and                                      group  
**can thiệp**                      **Mỹ**                                      **là**                                      **lũ**  
intervene                                      American                                      be                                      group  
**giặc**                                      **cướp**                                      **nước,**                      **bù nhìn**  
aggressor                                      rob                                      country                      puppet  
**là**                                      **lũ**                                      **giặc**                      **bán**  
be                                      group                                      aggressor                      sell  
**nước,**                      **mà**                                      **ta**                      **kháng chiến**  
country                                      but                                      we                      resistance  
**là**                                      **để**                                      **giữ gìn**                      **Tổ quốc**  
be                                      for                                      preserve                      fatherland  
**ta.**  
our  
*We are certain to win because the French colonialists and the American intervenists are the agressors who plunder our country. The puppet is a group of aggressor who sold our country but we resist to preserve our homeland.*

Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

- (53) **Chúng ta** **nhất định** **thắng.** **Vì**  
 we determine win because  
**bộ đội** **ta** **anh dũng,** **nhân dân**  
 army our of great fortitude people  
**ta** **đoàn kết,** **cán bộ** **ta**  
 our unite cadre our  
**tận tụy,** **Chính phủ** **ta** **sáng suốt**  
 show dedication government our clear-sighted  
**và** **kiên quyết.**  
 and resolute  
*We are determined to win a victory because our armies are great fortitude, our fellows have unity, our cadres show dedications, our government are clear-sighted and resolute.*
- (54) **Chúng ta** **nhất định** **thắng.** **Vì**  
 we determine win because  
**phe** **ta** **(phe** **hoà bình**  
 side our side peace  
**và** **dân chủ** **thế giới)**  **mạnh**  
 and democratic world strong  
**hơn** **phe** **đế quốc.**  
 more side empire  
*We are determined to win a victory because our side (the side of peace and democracy) is stronger than the empire side.*
- (55) **Trường kỳ** **kháng chiến** **nhất định** **thắng lợi !**  
 long resistance certainly victory  
*The protracted war of resistance is certain to win a victory.*
- (56) **Việt Nam** **độc lập** **và** **thống nhất**  
 Vietnam independent and unite  
**muôn năm !**  
 long live  
*Long live independence and unity of Vietnam.*
- (57) **Chào** **thân ái** **và** **quyết thắng**  
 greet beloved and be resolved to win  
*Warm regards and resolute to win a victory.*
- (58) **Ngày** **19** **tháng 12** **năm** **1951**  
 date 19 December year 1951  
*On December 19, 1951*
- (59) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**

Text 16 Appeal on the occasion of the fifth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (Cont.)

- |      |  |                    |           |            |
|------|--|--------------------|-----------|------------|
| (60) | <b>Báo</b>   | <b>Nhân dân,</b>   | <b>số</b> | <b>37,</b> |
|      | newspaper  | Nhan dan           | number    | 37         |
|      | <b>ngày</b>  | <b>19-12-1951.</b> |           |            |
|      | date   | 19-12-1951         |           |            |
|      | <i>Nhan dan(People) newspaper, no. 37, on December 19, 1951.</i> |                    |           |            |



## TEXT 17

<b>LỜI</b> word	<b>KÊU GỌI</b> appeal	<b>NHÂN DỊP</b> occasion	<b>KỶ NIỆM</b> anniversary	<b>6</b> six	<b>NĂM</b> year
	<b>TOÀN QUỐC</b> the whole country		<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN</b> <sup>17</sup> resistance		

*APPEAL ON THE OCCASION OF THE SIXTH ANNIVERSARY OF  
THE APPEAL FOR NATIONAL RESISTANCE*

- (1) **Cùng**  
to  
*To all fellow-countrymen,*
- toàn thể**  
whole
- đồng bào,**  
fellow-countryman
- (2) **Toàn thể**  
whole
- dân quân**  
militia  
*All the Vietnamese National Army, the Local Army, the Militia Guerrilla,*
- Vệ quốc quân,**  
Vietnamese  
National Army
- du kích,**  
guerrilla
- bộ đội**  
army
- địa phương,**  
local
- (3) **Toàn thể**  
whole  
*All cadres,*
- cán bộ,**  
cadre
- (4) **Hôm nay,**  
today
- thứ 7**  
seventh
- toàn quốc.**  
the whole country
- thấy**  
see
- càng ngày càng**  
more...and more....
- yếu.**  
weak
- cuối**  
end
- nay,**  
at present
- chúng ta**  
we
- của**  
of
- Mọi**  
every
- rõ**  
clear
- mạnh,**  
strong
- Từ**  
from
- năm**  
year
- trên**  
over
- bước sang**  
start
- của**  
(classifier of  
kháng chiến)
- người**  
people
- rằng**  
that
- địch**  
enemy
- chiến dịch**  
campaign
- 1950**  
1950
- chiến trường**  
battlefield
- năm**  
year
- kháng chiến**  
resist
- đều**  
all
- ta**  
we
- càng ngày càng**  
more and more
- Biên giới**  
frontier
- đến**  
to
- Bắc Bộ,**  
northern part

<sup>17</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). *Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 6 (1950-1952) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 6 (1950-1952))*. Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.586-588.

## Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

<b>ta</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>giành</b>	<b>và</b>
we	already	win	and
<b>giữ</b>	<b>chủ động,</b>	<b>còn</b>	<b>địch</b>
preserve	principal	but	enemy
<b>thì</b>	<b>bị động.</b>	<b>Đầu</b>	<b>năm</b>
then	on the defensive	beginning	year
<b>nay,</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>thắng</b>	<b>to</b>
this	we	win a victory	great
<b>trong</b>	<b>chiến dịch</b>	<b>Hoà Bình.</b>	<b>Cuối</b>
in	campaign	peace	end
<b>năm</b>	<b>nay,</b>	<b>ta</b>	<b>thắng</b>
year	this	we	win a victory
<b>to</b>	<b>trong</b>	<b>chiến dịch</b>	<b>Tây Bắc.</b>
great	in	campaign	North-west

*Today is the seventh year of the National resistance. Everybody can see that we are stronger but the enemies are weaker. Since the frontier campaign in the end of 1950 until now, we have won the victory and preserved our principal all of the battlefields in the North but the enemies were in the defensive. The beginning of this year, we won a great victory in Hoa Binh campaign. In the end of this year, we win a great victory in the Northwest campaign.*

(5) <b>Ta</b>	<b>thắng</b>	<b>to,</b>	<b>địch</b>
we	win a victory	great	enemy
<b>thua</b>	<b>to,</b>	<b>đã</b>	<b>làm cho</b>
lose	great	already	make
<b>dư luận</b>	<b>Pháp</b>	<b>và</b>	<b>thế giới</b>
public opinion	French	and	world
<b>xôn xao.</b>	<b>Bọn</b>	<b>trùm</b>	<b>thực dân</b>
be all in a stir	group (pej.)	chieftain	colonialist
<b>phản động</b>	<b>Pháp</b>	<b>cũng</b>	<b>phải</b>
reactionary	French	also	must
<b>nhận</b>	<b>rằng</b>	<b>vì</b>	<b>chiến tranh</b>
accept	that	because	war
<b>xâm lược</b>	<b>Việt Nam</b>	<b>mà</b>	<b>nước</b>
aggression	Vietnam	that	country
<b>Pháp</b>	<b>gặp</b>	<b>nhiều</b>	<b>khó khăn,</b>
France	meet	many	difficult

**lúng túng.**

embarrassed the thing that we don't know that what we have to do

*We won the great victory but the enemies lost. We do our public opinion to the French and the world are all in a stir. A chieftain of the French reactionaru colonialists also have to accept that because of the aggression war in Vietnam that France have met and embarrassesd in many difficulties.*

Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

(6)	<b>Địch</b> enemy	<b>thua</b> lose	<b>to</b> great	<b>vì</b> because
	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>nguyên nhân.</b> reason	<b>Không</b> no	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)
	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our
	<b>kiên quyết</b> resolute	<b>chống</b> oppose	<b>lại,</b> again	<b>mà</b> that
	<b>còn</b> and	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Pháp</b> French
	<b>và</b> and	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>phản đối;</b> oppose
	<b>tinh thần</b> mind	<b>quân đội</b> army	<b>chúng</b> them	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more
	<b>sút kém;</b> deteriorate	<b>mâu thuẫn</b> contradiction	<b>nội bộ</b> internal	<b>của</b> of
	<b>phe</b> affair	<b>chúng,</b> their	<b>phe</b> affair	<b>đế quốc,</b> imperialist
	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more	<b>sâu sắc.</b> profound		

*The enemies lose greatly because of many reasons. They are opposed by us. And they are opposed again by the French and the people all over the world. Therefore their soldier mind deteriorate more and the internal contradiction of their affair and the imperialist are more profound.*

(7)	<b>Ta</b> we	<b>thắng</b> win a victory	<b>to</b> great	<b>vì</b> because
	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>chặt chẽ,</b> close
	<b>vì</b> because	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter	<b>ta</b> our	<b>chiến đấu</b> fight
	<b>dũng cảm,</b> courageous	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>và</b> and	<b>Đảng</b> party
	<b>ta</b> our	<b>lãnh đạo</b> guide	<b>đúng.</b> correct	<b>Lại</b> also
	<b>và</b> and	<b>anh em</b> brother	<b>ta</b> our	<b>là</b> be
	<b>Liên Xô,</b> the Union of Soviet	<b>Trung Quốc</b> China	<b>và</b> and	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
	<b>nước</b> country	<b>dân</b> people	<b>khác</b> other	<b>ngày càng</b> more and more
	<b>giàu mạnh,</b> wealth and strong	<b>bạn</b> friend	<b>ta</b> our	<b>là</b> be
	<b>phe</b> side	<b>hoà bình</b> peace	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân chủ</b> democracy

Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

**khắp**                      **thế giới**                      **ngày càng**                      **rộng lớn.**  
all over                      world                      more and more                      wide

*We won the great victory because our people have unity and our fighters fought courageously. Our Government and party guided into the correct way. Our brothers which are the Union Soviet of Socialist Republic, the People's Republic of China, and all the people in other countries are stronger and more wealthy. Our peace and democratic side all over the world is wider.*

- (8) **Ta**                      **thắng lợi,**                      **nhưng**                      **ta**  
we                      victory                      but                      we  
**quyết**                      **không**                      **vì**                      **thắng**  
determine                      no                      because                      win a victory  
**mà**                      **chủ quan,**                      **khinh**                      **địch.**  
that                      subjective feeling                      despise                      enemy  
**Trái lại,**                      **chúng ta**                      **phải**                      **luôn luôn**  
on the contrary                      we                      must                      always  
**cố gắng,**                      **phát triển**                      **ưu điểm**                      **và**  
effort                      develop                      good point                      and  
**sửa chữa**                      **khuyết điểm.**  
correct                      mistake

*Even we win the victory but we are determined 'no' because we win a victory but that is subjective feeling to despise enemies. On the contrary, we must effort, develop our good points, and correct our mistakes.*

- (9) **Phong trào**                      **thi đua**                      **ái quốc,**                      **tăng gia sản xuất,**  
movement                      emulation                      patriotic                      increase production  
**chiến tranh**                      **du kích,**                      **các**                      **lớp**  
warfare                      guerrilla                      (pluralizer)                      class  
**chỉnh huấn**                      **cán bộ,**                      **chỉnh huấn**                      **quân đội**  
reeducate                      cadre                      reeducate                      army  
**đã**                      **có**                      **nhiều**                      **kết quả**  
already                      have                      many                      result  
**tốt.**                      **Chúng ta**                      **phải**                      **tiếp tục**  
good                      we                      must                      continue  
**cố gắng**                      **phát triển**                      **những**                      **kết quả**  
effort                      develop                      (pluralizer)                      result  
**ấy.**  
that

*The movement of patriotic emulation, increasing products, the Guerrilla warfare, reeducating cadre classes and reeducating army had many good results. We must continue to effort to develop those results.*

- (10) **Một**                      **khuyết điểm**                      **của**                      **chúng ta**  
one                      mistake                      of                      us

Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

<b>là</b> be	<b>chưa</b> not yet	<b>thi hành</b> execute	<b>đúng</b> correct
<b>chính sách</b> policy	<b>ruộng đất</b> cultivated land	<b>mà</b> that	<b>Chính phủ</b> government
<b>đã</b> already	<b>ban hành</b> promulgate	<b>từ lâu.</b> long since	<b>Gần</b> nearly
<b>90</b> ninety	<b>phần trăm</b> percent	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>là</b> be
<b>nông dân.</b> farmer	<b>Trong</b> in	<b>hàng ngũ</b> ranks of the army	<b>Vệ quốc quân,</b> Vietnamese National Army
<b>bộ đội</b> army	<b>địa phương</b> local	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân quân</b> militia
<b>du kích</b> guerrilla	<b>ta</b> our	<b>trên</b> over	<b>90</b> ninety
<b>phần trăm</b> percent	<b>là</b> be	<b>nông dân.</b> farmer	<b>Đóng thuế,</b> pay duty
<b>đi</b> go	<b>dân công,</b> conscripted labourer	<b>phần lớn</b> the greatest part	<b>cũng</b> also
<b>là</b> be	<b>nông dân.</b> farmer	<b>Đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>nông dân</b> farmer
<b>đóng góp</b> contribute	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>nhất</b> most	<b>cho</b> for
<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance	<b>hy sinh</b> sacrifice	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>nhất</b> most
<b>cho</b> for	<b>Tổ quốc.</b> fatherland	<b>Thế</b> so	<b>mà</b> that
<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>nông dân</b> farmer	<b>lại</b> again	<b>là</b> be
<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>người</b> people	<b>nghèo khổ</b> poor and wretched	<b>nhất,</b> most
<b>vì</b> because	<b>họ</b> they	<b>thiếu</b> lack	<b>đất</b> land
<b>ruộng.</b> field	<b>Giảm tô,</b> reduce the rent	<b>giảm</b> decrease	<b>tức</b> loan interest
<b>là</b> be	<b>một</b> one	<b>quyền lợi</b> interest	<b>chính đáng</b> legitimate
<b>của</b> of	<b>nông dân</b> farmer	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>chưa</b> not yet
<b>thực hiện</b> realize	<b>được</b> be able to	<b>đến nơi đến chốn.</b> thoroughly	<b>Đó</b> that
<b>là</b> be	<b>một</b> one	<b>tình trạng</b> situation	<b>rất</b> very

## Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

<b>không</b> not	<b>công bằng.</b> fair	<b>Vì vậy,</b> therefore	<b>sang năm,</b> next year
<b>Chính phủ,</b> government	<b>Đảng</b> party	<b>và</b> and	<b>Mặt trận</b> battlefront
<b>sẽ</b> will	<b>kiên quyết</b> resolute	<b>phát động</b> mobilize	<b>nông dân</b> farmer
<b>thực hiện</b> realize	<b>triệt để</b> thorough	<b>chính sách</b> policy	<b>giảm tô,</b> reduce the rent
<b>giảm</b> decrease	<b>tức</b> loan interest	<b>để</b> for	<b>đảm bảo</b> guarantee
<b>quyền lợi</b> interest	<b>chính đáng</b> legitimate	<b>của</b> of	<b>nông dân.</b> farmer
<b>Về</b> as for	<b>phần</b> part	<b>nông dân</b> farmer	<b>thì</b> then
<b>phải</b> must	<b>tự động,</b> act of one's own free will	<b>tự giác,</b> voluntary	<b>tổ chức</b> establish
<b>chặt chẽ,</b> close	<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic	<b>ủng hộ</b> support	<b>chính sách</b> policy
<b>ấy.</b> that	<b>Làm</b> do	<b>như thế</b> like that	<b>là</b> be
<b>để</b> for	<b>cải thiện</b> improve	<b>đời sống</b> life	<b>cho</b> for
<b>nông dân,</b> farmer	<b>tăng cường</b> strengthen	<b>lực lượng</b> power	<b>của</b> of
<b>kháng chiến,</b> resist	<b>củng cố</b> consolidate	<b>và</b> and	<b>phát triển</b> develop
<b>khối</b> mass	<b>đại đoàn kết</b> great unity	<b>toàn dân.</b> all the people	<b>Vậy</b> so
<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>chủ</b> owner	<b>ruộng</b> field	<b>cũng</b> also
<b>nên</b> should	<b>vì</b> because	<b>Tổ quốc,</b> fatherland	<b>vì</b> because
<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>mà</b> that	<b>tự động,</b> act of one's own free will	<b>tự giác,</b> voluntary
<b>vui lòng</b> be pleased	<b>triệt để</b> thorough	<b>giảm tô,</b> reduce the rent	<b>giảm</b> decrease
<b>tức.</b> loan interest			

*One of our mistake has not executed in the land reform yet but our Government has promulgated for a long time. Nearly ninety percents of our fellows are peasants. In the ranking of the Vietnamese National Army, the Local Army, and the Guerrilla militia over ninety percents are also peasants. The greatest part to pay duty and go to conscripted labourer are also peasants. Our peasants*

Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

*contributed for our resistance and sacrificed for our homeland. But our peasants are the most people who are very poor and wretched because they have lacked their cultivate land. To reduce the rent and decrease loan interests which are their legitimate interests, our peasant also have not realized thoroughly. Those are very unfair things. Therefore, next year, our Government, Party and the battlefield will be resolute to mobilize our peasants and realize thorough the policy to reduce the rent and decrease loan interests to guarantee the legitimate interests of our peasants. In the part of our peasants, you must be act of your own free will, be voluntary, be closely in establishments and be enthusiastically support that policy. To do those things can improve our peasants' life, increase the power of our resistace, consolidate and develop the great unity of our people. Thus, our fellows should to have their own fields because this is their homeland, this resistance is the act of their own free will, their voluntary. It should be pleased thorough reducing the rent and decreasing their loan interests.*

(11)	<b>Đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>nông thôn</b> countryside	<b>cùng</b> together	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman
	<b>toàn quốc</b> the whole country	<b>trước đây</b> formerly	<b>đã</b> already	<b>đoàn kết,</b> unite
	<b>nay</b> at present	<b>phải</b> must	<b>đoàn kết</b> unite	<b>hơn nữa,</b> moreover
	<b>trước</b> before	<b>đã</b> already	<b>hăng hái,</b> enthusiastic	<b>nay</b> at present
	<b>phải</b> must	<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic	<b>hơn nữa</b> moreover	<b>trong</b> in
	<b>công cuộc</b> great undertaking	<b>tham gia</b> take part in	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance	<b>thi đua</b> compete
	<b>sản xuất,</b> produce	<b>đóng góp</b> contribute	<b>cho</b> for	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance
	<b>mà</b> that	<b>đẩy mạnh</b> push up	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist
	<b>trường kỳ</b> long	<b>và</b> and	<b>gian khổ</b> hardship	<b>đến</b> to
	<b>hoàn toàn</b> completely	<b>thắng lợi,</b> victory	<b>kiến quốc</b> found a state	<b>đến</b> to
	<b>hoàn toàn</b> completely	<b>thành công.</b> succeed		

*Formerly, our fellows in the countryside and all over the country had unity but at present we must be more enthusiastic in the great undertaking to take part in the resistance, to compete in production, to contribute for the resistance that push up the protracted resistance and all hardship to win the victory. and establish our nation to the completely success.*

## Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

- (12) **Nhân dịp**                      **này,**                      **tôi**                      **thay mặt**  
occasion                      this                      I                      on behalf of  
**Chính phủ**                      **kính cẩn**                      **ngiêng mình**                      **trước**  
government                      respectful                      bow one's head                      before  
**linh hồn**                      **các**                      **liệt sĩ**  
soul                      (pluralizer)                      militant having laid down his life for  
the revolution  
**đã**                      **hy sinh**                      **cho**                      **Tổ quốc,**  
already                      sacrifice                      for                      fatherland  
**thân ái**                      **an ủi**                      **các**                      **thương binh,**  
beloved                      console                      (pluralizer)                      wounded soldier  
**bệnh binh**                      **và**                      **gia đình**  
sick soldier                      and                      family  
**liệt sĩ.**  
militant having laid down his life for the revolution  
*On this occasion, on behalf of the government, I show respect to the militants who sacrificed for our homeland, and console to the wounded soldiers, the sicked soldiers, and the family of the militants who sacrificed to our homeland.*
- (13) **Khen ngợi**                      **đồng bào**                      **đã**                      **hăng hái**  
praise                      fellow-countryman                      already                      enthusiastic  
**tham gia**                      **kháng chiến,**                      **kiến quốc,**  
take part in                      resistance                      found a state  
*I praise all fellows who enthusiastically took part in the resistance and established our state.*
- (14) **Khen ngợi**                      **bộ đội**                      **đã**                      **dũng cảm**  
praise                      army                      already                      courage  
**thi đua**                      **diệt**                      **giặc**                      **lập công,**  
compete                      wipe out                      aggressor                      achieve a feat  
*I praise all armies which competed courageously to wipe out aggressors until achieved a feat.*
- (15) **Khen ngợi**                      **những**                      **anh chị em**                      **đã**  
praise                      (pluralizer)                      brothers                      already  
**hăng hái**                      **đi**                      **dân công**                      **phục vụ**  
enthusiastic                      go                      conscripted labourer                      serve  
**kháng chiến,**  
resistance  
*I praise all brothers who were enthusiastic to be conscripted labourer to serve our resistance.*
- (16) **Khen ngợi**                      **những**                      **anh hùng**                      **và**  
praise                      (pluralizer)                      hero                      and

Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

**chiến sĩ** fighter  
**thi đua** emulation  
**ái quốc,** patriotic  
*I praise all heroes and fighters who follow the patriotic emulation.*

(17) **Khen ngợi** praise  
**tận tụy** devoted  
**Tổ quốc.** fatherland  
**cán bộ** cadre  
**phục vụ** serve  
**nam nữ** man and woman  
**nhân dân,** people  
**đã** already  
**phụng sự** serve  
*I praise both of men and women cadres who were devoted to serve our fellows and homeland.*

(18) **Thân ái** beloved  
**mẹ** mother  
**phụ lão,** elderly people  
**và** and  
**hỏi thăm** inquire after  
**chiến sĩ,** fighter  
**các** (pluralizer)  
**nhì đồng.** small child  
**các** (pluralizer)  
**cháu** grandchild  
**bà** grandmother  
**cụ** great-grandparent  
**thanh niên** youth  
*I inquire after grandmothers and mothers of fighters, great-grandparents, youths, and grandchildren.*

(19) **Kháng chiến** resistance  
**này,** this  
**chiến sĩ,** fighter  
**cố gắng** strive  
**lấy** get  
**và** and  
**toàn quốc** the whole country  
**toàn thể** whole  
**toàn thể** whole  
**hơn nữa** more  
**thắng lợi** victory  
**to** great  
**năm** year  
**đồng bào,** fellow-countryman  
**cán bộ** cadre  
**để** for  
**nhiều** many  
**lớn** great  
**thứ 7** seventh  
**toàn thể** whole  
**hãy** let's  
**tranh** fight for  
**hơn nữa** more  
**hơn nữa.** more  
*The seventh year of the National resistance, all of you, all fighters, all cadres, let's you all strive more to fight until gain more victory and more greatness.*

(20) **Kháng chiến** resistance  
**nhất định** certainly  
**thắng lợi !** victory  
*Our resistance is certain to win a victory.*

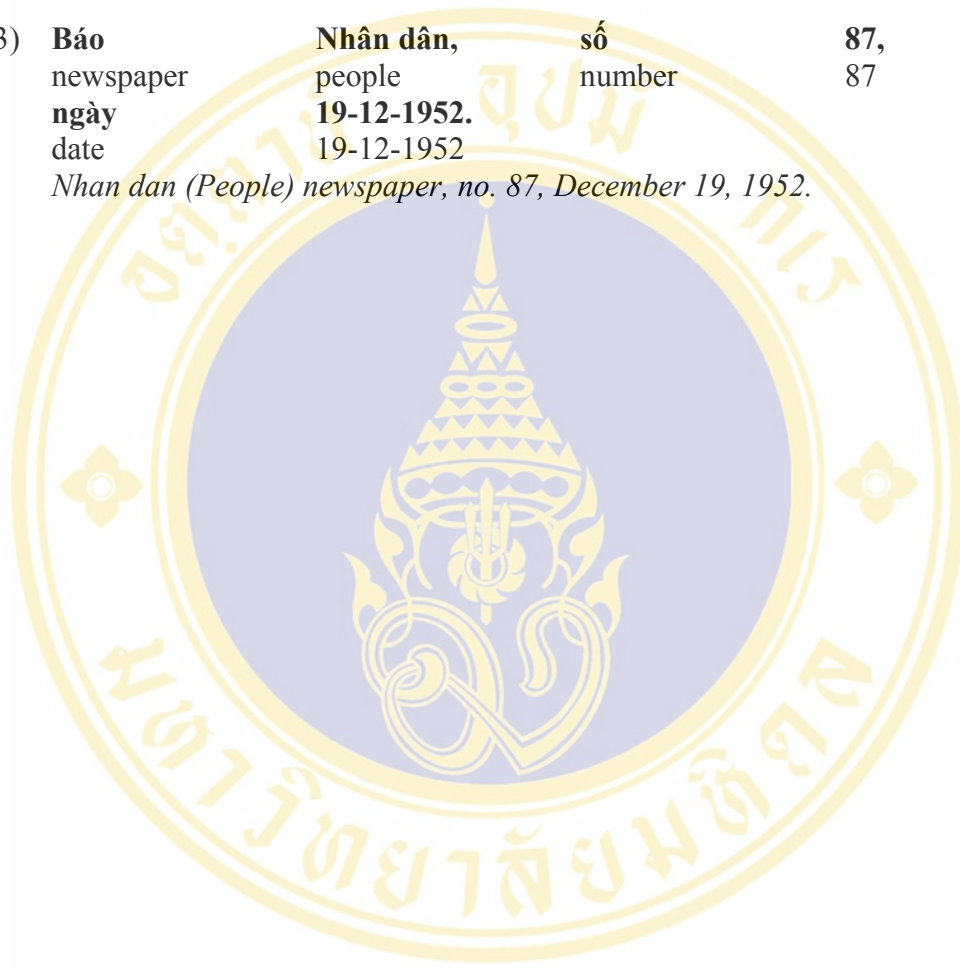
(21) **Việt Nam** Vietnam  
**độc lập** independent  
**thống nhất** unify  
**muôn năm !** longlive

Text 17 Appeal on the occasion of the sixth anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

*Long live independence and unify of Vietnam.*

(22) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**

(23) <b>Báo</b>	<b>Nhân dân,</b>	<b>số</b>	<b>87,</b>
newspaper	people	number	87
<b>ngày</b>	<b>19-12-1952.</b>		
date	19-12-1952		
<i>Nhan dan (People) newspaper, no. 87, December 19, 1952.</i>			



**TEXT 18**

<b>LỜI</b> word	<b>KÊU GỌI</b> appeal	<b>NHÂN DỊP</b> occasion	<b>KỶ NIỆM</b> anniversary
<b>7</b> seven	<b>NĂM</b> year	<b>TOÀN QUỐC</b> the whole country	<b>KHÁNG CHIẾN</b> <sup>18</sup> resistance

*APPEAL ON THE OCCASION OF THE SEVENTH ANNIVERSARY OF THE APPEAL FOR NATIONAL RESISTANCE*

(1)	<b>Bước</b> situation	<b>sang năm</b> next year	<b>thứ 8</b> eighth	<b>của</b> of
	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>toàn quốc,</b> the whole country	<b>tôi</b> I
	<b>rất</b> very	<b>vui mừng</b> happy	<b>báo cáo</b> report	<b>với</b> with
	<b>toàn thể</b> whole	<b>đồng bào</b> compatriot	<b>và</b> and	<b>chiến sĩ</b> fighter
	<b>một</b> one	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>chính trị</b> politics	<b>rất</b> very
	<b>to</b> great	<b>lớn</b> great	<b>của</b> of	<b>chúng ta:</b> us
	<b>Đầu</b> beginning	<b>tháng 12</b> December	<b>vừa</b> just	<b>qua,</b> pass
	<b>Quốc hội</b> national assembly	<b>nước</b> country	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam	<b>Dân chủ</b> democratic
	<b>Cộng hòa</b> republic	<b>đã</b> already	<b>nhất trí</b> unanimously	<b>nhật liệt</b> warmly
	<b>thông qua</b> pass	<b>Luật</b> law	<b>cải cách ruộng đất,</b> land reform	<b>để</b> for
	<b>thực hiện</b> realize	<b>người</b> people	<b>cày</b> plough	<b>có</b> have
	<b>ruộng.</b> field			

*The situation in next year which will be the eighth year of the National resistance, I am very glad to tell to all of you and fighters that we gain a great victory on politics. It was about on December, The National Assemble of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam has passed the law of land reform for our people have thier own fields.*

(2)	<b>Từ</b> from	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>thực dân</b> colonialist	<b>Pháp</b> French
-----	-------------------	--------------------	--------------------------------	-----------------------

<sup>18</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 7 (1952-1954) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 7 (1952-1954)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.191-193.

## Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

<b>bội ước</b> violate a pledge	<b>gây ra</b> provoke	<b>chiến tranh</b> war	<b>xâm lược</b> aggression
<b>nước</b> country	<b>ta</b> our	<b>và</b> and	<b>nhân dân</b> people
<b>ta</b> our	<b>kiên quyết</b> resolute	<b>đứng lên</b> stand up	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist
<b>để</b> for	<b>giữ gìn</b> preserve	<b>độc lập</b> independence	<b>của</b> of
<b>Tổ quốc,</b> fatherland	<b>thì</b> then	<b>tình hình</b> situation	<b>đã</b> already
<b>thay đổi</b> change	<b>nhiều:</b> many	<b>lúc</b> time	<b>đầu</b> beginning
<b>tình hình</b> situation	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>và</b> and	<b>tình hình</b> situation
<b>trong</b> in	<b>nước</b> country	<b>đều</b> all	<b>khó khăn</b> hardness
<b>cho</b> for	<b>ta.</b> us	<b>Nhưng</b> but	<b>tình hình</b> situation
<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>phát triển</b> develop	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>càng</b> more
<b>rất</b> very	<b>có lợi</b> to somebody's advantage	<b>cho</b> for	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)
<b>kháng chiến</b> resist	<b>của</b> of	<b>ta.</b> us	<b>Lực lượng</b> power
<b>hoà bình</b> peace	<b>dân chủ</b> democratic	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>do</b> caused by
<b>Liên Xô</b> Soviet Union	<b>đứng đầu</b> head	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>càng</b> more
<b>vững vàng</b> stable	<b>và</b> and	<b>phát triển,</b> develop	<b>đã</b> already
<b>mạnh</b> strong	<b>hơn</b> more	<b>nhiều</b> many	<b>lực lượng</b> power
<b>của</b> of	<b>phe</b> affair	<b>đế quốc</b> imperialist	<b>gây chiến.</b> unleash war

*From the day that the French colonialists violated the pledge and provoked the war of aggression, our country and fellows were resolute to go forward in the resistance to preserve the independence of our homeland. At present, the situation has changed many times in the beginning of the world situation and in our country were many difficulties. But the world situation which is more developing give advantages for our resistance. The power of peace from the world of democracy headed by the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics is more stable and developing. It was stronger than the side of the imperialist of unleash war.*

Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

(3)	<b>Ở</b> at <b>cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến) <b>nhân dân</b> people <b>thêm</b> increase <b>thu</b> get back <b>vẻ vang</b> glorious <b>quân sự,</b> military affairs <b>Chúng ta</b> we <b>địch</b> enemy <b>đã</b> already <b>thua thiệt</b> loss <b>qua,</b> pass <b>hơn</b> more <b>đã</b> already <b>bình sĩ.</b> soldier <b>ấy,</b> that <b>âm mưu</b> conspiracy <b>đánh</b> fight <b>mở rộng</b> expand <b>thì</b> then <b>cho</b> for <b>năm</b> year	<b>trong</b> in <b>kháng chiến</b> resist <b>ta</b> our <b>mạnh</b> strong <b>được</b> gain <b>về</b> in <b>chính trị,</b> political <b>đã</b> already <b>những</b> (pluralizer) <b>làm</b> do <b>đau đớn.</b> sorrowful <b>chúng ta</b> we <b>32</b> thirty-two <b>làm cho</b> cause <b>Để</b> for <b>địch</b> enemy <b>“dùng</b> use <b>người</b> people <b>ngụy quân;</b> puppet troops <b>khác nào</b> just like <b>đỡ</b> help <b>qua,</b> pass	<b>nước</b> country <b>anh dũng</b> heroic <b>ngày</b> day <b>và</b> and <b>nhiều</b> many <b>mọi</b> every <b>kinh tế,</b> economics <b>đánh</b> fight <b>đòn</b> blow <b>cho</b> for <b>7</b> seven <b>đã</b> already <b>vạn</b> ten thousand <b>địch</b> enemy <b>cứu vớt</b> save <b>ra sức</b> endeavour <b>người</b> people <b>Việt”,</b> Vietnamese <b>song</b> however <b>uống</b> drink <b>khát.</b> thirsty <b>địch</b> enemy	<b>thì</b> then <b>của</b> of <b>càng</b> more <b>đã</b> already <b>thắng lợi</b> victory <b>mặt:</b> side <b>văn hoá.</b> culture <b>cho</b> for <b>nặng nề,</b> difficult <b>định</b> enemy <b>năm</b> year <b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out <b>quân địch,</b> enemy <b>thiếu hụt</b> shortage <b>thất bại</b> defeat <b>thực hiện</b> realize <b>Việt</b> Vietnamese <b>gấp rút</b> very urgent <b>như thế</b> like that <b>thuốc độc</b> poison <b>7</b> seven <b>đã</b> already
-----	---	---	--	--

## Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

<b>hao tổn</b> ruinous	<b>3</b> three	<b>triệu</b> million	<b>triệu</b> million
<b>bạc</b> money	<b>Pháp.</b> French	<b>Vì vậy</b> therefore	<b>mà</b> that
<b>kinh tế</b> economics	<b>tài chính</b> financial	<b>của</b> of	<b>địch</b> enemy
<b>đã</b> already	<b>kiệt quệ,</b> exhausted	<b>chúng</b> they	<b>phải</b> must
<b>quỵ lụy,</b> fawn upon	<b>xin xỏ</b> beg for	<b>Mỹ,</b> America	<b>ngày càng</b> more.... more...
<b>phụ thuộc</b> dependence	<b>vào</b> into	<b>Mỹ</b> America	<b>thì</b> then
<b>nhân</b> cause	<b>đó</b> that	<b>mà</b> that	<b>nô dịch</b> enslave
<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>và</b> and	<b>trực tiếp</b> direct
<b>can thiệp</b> interfere	<b>vào</b> into	<b>chiến tranh</b> war	<b>Việt</b> - Vietnam
<b>Miền</b> - Cambodia	<b>Lào</b> Laos	<b>hòng</b> intend	<b>thay thế</b> replace
<b>địa vị</b> position	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Đông Dương.</b> Indochina

*In our country, our heroes of the resistance are stronger. We got back many glorious victories in all sides: military affairs, politics, economics, culture. We fought with the enemies to blow the difficulties, to make enemies lose their sorrowful. Seven years ago, we wiped out more than 32 thousand enemies, caused enemies to have a shortage in soldiers. For that defeat, the enemies endeavor to realize under the conspiracy "Use the Vietnamese fight with the Vietnamese" by urgently expand the puppet troops but using this is like drinking the poison to help thirsty. Seven years ago, the enemies were ruinous 3 millions Francs. Therefore the financials of enemies were exhausted that cause they have to fawn upon and beg from the United State of America. They depend on the United State of America more and more that means the United State of America enslaves the French people and interferes to the Vietnam-Cambodia-Laos war, and intends to replace French position in Indochina.*

(4) <b>Những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>sự thật</b> fact	<b>đó</b> that	<b>đã</b> already
<b>chứng tỏ</b> prove	<b>thế</b> so	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>ngày</b> day
<b>càng</b> more	<b>yếu,</b> weak	<b>thế</b> so	<b>ta</b> we
<b>ngày</b> day	<b>càng</b> more	<b>mạnh.</b> strong	

*Those facts prove the enemies are weaker meanwhile we are stronger.*

## Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

(5)	<b>Vì</b> because	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of kháng chiến)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist	<b>của</b> of
	<b>ta</b> us	<b>là</b> be	<b>chính nghĩa,</b> righteous	<b>cho nên</b> therefore
	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>và</b> and	<b>nhân dân</b> people
	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nước</b> country	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>Pháp</b> French
	<b>thống trị</b> rule	<b>cùng</b> together	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>yêu chuộng</b> love
	<b>hoà bình</b> peace	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>ủng hộ</b> support	<b>ta</b> our
	<b>và</b> and	<b>đấu tranh</b> fight	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>thêm</b> increase
	<b>mạnh</b> strong	<b>chống</b> anti-	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of chiến tranh)	<b>chiến tranh</b> war
	<b>xâm lược</b> aggression	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Việt Nam.</b> Vietnam	

*Because of our resistance is righteous. Therefore the French and the people all over the world who love peace, support us, and fight to resist anti-aggression war in Vietnam.*

(6)	<b>Nhân dịp</b> occasion	<b>này,</b> this	<b>tôi</b> I	<b>thay mặt</b> on behalf of
	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam	<b>gửi</b> send	<b>lời</b> word
	<b>thân ái</b> beloved	<b>chào</b> greet	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Pháp</b> French
	<b>và</b> and	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>nước</b> country
	<b>bị</b> (passive/-ed)	<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>thống trị.</b> rule	<b>Tôi</b> I
	<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>giai cấp</b> class	<b>công nhân</b> worker	<b>thế giới</b> world
	<b>đã</b> already	<b>lấy</b> take	<b>ngày</b> day	<b>hôm nay</b> today
	<b>là</b> be	<b>“Ngày</b> day	<b>quốc tế</b> international	<b>tích cực</b> positive
	<b>đoàn kết</b> unity	<b>với</b> with	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>Việt Nam”</b> Vietnamese
	<b>và</b> and	<b>cảm ơn</b> thank	<b>nhân dân</b> people	<b>yêu chuộng</b> love
	<b>hoà bình</b> peace	<b>thế giới</b> world	<b>đã</b> already	<b>hăng hái</b> enthusiastic

## Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

<b>ủng hộ</b> support <b>Việt Nam.</b> Vietnam	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of <b>kháng chiến</b> )	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist	<b>của</b> of
---	--	------------------------------	------------------

*On this occasion, on the behalf of the Vietnamese, I send a warmly greeting to the French and the people under the rule of the French colony. I thank the worker stratum all over the world that construct today is "The international unity with the Vietnamese's day" and the people who love in peace all over the world supported enthusiastically in the war of resistance of Vietnam.*

- |     |  |   |  |  |
|-----|--|---|--|--|
| (7) | <b>Vì</b><br>because<br><b>hoà bình</b><br>peace<br><b>và</b><br>and<br><b>rất</b><br>very<br><b>thu</b><br>get back<br><b>lớn.</b><br>great<br><b>kháng chiến</b><br>resistance<br><b>của</b><br>of<br><b>nhân dân</b><br>people<br><b>cuộc</b><br>(classifier of <b>kháng chiến</b> )<br><b>nhất định</b><br>certainly | <b>độc lập</b><br>independent<br><b>thế giới</b><br>world<br><b>dân</b><br>people<br><b>anh dũng</b><br>heroic<br><b>nhều</b><br>many<br><b>Với</b><br>with<br><b>ngày</b><br>day<br><b>nhân dân</b><br>people<br><b>yêu chuộng</b><br>love<br><b>kháng chiến</b><br>resist<br><b>thắng lợi.</b><br>victory | <b>dân tộc</b><br>nation<br><b>mà</b><br>that<br><b>ta</b><br>our<br><b>và</b><br>and<br><b>thắng lợi</b><br>victory<br><b>sức</b><br>strength<br><b>thêm</b><br>increase<br><b>Pháp</b><br>French<br><b>hoà bình</b><br>peace<br><b>của</b><br>of<br><b>thắng lợi.</b><br>victory | <b>và</b><br>and<br><b>quân</b><br>army forces<br><b>kháng chiến</b><br>resist<br><b>đã</b><br>already<br><b>to</b><br>great<br><b>đoàn kết</b><br>unity<br><b> mạnh</b><br>strong<br><b>và</b><br>and<br><b>thế giới,</b><br>world<br><b>ta</b><br>us |
|-----|--|---|--|--|

*Because the national independence and the peace of the world that our arm forces and heros resisted and gained back many glorious victories. With the strong unity in the resistance is stronger more and more from the French and the people who love in peace all over the world, our resistance is certain win the victory.*

- |     |  |   |  |   |
|-----|--|---|--|---|
| (8) | <b>Bởi vì</b><br>because<br><b>tiếp tục</b><br>continue<br><br><b>cho nên</b><br>therefore | <b>thực dân</b><br>colonialist<br><b>cuộc</b><br>(classifier of <b>chiến tranh</b> )<br><b>nhân dân</b><br>people | <b>Pháp</b><br>French<br><b>chiến tranh</b><br>war<br><br><b>Việt Nam</b><br>Vietnam | <b>cứ</b><br>(emphatic particle)<br><b>xâm lược,</b><br>aggression<br><br><b>quyết</b><br>determine |
|-----|--|---|--|---|

Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

<b>đánh</b> fight	<b>mạnh</b> strong	<b>hơn nữa,</b> moreover	<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out
<b>sinh lực</b> vital force	<b>địch</b> enemy	<b>nhều</b> many	<b>hơn nữa,</b> moreover
<b>quyết</b> determine	<b>kháng chiến</b> resist	<b>đến</b> reach	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory
<b>cuối cùng.</b> finally	<b>Nhưng</b> but	<b>nếu</b> if	<b>Chính phủ</b> government
<b>Pháp</b> French	<b>muốn</b> want	<b>đi</b> go	<b>đến</b> reach
<b>đình chiến</b> put an end to the war	<b>ở</b> at	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam	<b>bằng</b> equal
<b>cách</b> way	<b>thương lượng</b> negotiate	<b>và</b> and	<b>muốn</b> want
<b>giải quyết</b> solve	<b>vấn đề</b> problem	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam	<b>theo</b> follow
<b>lối</b> way	<b>hoà bình,</b> peace	<b>thì</b> then	<b>nhân dân</b> people
<b>và</b> and	<b>Chính phủ</b> government	<b>nước</b> country	<b>Việt Nam</b> Vietnam
<b>Dân chủ</b> democratic	<b>Cộng hoà</b> republic	<b>cũng</b> also	<b>sẵn sàng</b> ready(for)
<b>nói chuyện.</b> talk			

*Because the French colonialists are continue to do the war of aggression. Therefore the Vietnamese are determined to fight stronger, to wipe out the vital enemies more. We are determined to resist until reach the victory. But if the French Government wants to go to the end of the war in Vietnam by negotiation and wants to solve the problem in Vietnam by following the way of peace, the Vietnamese and the Government of the Democratic Republic of Vietnam are also ready to talk to you.*

(9) <b>Vậy,</b> so	<b>để</b> for	<b>thực hiện</b> realize	<b>độc lập</b> dependent
<b>thật sự</b> real	<b>và</b> and	<b>hoà bình</b> peace	<b>thật sự,</b> real
<b>quân</b> army forces	<b>và</b> and	<b>dân</b> people	<b>ta</b> our
<b>phải</b> must	<b>ra sức</b> endeavour	<b>làm tròn</b> fulfil	<b>hai</b> two
<b>nhiệm vụ</b> responsibility	<b>trung tâm</b> centre	<b>là:</b> be	<b>đẩy mạnh</b> push forward
<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>và</b> and	<b>cải cách ruộng đất.</b> land reform	<b>Hai</b> two

## Text 18 Appeal on the occasion of the seventh anniversary of the appeal for National resistance (cont.)

<b>nhệm vụ</b> responsibility	<b>ấy</b> that	<b>gắn liền</b> combine	<b>chặt chẽ</b> close
<b>với</b> with	<b>nhau:</b> together	<b>Phải</b> must	<b>cải cách ruộng đất</b> land reform
<b>để</b> for	<b>bồi dưỡng</b> strength	<b>lực lượng</b> power	<b>nhân dân,</b> people
<b>đảm bảo</b> guarantee(against)	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>thắng lợi.</b> victory	<b>Phải</b> must
<b>đẩy mạnh</b> push forward	<b>kháng chiến</b> resistance	<b>để</b> for	<b>bảo đảm</b> guarantee
<b>cải cách ruộng đất</b> land reform	<b>thành công.</b> succeed		

*Thus, the realization of the real dependence and peace in our army forces and people must be endeavor to fulfill two main responsibilities which are: pushing forward the resistance and land reform. Two responsibilities which closely combine together are: to take land reform for the strong power of our people, to guarantee our victory, and to push forward our resistance to guarantee the success of land reform law.*

(10) <b>Cùng</b> same	<b>như</b> like	<b>công việc</b> work	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance
<b>cải cách ruộng đất</b> land reform	<b>là</b> be	<b>một</b> one	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of đấu tranh)
<b>đấu tranh</b> fight	<b>to</b> great	<b>lớn:</b> great	<b>cho nên</b> therefore
<b>công tác</b> mission	<b>phát động</b> mobilize	<b>quần chúng</b> mass	<b>phải</b> must
<b>rất</b> very	<b>cẩn thận,</b> careful	<b>phải</b> must	<b>có</b> have
<b>kế hoạch</b> plan	<b>đầy đủ,</b> enough	<b>phải</b> must	<b>có</b> have
<b>lãnh đạo</b> leader	<b>chặt chẽ,</b> close	<b>phải</b> must	<b>tuyệt đối</b> absolute
<b>tranh</b> fight for	<b>tự ý</b> of one's own free will	<b>phát động,</b> mobilize	<b>thì</b> then
<b>cải cách ruộng đất</b> land reform	<b>sẽ</b> will	<b>chắc chắn</b> certain	<b>thành công.</b> succeed

*It is like a work for the resistance. Land reform is the great struggle. Therefore, a mission to mobilize the mass must be careful, must have good enough plan, must have closed leadership, must fight for our mobilization, and then the land reform will be certain to succeed.*



## TEXT 19

<b>THƯ</b> letter	<b>GỬI</b> send	<b>CÁN BỘ</b> cadre	<b>VÀ</b> and	<b>CHIẾN SĨ</b> fighter
	<b>MẶT TRẬN</b> battlefront	<b>ĐIỆN BIÊN PHỦ</b> <sup>19</sup> Dien Bien Phu		

*ADDRESS, SENT TO CADRES AND FIGHTERS AT  
THE DIEN BIEN PHU BATTLEFRONT*

(1)	<b>Thu</b> autumn	–	<b>Đông</b> winter	<b>năm nay,</b> this year	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)
	<b>chú</b> you		<b>lại</b> again	<b>có</b> have	<b>nhiệm vụ</b> responsibility
	<b>tiến quân</b> advance		<b>vào</b> into	<b>Điện Biên Phủ</b> Dien Bien Phu	<b>để</b> for
	<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out		<b>thêm</b> add	<b>sinh lực</b> vital force	<b>địch,</b> enemy
	<b>mở rộng</b> expand		<b>thêm</b> add	<b>căn cứ</b> base	<b>kháng chiến,</b> resistance
	<b>giải phóng</b> liberate		<b>thêm</b> add	<b>đồng bào</b> fellow-countryman	<b>còn</b> and
	<b>bị</b> be		<b>giặc</b> aggressor	<b>đe nén.</b> pressure/squeeze	

*This autumn and winter, you must show your responsibility by going to Dien Bien Phu and further destroy the enemy's strength and expand the base of our resistance further, and liberate more fellow-countrymen who were bullied into submission by the aggressors.*

(2)	<b>Năm ngoái,</b> last year	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chú</b> you	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already
	<b>anh dũng</b> heroic	<b>chiến đấu,</b> fight	<b>tiêu diệt</b> wipe out	<b>nhiều</b> many
	<b>địch,</b> enemy	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>to.</b> great
	<b>Bác</b> I (uncle)	<b>rất</b> very	<b>vui lòng.</b> be gratified	

*Last year, you were fought heroically killing many of the enemy and won a great victory. I am very gratified to you.*

(3)	<b>Năm nay,</b> this year	<b>sau</b> after	<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>cuộc</b> (classifier of chinh huấn)
-----	------------------------------	---------------------	------------------------------	---

<sup>19</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 7 (1952-1954) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 7 (1952-1954)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.198.

Text 19 Address, sent to cadres and fighters at the Dien Bien Phu Battlefront (Cont.)

<b>chỉnh huấn</b> reform	<b>chính trị</b> political	<b>và</b> and	<b>quân sự,</b> military affairs
<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chú</b> you	<b>đã</b> ASP: past action: already	<b>tiến bộ</b> progress
<b>hơn.</b> more	<b>Các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chú</b> you	<b>phải</b> must
<b>chiến đấu</b> fight	<b>anh dũng</b> heroic	<b>hơn,</b> more	<b>chịu</b> accept
<b>đựng</b> hold	<b>gian khổ</b> hardship	<b>hơn,</b> more	<b>phải</b> must
<b>giữ vững</b> hold firm	<b>quyết tâm</b> be determined	<b>trong</b> in	<b>mọi</b> every
<b>hoàn cảnh:</b> situation			

*This year, after our political and military reforms, even you are more progressive, you must fight more heroically and strive more to overcome each hardness. You must hold firm in every situation.*

- (4) **Quyết tâm**                      **tiêu diệt**                      **địch,**  
be determined(to)      wipe out                      enemy  
*Be determined to wipe out the enemy,*
- (5) **Quyết tâm**                      **giữ vững**                      **chính sách,**  
be determined(to)      hold firm                      policy  
*Be determined to hold firm to our policy,*
- (6) **Quyết tâm**                      **tranh**                      **nhều**                      **thắng lợi.**  
be determined(to)      fight for                      many                      victory  
*Be determined to fight for win many victory.*
- (7) **Bác**                      **và**                      **Chính phủ**                      **chờ**  
I(uncle)                      and                      government                      wait  
**thi**                      **thắng lợi**                      **để**                      **khen thưởng**  
compete/test                      victory                      for                      praise and reward  
**các**                      **chú.**  
(pluralizer)                      you  
*I and the Government wait for your victory to praise and reward you.*
- (8) **Chào**                      **thân ái**                      **và**                      **quyết thắng**  
greet                      dearly                      and                      be resolved to win  
*Warm regards and resolve to win the victory*
- (9) **Tháng**                      **12**                      **năm**                      **1953**  
month                      12                      year                      1953  
*December, 1953.*

Text 19 Address, sent to cadres and fighters at the Dien Bien Phu Battlefront (Cont.)

(10) **HỒ CHÍ MINH**

(11)	<b>Sách</b> book <b>các</b> (pluralizer) <b>Nxb</b> (abbr. Nhà xuất bản) <b>Hà Nội,</b> Hanoi	<b>Hồ</b> Ho <b>lực lượng</b> power <b>1962,</b> 1962	<b>Chủ tịch</b> president <b>vũ trang</b> arms <b>Quân đội</b> army <b>tr.</b> (abbr.trang) page	<b>với</b> with <b>nhân dân,</b> people <b>nhân dân,</b> people <b>150.</b> 150
------	--	--	---	--

*The book "President Ho with the power in prople's arms, People's army publishing house, Hanoi, 1962, p. 150.*

**TEXT 20**

<b>THƯ</b> letter	<b>GỬI</b> send	<b>CÁN BỘ</b> cadre	<b>VÀ</b> and
<b>CHIẾN SĨ</b> fighter	<b>Ở</b> at	<b>MẶT TRẬN</b> battlefront	<b>ĐIỆN BIÊN PHỦ</b> <sup>20</sup> Dien Bien Phu

*ADDRESS, SENT TO CADRES AND FIGHTERS AT  
THE DIEN BIEN PHU BATTLEFRONT*

- (1) **Thân ái**      **gửi**      **toàn thể**      **cán bộ**  
dearly      send      whole      cadre  
**và**      **chiến sĩ**      **ở**      **mặt trận,**  
and      fighter      at      battlefront  
*Dearly send to cadres and fighters at the battlefront,*
- (2) **Các**      **chú**      **sắp**      **ra**  
(pluralizer)      you      be forthcoming      go out  
**mặt trận.**      **Nhiệm vụ**      **các**      **chú**  
battlefront      responsibility      (pluralizer)      you  
**lần**      **này**      **rất**      **to**  
time      this      very      big  
**lớn,**      **khó khăn,**      **nhưng**      **rất**  
big      difficult      but      very  
**vinh quang.**  
glory  
*You are forthcoming to go to the battlefront. Your responsibility is very big and difficult but will be glorious.*
- (3) **Các**      **chú**      **vừa**      **được**  
(pluralizer)      you      just      get  
**chỉnh**      **quân**      **chính trị**      **và**  
rectify      army forces      political      and  
**chỉnh huấn**      **quân sự**      **và**      **đã**  
reform      military affairs      and      ASP: past action: already  
**thu**      **được**      **nhiều**      **thắng lợi**  
get back      be able to      many      victory  
**về**      **tư tưởng**      **và**      **chiến thuật,**  
about      ideology      and      tactics  
**kỹ thuật.**      **Nhiều**      **đơn vị**      **đã**  
technical      many      unit      ASP: past action: already  
**đánh**      **thắng**      **trên**      **các**  
fight      win      over      (pluralizer)

<sup>20</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 7 (1952-1954) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 7 (1952-1954)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.265.

## Text 20 Address, sent to cadres and fighters at the Dien Bien Phu Battlefront (Cont.)

<b>mặt trận.</b> battlefront	<b>Bác</b> (I) uncle	<b>tin</b> believe	<b>chắc</b> be sure
<b>rằng</b> that	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chú</b> you	<b>sẽ</b> ASP: future action: will
<b>phát huy</b> develop	<b>thắng lợi</b> victory	<b>vừa</b> just	<b>qua,</b> pass
<b>quyết tâm</b> be determined	<b>vượt</b> go beyond	<b>mọi</b> every	<b>khó khăn</b> difficult
<b>gian khổ</b> hardship	<b>để</b> for	<b>làm tròn</b> fulfill	<b>nhiệm vụ</b> responsibility
<b>vẻ vang</b> glorious	<b>sắp</b> be forthcoming	<b>tới.</b> arrive	

*You have gone through political military (thought) reform and we have achieved many victory and success in terms of your ideology and tactics. I surely believe that you will build on our recent victory to go beyond every difficulty to fulfill your glorious responsibility very soon.*

(4) <b>Bác</b> (I) uncle	<b>chờ</b> wait	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chú</b> you
<b>báo cáo</b> report	<b>thành tích</b> achievement	<b>để</b> for	<b>thưởng</b> reward
<b>những</b> (pluralizer)	<b>đơn vị</b> unit	<b>và</b> and	<b>cá nhân</b> individual
<b>xuất sắc</b> outstanding	<b>nhất.</b> most		

*I wait you to report you achievement so that I can reward the most outstanding units and individuals.*

(5) <b>Chúc</b> wish	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chú</b> you	<b>thắng</b> win a victory(over)
<b>to.</b> great			

*I wish you win a great victory.*

(6) <b>Bác</b> I(uncle)	<b>hôn</b> give a kiss	<b>các</b> (pluralizer)	<b>chú.</b> you
----------------------------	---------------------------	----------------------------	--------------------

*With my kisses to you.*

(7) <b>Chào</b> greet	<b>thân ái</b> dearly	<b>và</b> and	<b>quết thắng</b> be resolved to win
--------------------------	--------------------------	------------------	---

*Dearly greet and resolve to win a victory*

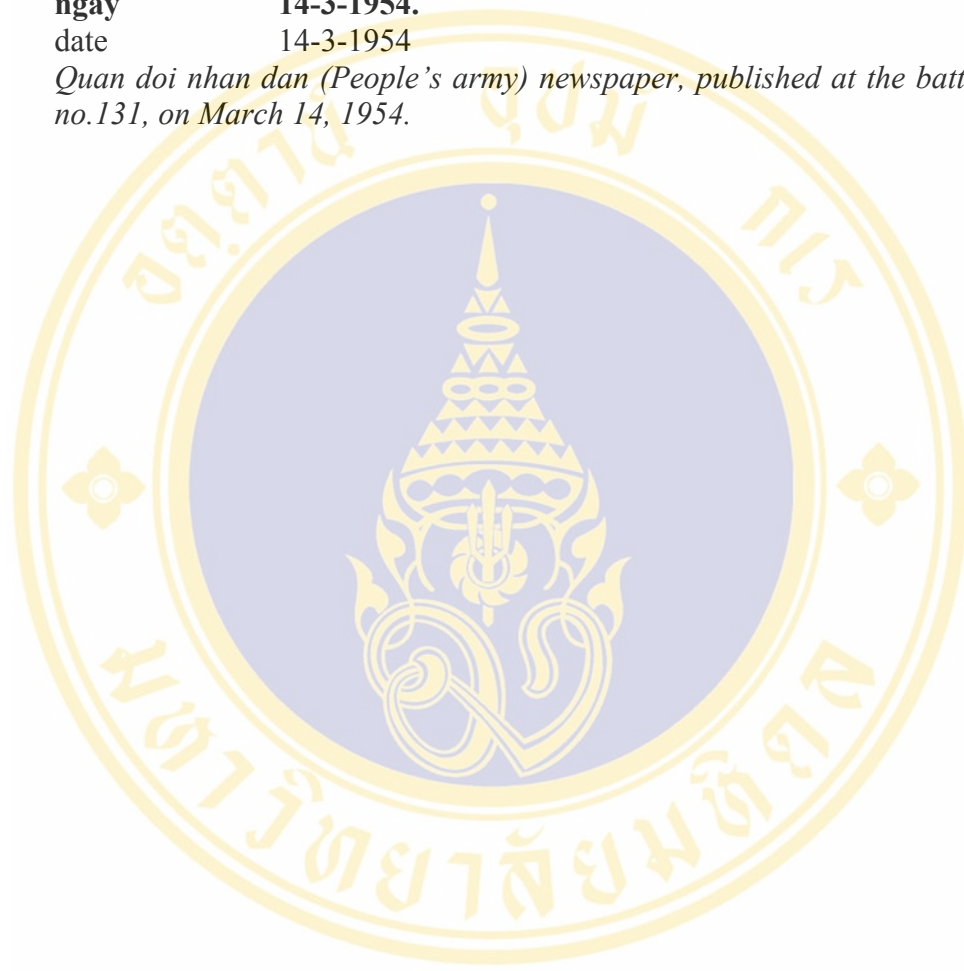
(8) <b>Tháng</b> month	<b>3</b> 3	<b>năm</b> year	<b>1954</b> 1954
---------------------------	---------------	--------------------	---------------------

*March 3, 1954*

Text 20 Address, sent to cadres and fighters at the Dien Bien Phu Battlefront (Cont.)

(9)	<b>Báo</b> newspaper	<b>quân đội</b> army	<b>nhân dân,</b> people	<b>xuất bản</b> publish
	<b>tại</b> at	<b>mặt trận,</b> battlefront	<b>số</b> number	<b>131,</b> 131
	<b>ngày</b> date	<b>14-3-1954.</b> 14-3-1954		

*Quan doi nhan dan (People's army) newspaper, published at the battlefront, no.131, on March 14, 1954.*



## TEXT 21

<b>ĐIỆN</b> telegram	<b>CỦA</b> of	<b>TRUNG ƯƠNG</b> central committee	<b>ĐẢNG</b> party
<b>VÀ</b> and	<b>CỦA</b> of	<b>CHỦ TỊCH</b> president	<b>HỒ CHÍ MINH</b> Ho Chi Minh
<b>GỬI</b> send	<b>CÁN BỘ</b> cadre	<b>VÀ</b> and	<b>CHIẾN SĨ</b> fighter
<b>Ở</b> at	<b>MẶT TRẬN</b> battlefront	<b>ĐIỆN BIÊN PHỦ</b> <sup>21</sup> Dien Bien Phu	

*TELEGRAM FROM THE CENTRAL COMMITTEE PARTY AND PRESIDENT  
HO CHI MINH SEND TO CADRES AND FIGHTERS AT  
DIEN BIEN PHU BATTLEFRONT*

- (1) **Thân ái**  
dearly  
**và**  
and  
**Điện Biên Phủ,**  
Dien Bien Phu  
*Dearly send to cadres and fighters at Dien Bien Phu battlefront,*
- gửi**  
send  
**chiến sĩ**  
fighters
- toàn thể**  
whole  
**ở**  
at
- cán bộ**  
cadre  
**mặt trận**  
battlefront
- (2) **Bác**  
I (uncle)  
**được**  
get  
**trận**  
battle  
**quân đội**  
army  
**Bác**  
I(uncle)  
**có**  
have  
**đồng chí.**  
comrade  
**một**  
one  
**quân đội**  
army  
**chiến dịch**  
campaign
- và**  
and  
**báo cáo**  
report  
**thắng**  
win  
**ta**  
our  
**và**  
and  
**lời**  
word  
**Chiến dịch**  
campaign  
**chiến dịch**  
campaign  
**ta,**  
our  
**này**  
this
- Trung ương**  
central committee  
**về**  
about  
**đầu tiên**  
first  
**ở**  
at  
**Trung ương**  
central committee  
**khen**  
praise  
**này**  
this  
**lịch sử**  
history  
**ta**  
we  
**có**  
have
- Đảng**  
party  
**hai**  
two  
**của**  
of  
**Điện Biên Phủ.**  
Dien Bien Phu  
**Đảng**  
party  
**các**  
(pluralizer)  
**là**  
be  
**của**  
of  
**đánh thắng**  
defeat  
**ý nghĩa**  
meaning

<sup>21</sup> Đặng Xuân Kỳ and Song Thành (Chủ biên). (2000). Hồ Chí Minh toàn tập, tập 7 (1952-1954) (Ho Chi Minh's complete works, tome 7 (1952-1954)). Ha Noi: National Politics Publishing house, p.266.

Text 21 Telegram from the Central Committee Party and President Ho Chi Minh send to cadres and fighters at Dien Bien Phu Battlefront (Cont.)

**quân sự**                      **và**                                      **chính trị**                                      **quan trọng.**  
military                      and                                      politics                                      important

*I and the Central Committee Party receive the report about the first two victories at Dien Bien Phu. I and the Central committee Party praise all of you. This campaign is an historic campaign by our army to defeat our enemy. This campaign is important militarily and politically.*

- (3) **Địch**                      **sẽ**                                      **ra sức**                                      **đôi phó,**  
enemy                      ASP: future action: will                      endeavour                      face  
**ta**                                      **phải**                                      **cố gắng,**                                      **chiến đấu**  
we                                      must                                      effort                                      fight  
**dẻo dai,**                                      **bền bỉ,**                                      **chớ**                                      **chủ quan**  
resistant                                      stubborn                                      do not                                      subjective  
**khinh**                                      **địch,**                                      **giành**                                      **toàn thắng**  
under-estimate                                      enemy                                      conquer                                      complete victory  
**chi**                                      **chiến dịch**  
line of descent                                      campaign                                      **này.**  
this

*Our enemy will endeavour to face us down so we must try, fight and be adamant. Don't subjectively under-estimate the enemy but conquer in this campaign for our total complete victory.*

- (4) **Ngày**                      **15**                                      **tháng**                                      **3**                                      **năm**                                      **1954**  
date                      15                                      month                                      3                                      year                                      1954  
*March 15, 1954*

- (5) **BAN**                                      **CHẤP HÀNH**                                      **TRUNG ƯƠNG**                                      **ĐẢNG**  
section                                      executive                                      Central Committee                                      party  
**LAO ĐỘNG**                                      **VIỆT NAM**  
labour                                      Vietnam  
*Central Committee of Vietnam Workers Party.*

- (6) **Báo**                                      **Quân đội Nhân dân,**                                      **xuất bản**                                      **tại**  
newspaper                                      Quan doi Nhan dan                                      publish                                      at  
**mặt trận,**                                      **số**                                      **133,**                                      **ngày**  
battlefront                                      number                                      133                                      date  
**18-3-1954.**  
18-3-1954  
*Quan doi nhan dan (People's army) newspaper, published at the battlefront, no.133, on March 3, 1954.*

## APPENDIX B

### INTERVIEWING LISTS

1. Doi (assumed name), 80 years old, a cadre during 1949-1954 and a soldier in the People's Army during 1950-1954, interviewed on December 31, 2006.
2. Duc (assumed name), 90 years old, a doctor during 1948-1954, interviewed on December 31, 2006.
3. Dung (assumed name), 73 years old, a student during 1946-1954, interviewed on December 19, 2006.
4. Hien (assumed name), 82 years old, a civil servant during 1950-1954, interviewed on December 10, 2006.
5. Hung (assumed name), 75 years old, a student and messenger of the Vietnamese Government during the war time, interviewed on December 10, 2006.
6. Khai (assumed name), 84 years old, a trader during the war time, interviewed on December 29, 2006.
7. Nam (assumed name), 90 years old, a peasant and a fighter in the rear during the war time, interviewed on December 28, 2006.
8. Ngoc (assumed name), 80 years old, a woman soldier in Cao-Bac-Lang battlefield, interviewed on December 29, 2006.
9. Lan (assumed name), 79 years old, a woman soldier in the Vietnamese National Army during 1953-1954, interviewed on December 25, 2006.

10. Thang (assumed name), 89 years old, a Confucian intellectual, interviewed on December 31, 2006.
11. The Van (assumed name), 86 years old, a messenger worked for the Vietnamese Government during 1946-1950, interviewed on December 19, 2006.
12. Tuan (assumed name), 83 years old a member of the People's army during 1945-1954, interviewed on December 28, 2006.
13. Van (assumed name), 80 years old, a soldier in the Dien Bien Phu battlefield in 1954, interviewed on December 29, 2006.
14. Yen (assumed name), 78 years old, a peasant and supporter for the rear on Cao Bang battlefield, interviewed on December 28, 2006.

## APPENDIX C

### QUESTIONNAIRE

#### Part A: Introduction

1. Sex: ..... Male ..... Female
2. Age: ..... 20-30 ..... 30-40 ..... 40-50 ..... 50-60
3. Education: ..... Bachelor Degree ..... Master Degree ..... Doctoral Degree  
Field of study .....
4. Occupation .....

#### Part B: Give an opinion

1. If you were in similar situation, would this speech influence your decision to join this war? Please give the reasons.
2. Do you think President Hồ Chí Minh's style (his characteristic) convince you to join in this war? Please give reasons. If not, why?
3. What's your opinion about Hồ Chí Minh's speech? Please give reasons.
4. In your opinion, what is the most important thing contributing Vietnamese country-men join in this war? Please give the reasons.
5. What are the factors that make Hồ Chí Minh's speech powerful or convincing? (e.g. speech style, content, word choices, his appeal to group solidarity, etc.) Why do you choose them?
6. Beside Hồ Chí Minh's speech, what are other factors convincing Vietnamese country-men join in the war?
7. Do you think Ho Chi Minh played an important role in liberating country?  
Do you admire Ho Chi Minh? Give the reasons?
8. Other comments.

## BIOGRAPHY

<b>NAME</b>	Miss Morragotwong Phumplab
<b>DATE OF BIRTH</b>	5 April 1982
<b>PLACE OF BIRTH</b>	Chiang Rai, Thailand
<b>INSTITUTIONS ATTENDED</b>	Thammasat University, 2001-2004: Bachelor of Arts (Southeast Asian Studies) Mahidol University, 2005-2007: Master of Arts (Linguistics)
<b>GRADUATE GRANT</b>	Grants for Development of New Faculty Lecturer of the Institute of Language and Culture for Rural Development, Mahidol University, Thailand
<b>RESEARCH GRANT</b>	A Greater Mekong Sub-region (GMS) Exchange Program Scholarship, supported by the Bureau of International Cooperation Strategy Commission on Higher Education (Mahidol University – Vietnam National University, Hanoi)  ASEAN Research scholars 2007, supported by The Asia Research Institute (ARI) of National University of Singapore (NUS)